This application is a continuation in part of copending parent application FOURIER TRANSFORM PROCESSOR S/N 425,731 filed on September 28, 1982 and now Patent No. 4581715 issued on April 8, 1986, 1986 which is a continuation in part of each application in the following chain of parent patent applications copending therebetween:

(A) MEMORY SYSTEM USING FILTERABLE SIGNALS S/N 160,872 filed on June 19, 1980 and now Patent No. 4,491,930 issued on January 1, 1985;

(B) COMPUTER SYSTEM ARCHITECTURE S/N 860,257 filed December 14, 1977 and now Patent No. 4,371,923 issued on February 1, 1983;

(1) FACTORED DATA PROCESSING SYSTEM FOR DEDICATED APPLICATIONS S/N 101,881 filed on December 28, 1970; proceedings therein having been terminated;

(2) CONTROL SYSTEM AND METHOD S/N 134,958 filed on April 19, 1971; still pending in the PTO;

(3) CONTROL APPARATUS S/N 135,040 filed on April 19, 1971; still pending in the PTO;

(4) APPARATUS AND METHOD FOR PRODUCING HIGH REGISTRATION PHOTO-MASKS S/N 229,213 filed on April 13, 1972 and now Patent No. 3,820,893 issued on June 28, 1974;

(5) MACHINE CONTROL SYSTEM OPERATING FROM REMOTE COMMANDS S/N 230,872 filed on March 1, 1972; now issuing in the PTO;

(6) COORDINATE ROTATION FOR MACHINE CONTROL SYSTEM S/N 232,459 filed on March 7, 1972 and now Patent No. 4,370,720 issued on January 25, 1983;

(7) DIGITAL FEEDBACK CONTROL SYSTEM S/N 246,867 filed on April 24, 1972 and now Patent No. 4,310,878 issued on January 12, 1982;

(8) COMPUTERIZED SYSTEM FOR OPERATOR INTERACTION S/N 288,247 filed on Sept 11, 1972 and now patent No. 4,121,284 issued on October 17, 1978;

(9) A SYSTEM FOR INTERFACING A COMPUTER TO A MACHINE S/N 291,394 filed on September 22, 1972 and now Patent No. 4,396,976 issued on August 2, 1983;

(10) DIGITAL ARRANGEMENT FOR PROCESSING SQUAREWAVE SIGNALS S/N 302,771 filed on Nov 1, 1972; still pending in the PTO;

(11) APPARATUS AND METHOD FOR PROVIDING INTERACTIVE AUDIO COMMUNICATION S/N 325,933 filed on January 22, 1973 and now Patent No. 4,016,540 issued on April 5, 1977;

(12) ELECTRONIC CALCULATOR SYSTEM HAVING AUDIO MESSAGES FOR OPERATOR INTERACTION S/N 325,941 filed on January 22, 1973 and now Patent No. 4,060,848 issued on November 29, 1977;

(13) ILLUMINATION CONTROL SYSTEM S/N 366,714 filed on June 4, 1973 and now Patent No. 3,986,922 issued on October 12, 1976;

(14) DIGITAL SIGNAL PROCESSOR FOR SERVO VELOCITY CONTROL S/N 339,817 filed on March 9, 1973 and now Patent No. 4,034,276 issued on July 5, 1977;

(15) MONOLITHIC DATA PROCESSOR S/N 402,520 filed on October 1, 1973; still pending in the PTO;

(16) HOLOGRAPHIC SYSTEM FOR OBJECT LOCATION AND IDENTIFICATION S/N 490,816 filed on July 22, 1974 and now Patent No. 4,029,853 issued on June 24, 1980;

(17) COMPUTERIZED MACHINE CONTROL SYSTEM S/N 476,743 filed on June 5, 1974 and now Patent No. 4,364,110 issued on December 14, 1982;

(18) SIGNAL PROCESSING AND MEMORY ARRANGEMENT S/N 522,559 filed on November 11, 1974 and now Patent No. 4,209,852 issued on June 24, 1980;

(19) METHOD AND APPARATUS FOR SIGNAL ENHANCEMENT WITH IMPROVED DIGITAL FILTERING S/N 550,231 filed on February 14, 1975 and now Patent No. 4,209,843 issued on June 24, 1980;

(20) ILLUMINATION SIGNAL PROCESSING SYSTEM S/N 727,330 filed on September 27, 1976; now abandoned;

(21) PROJECTION TELEVISION SYSTEM USING LIQUID CRYSTAL DEVICES S/N 730,756 filed on October 7, 1976; now abandoned;

(22) ~~INCREMENTAL DIGITAL~~ FILTER S/N 754,660 filed on December 27, 1976 and now patent No. 4,486,850 issued on December 4, 1984;

(23) MEANS AND METHOD FOR COMPUTERIZED SOUND SYNTHESIS S/N 752,240 filed on December 20, 1976; now abandoned;

(24) VOICE SIGNAL PROCESSING SYSTEM S/N 801,879 filed on May 13, 1977 and now patent No. 4,144,582 issued on March 13, 1979;

(25) ANALOG READ ONLY MEMORY S/N 812,285 filed on July 1, 1977 and now Patent No. 4,371,953 issued on February 1, 1983;

(26) DATA PROCESSOR ARCHITECTURE S/N 844,765 filed on October 25, 1977; now patent No. 4,523,290 issued on June 11, 1985;

(27) DIGITAL SOUND SYSTEM FOR CONSUMER PRODUCTS S/N 849,812 filed on November 9, 1977; now pending in the PTO;

(28) ELECTRO-OPTICAL ILLUMINATION CONTROL SYSTEM S/N 860,278 filed on December 13, 1977 and now Patent No. 4,471,385 issued on September 11, 1984; and

(29) MEMORY SYSTEM HAVING SERVO COMPENSATION S/N 889,301 filed on March 23, 1978 and now Patent No. 4,322,819 issued on March 30, 1982;

all by Gilbert P. Hyatt; where the benefit of the filing dates of all of the above-listed applications are herein claimed in accordance with the United States Code such as with 35 USC 120 and 35 USC 121;

where all of the above listed patents and patent applications are incorporated herein by reference as if fully set forth at length herein; and

where one skilled in the art will be able to combine the disclosures in said applications and patents that are incorporated by reference with the disclosure in the instant application from the disclosures therein and the disclosures herein.
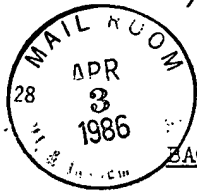
BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

1. Field of the invention.

This invention relates to signal processing arrangements and, in particular, to digital filtering arrangements.

5   2. Description of the prior art.

The prior art provides digital filtering arrangements with whole-number digital data processors which require complex computational hardware to implement whole-number computations. Prior art correlators are implemented as frequency-domain

10 correlators by first performing a Fast Fourier Transform (FFT) to convert time-domain input information to frequency-domain information, then by performing a correlation operation in the frequency-domain, and then by performing an inverse FFT for converting the frequency-domain correlated information to time-

15 domain information for interpretation by an operator. The large quantity of whole-number computational operations such as multiplication operations for an FFT computation, complex hardware, and extensive computations result in expensive correlation processors which are not able to operate in real-time. Further,

20 prior art equipment such as digital correlators are implemented based upon requiring input resolution comperable to the desired output resolution. Therefore, prior art systems such as the CAFDRS system provided by United Geophysical of Pasadena, California use a compositor to composite information prior to

25 correlation in order to reduce the data rate of correlation input information. Further, such prior art systems cannot perform real-time correlation computations but can only perform correlation computations off-line; where on-line real-time correlation is not feasible in the prior art because of correlator

30 speed limitations. The prior art operation of compositing-before-correlation, which is used to reduce data rates, introduces many limitations such as requiring repeatable signal sources and requiring repetition of ensonifying signals for

-2-

compositing-before-correlation. Further, the non-real-time off-line operation of prior art correlators, resulting from the relatively low performance of prior art whole-number correlators, precludes correlation of information as acquired in real-time

5 and precludes the ability for correlating all of the information acquired without first compositing.

The prior art has considered that a correlator must have a computational word size that is related to a required output word size. For example, a 16-bit correlator generates

10 16-bit correlation output words by performing computations with 16-bit computational circuits on 16-bit input trace and pilot words. Consequently, prior art correlators typically having a 16-bit word size have been implemented with complex computations for manipulating 16-bit words.

BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE INVENTION

The present invention is directed to signal processing and digital filtering, particularly using multiple signature signals for location of objects. an improved digital filtering arrangement is provided which yields improved digital filtering capability with a significant reduction in cost when compared to prior art systems. Use of a plurality of overlapping signature signals that are seperated through filter processing provides improvements in productivity and capability. For example, ensonification of a geophysical environment from multiple shotpoints with signals having different signatures and without listening periods increases the rate at which information that can be acquired and processed.

In accordance with a feature of the present invention, an improved sampled filtering system is provided.

In accordance with another feature of the present invention, an improved sampled filter device is provided in the form of a correlator.

A further feature of the present invention provides an improved communication system.

A still further feature of the present invention provides an improved correlation processor.

In accordance with still another feature of the present invention, a compositing-after-correlation arrangement is provided.

Yet another feature of the present invention provides a multi-channel filtering arrangement.

Yet still another feature of the present invention provides a multiple signature generator arrangement.

Yet another feature of the present invention provides for reduction or elimination of a listening period between ensonifying signals.

A still further feature of the present invention provides for generation and processing of overlapping signature signals.

The foregoing and other objects, features, and advantages of the present invention will become apparent from the following detailed description of preferred embodiments of this invention as illustrated in the accompanied drawings.

CROSS REFERENCE TO RELATED APPLICATIONS

This application is a continuation in part of each application in the following chain of parent patent applications copending therebetween:

(1) FACTORED DATA PROCESSING SYSTEM FOR DEDICATED APPLICATIONS S/N 101,881 filed on Dec 28, 1970;

(2) CONTROL SYSTEM AND METHOD S/N 134,958 filed on April 19, 1971;

(3) CONTROL APPARATUS S/N 135,040 filed on April 19, 1971;

(4) APPARATUS AND METHOD FOR PRODUCING HIGH REGISTRATION PHOTO-MASKS S/N 229,213 filed on April 13, 1972 now Patent No. 3,820,894 issued on June 28, 1974;

(5) MACHINE CONTROL SYSTEM OPERATING FROM REMOTE COMMANDS S/N 230,872 filed on March 1, 1972;

(6) COORDINATE RESOLUTION FOR NUMERICAL CONTROL SYSTEMS S/N 232,459 filed on March 7, 1972 now Patent No. _____ issued on _____, 1980;

(7) DIGITAL FEEDBACK CONTROL SYSTEM S/N 246,867 filed on April 24, 1972 now Patent No. _____issued on _____, 1980;

(8) COMPUTERIZED SYSTEM FOR OPERATOR INTERACTION S/N 288,247 filed on Sept 11, 1972 now Patent No. 4,121,284 issued on Oct 17, 197

(9) A SYSTEM FOR INTERFACING A COMPUTER TO A MACHINE S/N 291,394 filed on Sept 22, 1972;

(10) DIGITAL ARRANGEMENT FOR PROCESSING SQUAREWAVE SIGNALS S/N 302,771 filed on Nov 1, 1972;

(11) APPARATUS AND METHOD FOR PROVIDING INTERACTIVE AUDIO COMMUNICATION S/N 325,933 filed on Jan 22, 1973 now Patent No, 4,016,540 issued on April 5, 1977;

(12) ELECTRONIC CALCULATOR SYSTEM HAVING AUDIO MESSAGES FOR OPERATOR INTERACTION S/N 325,941 filed on Jan 22, 1973 now Patent No, 4,060,848 issued on Nov 29, 1977;

(13) ILLUMINTATION CONTROL SYSTEM S/N 366,714 filed on
June 4, 1973 now Patent No. 3,986,922 issued on Oct 12, 1976;

(14) DIGITAL SIGNAL PROCESSOR FOR SERVO VELOCITY CONTROL
S/N 339,817 filed on March 9, 1973 now Patent No. 4,034,276
issued on July 5, 1977;

(15) MONOLITHIC DATA PROCESSOR S/N 402,520 filed on
Oct 1, 1973 now Patent No. _____ issued on _____, 1980;

(16) HOLOGRAPHIC SYSTEM FOR OBJECT LOCATION AND IDENTIFICATION
S/N 490,816 filed on July 22, 1974 now Patent No. 4,029,853 issued
on June 24, 1980;

(17) COMPUTERIZED MACHINE CONTROL SYSTEM S/N 476,743 filed
on June 5, 1974 now Patent No. _____ issued on _____, 1980;

(18) SIGNAL PROCESSING AND MEMORY ARRANGEMENT S/N 522,559
filed on Nov 11, 1974 now Patent No. 4,209,852 issued on
June 24, 1980;

(19) METHOD AND APPARTUS FOR SIGNAL ENHANCEMENT WITH
IMPROVED DIGITAL FILTERING S/N 550,231 filed on Feb 14, 1975
now Patent No. 4,209,843 issued on June 24, 1980;

(20) ILLUMINTATION SIGNAL PROCESSING SYSTEM S/N 727,330
filed on Sept 27, 1976 now abandoned in favor of continuing
applications;

(21) PROJECTION TELEVISION SYSTEM USING LIQUID CRYSTAL DEVICES
S/N 730,756 filed on Oct 7, 1976;

(22) INCREMENTAL DIGITAL FILTER S/N 754,660 filed on
Dec 27, 1976;

(23) MEANS AND METHOD FOR COMPUTERIZED SOUND SYNTHESIS
S/N 752,240 filed on Dec 20, 1976 now abandoned in favor of
continuing applications;

(24) VOICE SIGNAL PROCESSING SYSTEM S/N 801,879 filed on
May 13, 1977 now Patent No. 4,144,582 issued on March 13, 1979;

(25) ANALOG READ ONLY MEMORY S/N 812,285 filed on July 1, 1977;

(26) DATA PROCESSOR ARCHITECTURE S/N 844,765 filed on
Oct 25, 1977;

(27) DIGITAL SOUND SYSTEM FOR CONSUMER PRODUCTS S/N 849,812
filed on Nov 9, 1977;

(28) ELECTRO-OPTICAL ILLUMINATION CONTROL SYSTEM S/N 860,278 filed on Dec 13, 1977; and

(29) MEMORY SYSTEM HAVING SERVO COMPENSATION S/N 889,301 filed on March 23, 1978;

5   all by Gilbert P. Hyatt; where the benefit of the filing dates of the above-listed parent   applications are herein claimed in accordance with the United States Code such as with 35 USC 120 and 35 USC 121 and where this application is further related to but not a continuation in part of patent applications:

10   (30) INTERACTIVE CONTROL SYSTEM S/N 101,449 filed on Dec 28, 1970 by Lee, Cole, Hirsch, Hyatt, and Wimmer now abandoned in favor of a continuing application;

(31) INTERACTIVE CONTROL SYSTEM S/N 354,590 filed on April 24, 1973 by Lee, Cole, Hirsch, Hyatt, and Wimmer

15   now Patent No. 4,038,640 issued on July 26, 1977; and

(32) ADAPTIVE ILLUMINATION SOURCE INTENSITY CONTROL DEVICE S/N 152,105 filed on June 11, 1971 by Lee, Wimmer, and Hyatt now Patent No. 3,738,242 issued on June 12, 1973 and continuations and divisionals therefrom:

20   where all of the above listed patents and patent applications are incoporated herein by reference as if fully set forth at length herein: and

where one skilled in the art will be able to combine the disclosures in said applications and patents that are incorporated

25   by reference with the disclosure in the instant application from the disclosures therein and the disclosures herein.

A better understanding of the invention may be
obtained from a consideration of the detailed description
hereinafter taken in conjunction with the drawings which are
5   briefly described below.

Fig 1 comprising Figs 1A-1F is a block diagram of
a system in accordance with the present invention wherein Fig 1A
is a block diagram of a signal processing system having a separate
correlator and compositor; Fig 1B is a block diagram of a system
10 having a combined correlator and compositor; Fig 1C is a block
diagram of a system having a plurality of transmitters and a
plurality of correlators for correlation-after-compositing; Fig 1D
is a block diagram of a system having a plurality of transmitters
and a plurality of correlators for compositing-after-correlation;
15 Fig 1E is a block diagram of a data processing arrangement in
accordance with Figs 1A-1D for providing frequency-domain
correlation and frequency-domain compositing; and Fig 1F is a
block diagram of a data processing arrangement in accordance
with Figs 1A-1D for providing frequency-domain correlation and
20 time-domain compositing.

Fig 2 comprising Figs 2A and 2B is a detailed block
diagram representation in accordance with Fig 1 wherein Fig 2A
provides a detailed block diagram of the signal processing
arrangement in accordance with Fig 1 and wherein Fig 2B illustrates
25 a converter in more detail in accordance with Fig 2A.

Fig 3 comprising Figs 3A-3D shows chirp signal
waveforms illustrating operation of the system in accordance with
the present invention wherein Fig 3A illustrates simple correlation
operations; Fig 3B illustrates compositing-before-correlation
30 operations; Fig 3C illustrates compositing-after-correlation
operations for sequential up-chirp signals; Fig 3D illustrates
compositing-after-correlation operations for simultaneous up-chirp
and down-chirp signals; and Fig 3E illustrates ensonification
with overlapping chirp signals.

Fig 4 illustrates a single-bit correlator mechanization in accordance with the present invention.

Fig 5 comprising Figs 5A and 5B presents flow diagram and state diagram representations of correlator and compositor operations in accordance with the present invention wherein Fig 5A illustrates a multi-channel embodiment and Fig 5B illustrates a single channel embodiment.

Fig 6 comprising Figs 6A-6H provides detailed schematic and block diagram representations of a correlator and compositor arrangement in accordance with the present invention wherein Fig 6A shows a detailed block diagram of a correlator and compositor arrangement; Fig 6B shows a counter arrangement for implementing control logic in accordance with the arrangement shown in Fig 6A; Fig 6C shows a ROM arrangement for implementing control logic in accordance with the arrangement shown in Fig 6A; Fig 6D shows a detailed control logic and correlator arrangement in accordance with Figs 6A and 6B; Fig 6E shows a multi-channel correlator arrangement in accordance with Fig 6D; Fig 6F shows a composite control arrangement in accordance with Fig 6D; Fig 6G shows a synchronous one-shot logical schematic; and Fig 6H shows a CRT display arrangement.

Fig 7 comprising Figs 7A-7I provides detailed block diagram and schematic representations and provides signal diagrams for a communication embodiment in accordance with the present invention wherein Fig 7A shows a block diagram of a communication arrangement; Fig 7B shows multiple up-chirp communication waveforms in accordance with the communication arrangement of Fig 7A; Fig 7C shows multiple up-chirp and down-chirp waveforms in accordance with the communication arrangement of Fig 7A; Fig 7D shows a detailed block diagram and schematic representation of a multiple chirp generator for generating chirp waveforms in accordance with Figs 7B and 7C; Fig 7E shows a detailed schematic and block diagram representation of a chirp generator in accordance

with Fig 7D; Fig 7F shows a detailed block diagram and schematic representation of a correlation demodulator in accordance with Fig 7A; Fig 7G shows a rate multiplier embodiment of a chirp generator in accordance with Fig 7D; Fig 7H shows a digital

5 differential analyzer arrangement of a chirp generator in accordance with Fig 7D; and Fig 7I shows an alternate embodiment of a multiple chirp generator arrangement in accordance with Fig 7D.

Fig 8 shows chirp signal waveforms illustrating

10 operation of the system in accordance with Fig 7 for an analog chirp signal communication arrangement.

Fig 9 comprising Figs 9A-9J illustrates signal processing arrangements using charge couple devices (CCDs) in accordance with the present invention wherein Fig 9A illustrates

15 a CCD channel processor arrangement; Fig 9B illustrates a CCD beam forming arrangement; Fig 9C illustrates a CCD hybrid memory arrangement; Fig 9D illustrates signal degradation and compensation in accordance with the hybrid memory arrangement in accordance with Fig 9C; Fig 9E illustrates an alternate embodiment of a CCD

20 memory arrangement; Fig 9F illustrates an adaptive memory refresh arrangement; Fig 9G illustrates the signal forms associated with the adaptive memory refresh arrangement shown in Fig 9F; Fig 9H shows a first refresh circuit; Fig 9I shows a refresh circuitry having an analog implicit servo; and Fig 9J shows a hybrid refresh

25 circuit having an implicit servo.

Fig 10 comprising Figs 10A-10B illustrates a sampled filter arrangement in accordance with the system of the present invention wherein Figs 10A-10D set forth signal flow diagrams for a filter implementation, Fig 10E sets forth a filter system block diagram , and Fig 10F sets forth a hybrid filter arrangement in accordance with the block diagram of Fig 10E.

By way of introduction of the illustrated embodiment, the components shown in Figs 1-9 of the drawings have been assigned general reference numerals and a description of each such component is given in the following detailed description. The components in the figures have been assigned three-digit reference numerals wherein the hundreds-digit of the reference numeral is related to the figure number except that the same component appearing in successive drawing figures has maintained the first reference numeral. For example, the components in Fig 1 have reference numerals between 100 and 199 and the components in Fig 2 have reference numerals between 200 and 299.

DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE INVENTION

The system of the present invention can take any of a number of forms. Preferred embodiments of several forms of the present invention are shown in the accompanying figures and will be described in detail hereafter.

A digital filtering system is provided for acquiring and processing signals using a digital filter for signal separation and signal enhancement. A digital correlator is provided for generating high resolution output data in response to low resolution input data processed with low resolution computational circuits. In one embodiment, a real-time time-domain correlator is provided with single-bit resolution computational elements to implement the correlation filtering operation. Use of the high speed real-time correlator of the present invention permits further enhancement of signals with the capability of compositing-after-correlation and with the capability of correlation using a plurality of correlation operators. Particular advantages are achieved with the use of the real-time correlator in a geophysical exploration system embodiment and in a communication embodiment. Systems applications of the digital filter includes a communcations modem for modulating and demodulating chirp signals to enhance data communication and compositing-after-correlation in a geophysical exploration system. Detailed circuitry is provided to implement such systems including an improved chirp signal generator, a multi-chirp signal generator, a chirp modulator, and a correlation demodulator.

The present invention provides signal processing and digital filtering arrangements for signal enhancement which are applicable to multitudes of different types of systems. In a geophysical exploration system, an improved digital filtering arrangement is provided which yields improved digital filtering capability with a significant reduction in cost when compared to prior art systems. Further, the availability of the low cost and high performance correlator of the present invention permits use of correlation digital filters in multitudes of applications that previously could not qualify such digital filtering capability.

-10A-

For example, use of digital filters may significantly enhance processing such as in the medical diagnostic systems, equipment diagnostic systems, radar and sonar signal processing systems, pattern recognition systems, communication systems, and in many other signal processing and data processing applications.

A simplified correlator arrangement is provided for digital filtering operations, where the digital correlator is implemented to process low resolution input data such as single-bit data in a high speed and low cost arrangement while still providing high resolution output data. A characteristic of the correlation operation is that input data resolution does not limit output data resolution; where greater output data resolution can be obtained than available with the input data by enhancing the information over many samples. This may be considered to be an averaging of a statistical combination of many samples to enhance precision and may be considered analagous to the integration signals using analog filters to enhance the signal-to-noise ratio and other such characteristics. In one configuration of the correlator of the present invention, a one-bit resolution computational operation is provided to implement a low cost high speed correlator, where the input or trace signal and the operator or pilot signal may have only one-bit resolution. A one-bit computation is simple to implement, thereby providing low cost and high speed when compared to conventional whole-number computations typically performed on 16-bit words.

This arrangement generating high resolution correlator output information in response to low resolution input information is described in a preferred embodiment, wherein low resolution input information may be single-bit information and the high resolution output information may be a 20 bit information. The prior art has considered that it is necessary to have input resolution and computational resolution comparable to required output resolution. In accordance with this feature of the present invention, intrinsic characteristics of a filtering algorithm are recognized wherein low resolution input information may be used to generate high resolution output

information. Preferred embodiments of the present invention take advantage of this characteristic by receiving low resolution input information such as single-bit information, processing low resolution information such as single-bit information, and updating high resolution output information in response to the low resolution input information and low resolution data processing.

An arrangement for compositing-after-correlation is provided for a geophysical application which yields substantial advantages over the prior art systems. One advantage is that a plurality of different pilot signals may be generated sequentially to reduce "computational noise" associated with the correlation function such as the "side lobes" associated with a correlation peak. Another advantage is that uncontrollable pilot singals such as dynamite blasts may be used, wherein each return trace may be correlated against a measured pilot signal. Yet another advantage may be elimination of a compositor, where compositing is a summation operation and wherein the correlation algorithm of the present invention provides multiplication and summing operations; where compositing may be implicit in the correlation operation and need not be implemented in a special compositor. Still a further advantage is that the time associated with a "listening" period between transmitted chirp signals may be eliminated by overlapping or superimposing pilot signals which are separable through correlation rather than through time delays.

A correlator is a widely applicable digital filter and is exemplary of the generalized digital filtering arrangements of the present invention. A correlator can enhance signals so efficiently that information can be extracted from signals where no information appears to exist. It may be used to perform many signal processing and filtering operations including separation of signals from noise, separation or demultiplexing of multitudes of signals that are mixed together, and enhancing low level signals. For example, a geophysical exploration application may use a correlator to separate millions of seismic signals reflected from subsurface structures which are all combined

together and which are mixed with high levels of noise.

The digital correlator of the present invention is an important technological advancement that supercedes limitations of prior art correlators and which generally enhances applicability of correlators. Prior art correlators have three major limitations which are low speed, high price, and low accuracy. The correlator of the present invention overcomes these limitations, having a price-to-performance characteristic that is significantly better than with prior art correlators and having the highest levels of accuracy.

Speed is a primary consideration where correlators are often required to process voluminous amounts of data that is being acquired in real-time. Prior art correlators are too slow to process information in real-time for high data rate applications. Therefore, many prior art systems have limited throughput and require expensive data buffering to compensate for correlator speed limitations. For such prior art systems, expensive disc

memories are used to buffer input information until the correlator can "catch-up" with the acquired data and the acquisition of data must be discontinued until the correlator can process the previously acquired data. Therefore, such systems must tolerate

5   the high cost of buffer memories and the low productivity caused by discontinuing operations until the correlator can "catch-up". The correlator of the present invention has extremely high speed, permitting data to be correlated in real-time as acquired without limiting system productivity and without requiring expensive

10   buffer memories as with prior art systems. For example, the correlator of the present invention can process geophysical information in real-time from 1,024-channels with 1-millisecond samples but the prior art CAFDRS geophysical exploration system cannot even process information in real-time from 24-channels with

15   4-millisecond samples. For a geophysical application, the correlator of the present invention is almost 1,000-times faster than the CAFDRS correlator. Other prior art correlators may provide greater speed than the CAFDRS correlator but have significantly higher cost, where the correlator of the present

20   invention may have approximately a 100-times speed advantage over the very expensive highest speed prior art correlators.

Price is a primary consideration, where correlator price may be a primary system constraint. Higher speed prior art correlators may be priced at over $50,000 and may total almost

25   $100,000 when buffer memories, peripherals, and interfaces are included. The correlator of the present invention can be produced to sell profitably for under $10,000 in a sophisticated geophysical configuration. Further, price advantages accrue as a result of the reduction in buffer memory requirements and in enhanced

30   throughput as a result of the real-time capabilities of the correlator of the present invention.

Accuracy is a secondary consideration with prior art correlators, where 16-bit resolution (1-part in 65,000) is typical. Applications requiring greater precision cannot be accommodated with prior art correlators which have a fixed

5 resolution characteristic and a limited flexibility to adjust resolution to the specific requirements of the application. The correlator of the present invention has substantially unlimited resolution capability, wherein the resolution can be modularly expanded to meet any practical requirement. A preferred embodiment

10 is configured for 20-bit resolution (1-part-per-million), which is more than 10-times the resolution of prior art correlators having 16-bit resolution.

The correlator of the present invention provides state-of-the-art capability with a price-to-performance

15 characteristic that may be more than ten-times better than available with prior art correlators based upon a unique correlation concept and design. The correlator of the present invention uses new correlator concepts to achieve high speed and high accuracy at low cost in contrast to the "brute-force" approaches used in

20 prior art correlators. Therefore, the correlator of the present invention can be qualified for applications which could not tolerate the high price, low speed, or other limitations of prior art correlators.

A geophysical exploration embodiment of the present invention will now be described.

Geophysical exploration equipment is primarily used to locate oil, where seismic vibrations are impressed on the earth and geophone transducers sense the reflected seismic signals as indicative of subsurface structures. The received waveforms are extremely complex, including signals from millions of subsurface reflectors all superimposed together with varying amplitudes and with high levels of noise. The processing of these extremely complex seismic signals is usually performed on large scale computers at computer centers implementing complex filtering computations in software.

Signal enhancement and data compression are often provided in the field using a compositor, which effectively adds corresponding samples from many vibrator sweeps to reduce the amount of data that must be recorded. Because of the complexity of the raw data and the composited data, it is not possible for an operator to determine the nature of the subsurface structures nor to adequately determine if meaningful information is being acquired. Field exploration is very expensive typically costing $5,000 per day, where acquisition of poor information without the ability to detect and correct the situation during data acquisition may have extreme consequences. It is often necessary to return and "reshoot" the area at extremely high cost, but there may not be the opportunity to reshoot the area because of conditions such as weather and accessibility associated with areas such as in Alaska, or because of prohibitive costs to reaccess the area, or because of equipment availability. The ability to correlate and evaluate seismic data in the field permits obtaining of clear and meaningful information with the ability to continue to accumulate information until acquired data is satisfactory. Further, the ability to correlate and evaluate seismic data in the field permits exploration of important subsurface structures that are not along the

exploration route but which are often detected during exploration. Still further, the ability to correlate in the field permits optimization of data such as by compensating for noise, enhancing seismic data associated with important subsurface structures, and reducing the amount of time expended by precluding the need to take excessive data "just to be safe". Many other important considerations are related to correlation of data in the field. As one analogy, a correlator in a field system may be considered to provide the advantages of eyesight to an explorer, where the absence of a correlator in a field system may be considered to be "exploring blind".

Many prior art geophysical exploration systems have compositors and a few of the more advanced prior art systems have correlators, where these prior art compositors and correlators are extremely expensive yet are low in performance. For example, the CAFDRS system utilizes two computers and two disc memories, wherein a first computer performs compositing in real-time as the data is acquired and the second computer performs correlation if and when time is available, but not in real-time. It is estimated that the CAFDRS system includes a cost of $100,000 for the computers and computer peripherals that are required for compositing and correlation operations, yet correlation is still not provided in real-time. Further, the CAFDRS system provides only 24-channels of input data which significantly limits productivity and seismogram resolution.

The system of the present invention utilizes a new
correlation concept which provides both compositing and correlation
operations in a low-cost high-speed system. The system of the
present invention may accommodate 1,024-channels of input data

5　(which yields 40-times greater productivity than with the CAFDRS
system), provides real-time correlation as rapidly as the signals
are acquired (approximately 500-times greater speed than with the
CAFDRS system) and at an estimated cost for the data processing
subsystem of under $10,000 for 24-channels (compared to an

10　estimated cost of $100,000 for the CAFDRS data processing subsystem).
Further, the system of the present invention provides the
capability for compositing-after-correlation, which is a capability
that greatly enhances the productivity of exploration and the
significance of the acquired data. Further, the system of the

15　present invention significantly simplifies auxiliary systems such
as the "front end" sensor system including cabling, geophones,
and signal processing and the system of the present invention
simplifies operation by automatically compensating for noise,
gain, and filtering usually performed manually by an operator in

20　prior art systems. Other advantages of the system of the present
invention includes significant increases in productivity such as
by elimination of the non-productive "listening period" and the
ability to get significantly more information out of the
acquired signals than possible with prior art systems.

25　　　　The system of the present invention provides many
important features which can be better understood from a comparison
with prior art systems. Two advanced systems in the
field of geophysical exploration are the GEOCOR system and the
CAFDRS system, each of which includes a compositor and a

30　correlator in a semi-portable truck system. The CAFDRS system
uses general purpose computers for compositing and for correlation,
yielding relatively slow operation and limited performance. The
GEOCOR system uses special purpose computers for compositing and
correlation and provides higher levels of performance. The

system of the present invention provides significant improvements over these prior art systems, where the system of the present invention uses a special purpose compositor-correlator arrangement that provides real-time correlation and provides compositing-

5 after-correlation capability which are not available in prior art systems. Further, the system of the present invention obtains significantly greater productivity than available with prior art systems; yielding 80-times the productivity of the CAFDRS system as a result of a larger array and other features that significantly

10 enhance productivity. The salient features of these systems are briefly discussed below.

Array size is an important consideration, where array size determines the area covered for each shotpoint and the resolution or spacing between traces, where array size is related

15 to productivity and precision respectively. The CAFDRS system provides a conventional 24-geophone array which is a common size for most systems. The GEOCOR system provides a 256-geophone array which is a significant improvement over other prior art systems. The system of the present invention provides a 1,024-geophone

20 array yielding a significant improvement at lower cost.

Sample rate is an important consideration, wherein sample rate defines the resolution of a trace and defines the smallest size subsurface structure that can be identified. The CAFDRS and GEOCOR systems provide sample rates of 500 and 250

25 samples-per-second, which is typical for prior art geophysical systems. The system of the present invention provides greater sampling rates than possible with even the most advanced prior art systems, permitting identification of smaller subsurface structures.

Sweep period defines length of a VIBROSEIS sweep, where sweep length is usually limited to 32-seconds in prior art systems by disc storage limitations. The system of the present invention provides a unique composite-after-correlation capability

5   which permits elimination of the sweep listening period which is required with prior art systems and permits many sweeps to be superimposed and to be continuously generated without exceeding reasonable memory limitations.

Sample quantity is related to sweep considerations,

10   where the number of samples is defined by the length of the sweep and the sample rate of the system. Prior art systems such as the CAFDRS system have memory limitations, wherein a long sweep is incompatible with a high sample rate. The system of the present invention permits virtually unlimited sweep lengths at high sample

15   rates, consistent with the composite-after-correlation capability of the present invention.

Correlation capability is an important requirement for geophysical exploration systems. Prior art systems provide only off-line non-real-time correlation, wherein data acquisition

20   operations are discontinued while correlation is being performed. The ability of the system of the present invention to correlate in real-time while input information is being acquired significantly enhances throughput and productivity while providing the highest levels of data processing. Further, the system of the present

25   invention is the only system providing compositing-after-correlation capability, which further enhances seismogram precision and flexibility by providing pilot signal flexibility and improves productivity by eliminating the need for a listening period. Further, prior art systems implement correlation with 16-bit

30   resolution. The system of the present invention uses a correlation algorithm that provides 20-bit correlation resolution, providing an improvement in correlation resolution by a factor of 16-times.

Ensemble size is a characteristic of existing systems
which defines the number of VIBROSEIS sweeps that can be composited
prior to correlation. Because the system of the present invention
provides compositing-after-correlation and because the system of
5   the present invention eliminates the usual listening period
between the VIBROSEIS sweeps, the limitations of discrete
ensembles looses significance; where the system of the present
invention has an unlimited ensemble size.

Excitation to ensonify the subsurface structures is
10   typically generated with a VIBROSEIS using chirp sweep techniques.
Dynamite blasts remain an important excitation source, but the
CAFDRS and the GEOCOR systems have only VIBROSEIS capability and
cannot accommodate dynamite blasts because they cannot provide
composite-after-correlation capability. The system of the present
15   invention can accommodate dynamite blasts and other non-repeatable
excitation sources because of the compositing-after-correlation
capability.

Relative productivity is a primary consideration for
geophysical exploration because of the high expense associated
20   with geophysical exploration, typically $5,000 per day, and
the limited opportunity for exploration due to climatic conditions
such as in the Arctic and in the jungles where a considerable
amount of exploration takes place. The system of the present
invention provides the highest productivity available primarily
25   because of the large array size and also because of elimination
of VIBROSEIS listening periods, adaptive determination of the
amount of data required rather than acquiring an excessive amount
of data "just to be safe", and with the implementation of
techniques that obtain more data from the acquired signals than
30   achieved with prior art systems.

Cost is an important consideration, where it is
estimated that the system of the present invention can be sold
for significantly less than one-third of the cost of systems
having compositing and correlation capability such as the CAFDRS

5   and GEOCON systems and that the system of the present invention
can be sold for significantly less than the cost of systems
not having such compositing and correlation capability; yet the
low cost system of the present invention may have 10-times the
productivity of the most advanced prior art systems.

10   The improved filtering system of the present invention
is being developed for Digital Nutronics Corp of Northridge
California under the trade names as the GEophysical EXploration
(GEX) system © and the SEismic EXploration (SEX) system ©.

Description Of Correlation And Compositing

The correlation operation is a well known mathematical operation, defined by the integral equation set forth in equation (1) below.

5
$$\int f(t)g(t-T) \qquad \text{equation (1)}$$

This integral equation represents a continuous function such as for an analog system, but the correlation computation may be synthesized with a discontinuous or sampled function such as implemented with digital computers.

10   A definition of terms will now be presented to facilitate better understanding of this description. A correlation computation is based upon a form of comparison between two signals, wherein a first signal may be called an operator or a pilot signal because it represents a filter operator and a second signal may be called
15   an input signal or a trace signal because it represents an input trace signal to be filtered or to be processed in conjunction with the operator or pilot signal. The correlator computation generates a correlation output signal which represents the degree of correlation between the trace signal and the pilot signal.
20   Digital correlation may be performed between a sampled digital trace signal and a sampled digital pilot signal to generate a sampled digital output signal. The samples may be time-domain samples representing the amplitude of the signal at discrete time intervals or may be frequency-domain samples representing the
25   amplitude of the signal at discrete frequency intervals. The trace signal samples and the pilot signal samples may have the same intervals to provide corresponding samples between the pilot and trace signals for correlation. The sample interval of the output signal may correspond to the sample interval of the trace
30   signal and the pilot signal. Corresponding samples may be shown in tabular form herein for simplicity of discussion, wherein corresponding time or phase related samples may be lined-up vertically to indicate such time or phase relations.

Digital correlation computations may be grouped into two categories, time-domain correlation and frequency-domain correlation. Time-domain correlation requires significantly more computational operations than frequency-domain correlation

5 but frequency-domain correlation involves first transforming of time-domain data into frequency-domain data in order to perform frequency-domain correlation and second transforming of correlated frequency-domain data into time-domain data for convenient evaluation by an operator.

10   Time-domain correlation is implemented by comparing an input or trace signal with a correlation operator or pilot signal as the pilot signal is shifted past the trace signal. For each shift position between the pilot signal and the trace signal as they are shifted therebetween, each corresponding pair

15 of samples of the pilot signal and the trace signal for that particular shift position are compared by multiplying each corresponding pair of samples and by summing up all of the products related to that particular shift position. This sum-of-the-products number for a particular shift position defines the

20 correlation output signal for that particular shift position. This is shown in equation (1), wherein a time-domain trace signal $f(t)$ is compared with a time-domain pilot signal $g(t)$ as the pilot signal is shifted past the trace signal under control of the shift operator T which displaces the correlation pilot

25 signal $g(t)$ by a variable T as the function $g(t-T)$ shifts along the trace signal $f(t)$. This correlation operation can be shown with digital samples for a simplified embodiment, as exemplified with the following description with reference to Table I.

        A simplified description will now be presented with

30 reference to Table I to exemplify time-domain correlation. A trace signal is received and sampled as a function of time, where the sequential samples are shown in Table I as samples A through H. A correlation pilot signal may be another sampled

signal or may be a set of samples to synthesize a desired filter

operator. The correlation pilot signal is shown in Table I as

a signal represented by samples 1 through 4. The pilot signal is

shown in Table I in five different positions of displacement

5   along the trace signal, wherein the pilot signal may be

considered to be shifted to the right by one shift position as

the correlation computation progresses from pilot signal position I

through pilot signal position V. In pilot signal position I, the

four pilot signal samples 1 through 4 are compared to the

10 corresponding four samples of the trace signal A through D by

multiplying each corresponding sample and adding the products to

form the first output signal sample I. For the first pilot signal

position (I), pilot signal samples 1 through 4 correspond to

trace signal samples A through D respectively, where multiplication

15 of the corresponding samples (A and 1, B and 2, C and 3, and D

and 4) and the summation of the products provides an output

signal sample as shown by the equation $I = A1 + B2 + C3 + D4$ in the right-

hand portion of Table I. Shifting the pilot signal one-bit

position to the right causes pilot signal samples 1 through 4 to

20 correspond with trace signal samples B through E respectively.

The output equation shown as $II = B1 + C2 + D3 + E4$ represents the sum-

of-the-products calculation for the second pilot signal shift

position II. Similarly, again shifting the pilot signal successive

one-bit positions to the right, shown as pilot signal

25 positions III-V, causes the pilot signal samples to correspond to

other groups of trace signal samples and yields the correlation

output equations shown in the right hand column of Table I.

The equations representing the correlation computation

output signal samples shown in Table I defines the magnitude of

30 the correlation computation output signal sample for the related

shift position, wherein the amplitude of this output signal sample

represents the degree of correlation or similarity between the

trace signal and the pilot signal and represents the phase or

time relationship associated with that pilot signal shift position. Magnitude of the output signal sample at each output sample point may be plotted relative to the pilot signal shift position, as shown in the bottom line of Table I; wherein the output

5 signal samples represent the time-domain waveform samples related to the filtered or correlated trace signal. The correlation output signal is shorter than the trace signal; wherein the length of the correlation output signal in number of samples (N_Z) is related to the difference between the number

10 of trace signal samples (N_T) and the number of pilot signal samples (N_P) plus one as shown in equation (2). In the above simplified example, the input signal has 8-samples and the operator signal has 4-samples, yielding a solution of 5-samples (8-4+1) as shown in Table I. In a geophysical embodiment, the

15 trace signal may have 32,000 samples and the pilot signal may have 24,000 samples; yielding an output signal having 8,001 samples (32,000-24,000+1).

The number of computations for time-domain correlation is related to both, the number of samples in the pilot signal and

20 the number of samples in the trace signal, wherein the number of samples in the pilot signal defines the number of multiplication and summation computations for each shift position and the number of samples in the trace signal relative to the pilot signal defines the number of shift positions. The number of multiplication

25 and summation operations required to implement time-domain correlation may be defined with equation (3) and equation (4), respectively, wherein N_P represents the number of pilot signal samples and N_T represents the number of trace signal samples.

$$\text{Output Samples} = (N_T - N_P + 1) \qquad \text{equation (2)}$$

30 $$\text{Products} = N_P(N_T - N_P + 1) \qquad \text{equation (3)}$$

$$\text{Sums} = (N_P - 1)(N_T - N_P + 1) \qquad \text{equation (4)}$$

TABLE I

TRACE	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	
PILOT I	1	2	3	4					$A1+B2+C3+D4$
PILOT II		1	2	3	4				$B1+C2+D3+E4$
PILOT III			1	2	3	4			$C1+D2+E3+F4$
PILOT IV				1	2	3	4		$D1+E2+F3+G4$
PILOT V					1	2	3	4	$E1+F2+G3+H4$
OUTPUT	I	II	III	IV	V				

TABLE II

TRACE	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H
PILOT	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
OUTPUT	A1	B2	C3	D4	E5	F6	G7	H8

TABLE III

T_L / P_J	T_0	T_1	T_2	T_3	T_4	T_5	T_6	T_7	T_8	T_9	T_{10}	T_{11}	T_{12}	T_{13}	T_{14}	T_{15}	z_K
	P_0	P_1	P_2	P_3	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	z_0
	-	P_0	P_1	P_2	P_3	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	z_1
	-	-	P_0	P_1	P_2	P_3	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	z_2
	-	-	-	P_0	P_1	P_2	P_3	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	z_3
	-	-	-	-	P_0	P_1	P_2	P_3	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	z_4
	-	-	-	-	-	P_0	P_1	P_2	P_3	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	z_5
	-	-	-	-	-	-	P_0	P_1	P_2	P_3	-	-	-	-	-	-	z_6
	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	P_0	P_1	P_2	P_3	-	-	-	-	-	z_7
	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	P_0	P_1	P_2	P_3	-	-	-	-	z_8
	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	P_0	P_1	P_2	P_3	-	-	-	z_9
	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	P_0	P_1	P_2	P_3	-	-	z_{10}
	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	P_0	P_1	P_2	P_3	-	z_{11}
	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	P_0	P_1	P_2	P_3	z_{12}

z_K	z_0	z_1	z_2	z_3	z_4	z_5	z_6	z_7	z_8	z_9	z_{10}	z_{11}	z_{12}
M_B	M_0	M_1	M_2	M_3	M_0	M_1	M_2	M_3	M_0	M_1	M_2	M_3	M_0

TABLE IV

| CORR OUT | | SUM-OF-THE-PRODUCTS |

$$Z_0 = P_0 \cdot T_0 + P_1 \cdot T_1 + P_2 \cdot T_2 + P_3 \cdot T_3$$

$$Z_1 = P_0 \cdot T_1 + P_1 \cdot T_2 + P_2 \cdot T_3 + P_3 \cdot T_4$$

$$Z_2 = P_0 \cdot T_2 + P_1 \cdot T_3 + P_2 \cdot T_4 + P_3 \cdot T_5$$

$$Z_3 = P_0 \cdot T_3 + P_1 \cdot T_4 + P_2 \cdot T_5 + P_3 \cdot T_6$$

$$Z_4 = P_0 \cdot T_4 + P_1 \cdot T_5 + P_2 \cdot T_6 + P_3 \cdot T_7$$

$$Z_5 = P_0 \cdot T_5 + P_1 \cdot T_6 + P_2 \cdot T_7 + P_3 \cdot T_8$$

$$Z_6 = P_0 \cdot T_6 + P_1 \cdot T_7 + P_2 \cdot T_8 + P_3 \cdot T_9$$

$$Z_7 = P_0 \cdot T_7 + P_1 \cdot T_8 + P_2 \cdot T_9 + P_3 \cdot T_{10}$$

$$Z_8 = P_0 \cdot T_8 + P_1 \cdot T_9 + P_2 \cdot T_{10} + P_3 \cdot T_{11}$$

$$Z_9 = P_0 \cdot T_9 + P_1 \cdot T_{10} + P_2 \cdot T_{11} + P_3 \cdot T_{12}$$

$$Z_{10} = P_0 \cdot T_{10} + P_1 \cdot T_{11} + P_2 \cdot T_{12} + P_3 \cdot T_{13}$$

$$Z_{11} = P_0 \cdot T_{11} + P_1 \cdot T_{12} + P_2 \cdot T_{13} + P_3 \cdot T_{14}$$

$$Z_{12} = P_0 \cdot T_{12} + P_1 \cdot T_{13} + P_2 \cdot T_{14} + P_3 \cdot T_{15}$$

TABLE V

$$Z_0 = T_0 \cdot P_0 + T_1 \cdot P_1 + T_2 \cdot P_2 + T_3 \cdot P_3$$

$$Z_1 = T_1 \cdot P_0 + T_2 \cdot P_1 + T_3 \cdot P_2 + T_4 \cdot P_3$$

$$Z_2 = T_2 \cdot P_0 + T_3 \cdot P_1 + T_4 \cdot P_2 + T_5 \cdot P_3$$

$$Z_3 = T_3 \cdot P_0 + T_4 \cdot P_1 + T_5 \cdot P_2 + \ldots$$

$$Z_4 = T_4 \cdot P_0 + T_5 \cdot P_1 + \ldots$$

$$Z_5 = T_5 \cdot P_0 + \ldots$$

TABLE VI

TIME	SAMPLE	TRACE 1	TRACE 2	TRACE 3
TA	A	1A	2A	3A
TB	B	1B	2B	3B
TC	C	1C	2C	3C
TD	D	1D	2D	3D

TABLE VII

A ➔ A1 A2 A3 A4 A5 A6 A7 A8

B ➔ B1 B2 B3 B4 B5 B6 B7 B8

C ➔ C1 C2 C3 C4 C5 C6 C7 C8

D ➔ D1 D2 D3 D4 D5 D6 D7 D8

E ➔ E1 E2 E3 E4 E5 E6 E7 E8

X ➔ X1 X2 X3 X4 X5 X6 X7 X8

TABLE VIII

$$X1 = A1+B1+C1+D1+E1$$
$$X2 = A2+B2+C2+D2+E2$$
$$X3 = A3+B3+C3+D3+E3$$
$$X4 = A4+B4+C4+D4+E4$$
$$X5 = A5+B5+C5+D5+E5$$
$$X6 = A6+B6+C6+D6+E6$$
$$X7 = A7+B7+C7+D7+E7$$
$$X8 = A8+B8+C8+D8+E8$$

Frequency-domain correlation will now be described
with reference to Table II. A frequency-domain trace signal
is shown with samples A-H, wherein a frequency-domain signal may
be provided by first sampling a time-domain signal and then
5   converting the sampled time-domain signal to a frequency-domain
signal with well known transforms such as a Discrete Fourier
Transform (DFT) or a Fast Fourier Transform (FFT) computation.
Samples A-H represent the frequency related spectral lines, wherein
sample A may represent amplitude of a lowest frequency spectral
10 line and sample H may represent amplitude of a highest frequency
spectral line. A frequency-domain correlation pilot signal is
shown as samples 1-8 which correspond to the frequency related
samples of the trace signal samples A-H respectively. The
frequency-domain trace signal samples and pilot signal samples
15 represent plots of magnitude as a function of frequency, which
may be considered to be a spectrum plot or a frequency-domain
representation of a sampled signal.

Correlation in the frequency-domain is implemented
simply by multiplying each corresponding sample of the trace signal
20 and the pilot signal to generate the related sample of the
correlation output signal in the frequency-domain, as shown by the
output signal in Table II. For example, multiplication of trace
signal sample A and pilot signal sample 1 for the lowest
frequency sample of the spectrum yields a correlation output signal
25 sample A1 having an amplitude related to the product A1 for
the lowest frequency output signal sample. Similarly, multiplication
of the trace signal sample H and the pilot signal sample 8 for
for the highest frequency sample of the spectrum yields a
correlation output signal sample H8 having an amplitude related to the
30 product H8 for the highest frequency output signal sample. Similarly,
all intermediate frequency output signal samples may be computed
as shown in the bottom row of Table II. Therefore, the computations
for frequency-domain correlation are merely a quantity of
multiplication computations that are related to the frequency
35 resolution or, alternatively, the number of spectrum samples in
the frequency-domain.

The prior art has considered time-domain correlation
to be impractical using prior art techniques, as will be
illustrated below. In a geophysical exploration application,
the trace signal may have 32,000-samples and the pilot signal
5   may have 24,000-samples, therefore requiring approximately
192-million multiplication and 192-million addition operations
per channel to implement time-domain correlation, as calculated
from equations (3) and (4). Assuming that a conventional computer
can perform a multiplication computation in 15-microseconds and
10   an addition computation in 2-microseconds, approximately one-hour
of computational time may be required per channel of correlation
computations. Further, assuming that it is desired to have
1,000-channels per system, approximately 1,000-hours of computational
time may be required to implement the correlation computations;
15   which is approximately 100,000-times slower than real-time.
Therefore, real-time time-domain correlation has not been used
in prior art systems which are implemented with conventional
digital data processing techniques.

        Conventional general purpose processors and special
20   purpose processors cannot achieve sufficient computational speed
required for even a single trace signal based upon the above
geophysical example, where it is not conceivable that conventional
techniques could be utilized to provide such computations for a
minimum requirement of 24-traces and certainly not for an ultimate
25   requirement of 1,000-traces.

        One feature of the present invention provides a
real-time time-domain correlator that can accommodate the
geophysical application described in the above example, including
a trace signal having 32,000-samples, a pilot signal having
30   24,000-samples, and 1,000-channels.

In accordance with the present invention, an unique correlator arrangement is provided to permit high speed computations, such as 25-million multiplication operations per second with a low cost correlator embodiment. Further, a low

5   cost multi-processor arrangement is provided using a plurality of low cost correlators. Each of the plurality of low cost correlators may be dedicated to a part of a channel. to a single channel, or to a plurality of channels as required to meet the speed requirements of the particular system.

10   One embodiment of the correlator of the present invention can be better understood with a simplified example to illustrate operation. This example is exemplary of one algorithm for implementing the present invention but has been simplified to more clearly illustrate the concepts involved.

15   An array of numbers is shown in Table III, which will be used to schematically illustrate the algorithm. Sixteen trace signal samples T_0-T_{15} are shown across the top of Table III. Trace signal terminology shall herein be used to indicate an input waveform in the temporal-domain or time-domain such as a

20   continuous signal from a geophone sensor. Samples of the trace signal are designated with sequential time related subscripts such as T_0-T_{15}. For this example, samples taken at increasing time intervals are labeled with sequentially increasing numbers, wherein T_0 is a first temporal-domain sample, T_1 is the next

25   subsequent temporal-domain sample, T_2 is the next subsequent temporal-domain sample, etc. Therefore, the trace samples shown in Table III represent samples taken at increasing times as the trace signal progresses towards the right.

A pilot signal is represented in Table III as samples

30   P_0-P_3, wherein the pilot signal samples are intended to represent samples of a correlation operator or pilot signal to be correlated with a trace signal T. As discussed for the trace signal above, pilot signal samples P_0-P_3 represent sequential samples taken as a function of increasing time as the subscript designation of the

35   sample increases, as shown by the sequence of pilot signal sample subscripts increasing as the pilot signal progresses to the right.

One correlation algorithm of the present invention is based upon comparing the pilot signal samples with a corresponding set of trace signal samples as the pilot signal samples are shifted along the trace signal samples toward the

5 right side of Table III. For example, the four pilot samples P_0-P_3 of this example are compared with the first four trace samples T_0-T_3 to generate the first correlator output sample Z_0; compared with the next four trace samples T_1-T_4 to generate the next correlator output signal Z_1, etc to progressively

10 compare the pilot signal samples with all sequential sets of trace signal samples to generate the Z_0-Z_{12} correlation output samples. In one embodiment, the pilot signal samples may be shifted one-sample to the right after each sequential set of comparisons to provide the next set of comparisons in sequence.

15 This shifting to the right of the pilot signal is shown in Table III, where each shift and comparison operation is shown one line nearer the bottom of Table III as the comparison computation progresses toward the right of the trace signal T_0-T_{15} or as the comparison computation progresses forward with increasing time.

20 Therefore, a time sequence of correlated output signals samples Z_0-Z_{12} may be generated as a function of increasing time as the pilot signal comparison computation progress towards the right portion of the trace indicative of increasing time.

The comparison computations shown as correlated output

25 signal samples Z_0-Z_{12} are evaluated in Table IV, wherein the schematic notation shown in Table III is set into equation form. The trace and pilot signal samples that are lined-up or correspond to each other as shown in Table III are multiplied together to provide products, then all of these products for that particular

30 correlated output sample are summed together to generate the correlated output sample Z_K. For example, the first correlated output term Z_0 shows correspondence of trace and pilot samples in Table III by the pilot samples being directly below the corresponding

trace samples shown as P_0 and T_0, P_1 and T_1, P_2 and T_2, and
P_3 and T_3. The corresponding samples are multiplied together to
generate products and the products are summed together as shown
in Table IV to generate the Z_0 correlated output sample. For
5 example, the P_0 sample and the corresponding T_0 sample are
multiplied together to generate the product term $P_0 \cdot T_0$ and,
similarly, the other three corresponding samples are multiplied
together to generate the product terms $P_1 \cdot T_1$, $P_2 \cdot T_2$, and
$P_3 \cdot T_3$. The four product terms are then added together to provide
10 the correlated output sample Z_0. Similarly, the other correlated
output samples $Z_1 - Z_{12}$ are calculated by first multiplying the
corresponding shifted pilot and trace signal samples shown
having vertical relationships in the same column of Table III
and then by summing the product terms related to the particular
15 output sample. The difference between each output sample is
primarily that the pilot signal has been shifted right relative
to the trace signal or, alternately, the trace signal could be
shifted left relative to the pilot signal to progressively change
the corresponding sample relationships and thereby to progressively
20 change the phase between the pilot signal and selected
portions of the trace signal.

Each horizontal row of Table III corresponds to a
different relative location of the pilot signal samples and the
trace signal samples, where the changes in this correspondence
25 progresses towards the right-hand portion of Table III with
increasing time as the comparison of the pilot signal progresses
towards increasing time related samples of the trace signal.
Each horizontal row of Table III corresponds to a different
correlation comparison or output sample, being identified with
30 correlated output samples $Z_0 - Z_{12}$. The output samples $Z_0 - Z_{12}$
are shown progressing vertically downward towards the bottom
of Table III to illustrate correspondence with the pilot signal
shift positions progressing vertically downward and the output

samples Z_0-Z_{12} are also shown progressing horizontally at the
bottom of Table III to illustrate correspondence with the pilot
signal as it is shifted horizontally to the right of Table III.
Therefore, the notation in Table III illustrates a time related
5   schematic notation as the pilot signal is compared with the trace
signal progressing to the right of Table III. A time related
computational operation is provided by shifting the pilot signal
and trace signal relative to each other as a function of progressing
vertically downward to define output samples related to the
10 progression of pilot signal comparisons as the pilot signal
samples are progressively shifted along the trace signal samples
and therefore along the output samples Z_0-Z_{12} which are related
to progressively increasing time-related correlations.

         The example discussed with reference to Table III
15 illustrates a pilot signal being shifted relative to a trace
signal to provide different shift orientations therebetween.
This shifting notation is used for simplicity of discussion and
is illustrative of one implementation. It is herein intended
that this shifting notation exemplify various comparison arrangements
20 including shifting of a pilot signal relative to a trace signal,
shifting of a trace signal relative to a pilot signal, shifting
in a direction of increasing time, shifting in a direction of
decreasing time, and other changes in relative positions between
a pilot signal and a trace signal. In yet another embodiment,
25 shifting operations may be implicit in accessing of parameters
from a random access memory rather than from a shifting type
memory, wherein a sequence of accesses may be achieved with a
counter being incremented through a sequence of addresses. Still
further, comparisons need not be sequential in nature, wherein
30 various correlation output samples may be calculated in a non-
sequential form, such as calculating Z_6, Z_3, Z_{10}, and other samples
in either a random form or a non-sequential form. Still further
as described in an alternate embodiment with reference to

Figs 5 and 6 hereinafter, calculation of correlation output
samples may be provided in a form that partially calculates
product terms for each of the output samples rather than calculating
a complete output sample at a particular time. The calculation

5 of product terms associated with each trace sample as that
trace sample becomes available has particular advantages for
real-time correlation and exemplifies an important feature of the
present invention. For example, calculation of all product terms
for the T_3 trace sample when it becomes available permits the

10 computation to progress in real-time without buffering and without
storing trace samples until the whole trace signal has been
sampled; wherein the product computations for the T_3 trace sample
may include generating the P_3 and T_3 product and adding it to
the Z_0 output sample, calculating the P_2 and T_3 product and

15 adding it to the Z_1 output sample, calculating the P_1 and T_3
product and adding it to the Z_2 output sample, and calculating
the P_0 and T_3 product and adding it to the Z_3 output sample.

In a non-real-time embodiment, the complete correlated
output samples may be calculated for each shift position of

20 a pilot signal along a trace signal. The product terms for each
output sample may be spread over a period of time, where a
four-sample pilot signal may be spread over four trace signal
samples which are acquired over four-sample intervals. Therefore,
a time delay may be necessary until four trace samples are

25 accumulated before a particular correlated output sample can
be completely calculated. For example, the Z_0 sample cannot be
completely calculated until the T_0-T_3 trace samples have been
acquired and processed.

The system of the present invention provides real-

30 time correlation, where a trace signal may be correlated with a
pilot signal in real-time as the trace signal samples become
available. Various advantages accrue from computing output
products in real-time as the trace samples become available.

These advantages include (1) elimination or reduction of input buffer memory which may be required for a non-real-time algorithm to store trace samples until a sufficient number of trace samples have been accumulated to generate a complete correlated output

5   sample Z_K and (2) computing "on-the-fly" in real-time as the signals become available in contrast to a non-real-time algorithm which accumulates trace samples for a period of time for computing an output sample only after complete information has been accumulated. Still other advantages accrue that will become

10   obvious from the descriptions hereinafter.

An algorithm will now be presented to exemplify the real-time correlation feature of the present invention. Pilot signal symmetry is shown in Table IV, which means that the first column is related to the P_0 sample products, the second column is

15   related to the P_1 sample products, etc; wherein the shifting of the pilot signal along the trace signal to generate the sequential output samples Z_K is illustrated by the increasing time-related notation of the trace samples for each of the pilot samples. For example, the first column of Table IV shows the P_0 sample

20   multiplied by the T_0 sample for the Z_0 output sample, by the T_1 sample for the Z_1 output sample, by the T_2 sample for the Z_2 output sample, etc. This is indicative of the shifting of the P_0 pilot sample across the trace signal to generate the P_0 product term for each of the output samples. Alternately, Table IV may

25   be restructured for columns with the same trace sample, such as in Table V wherein the first column is related to products having a T_0 sample term, the second column is related to products having a T_1 sample term, etc. Therefore, when the T_0 trace signal is acquired, it can be multiplied by the P_0 pilot signal sample

30   and added to the Z_0 output sample. Then when the T_1 trace signal sample is acquired, it can be multiplied by the P_1 pilot signal sample and added to the Z_0 output sample (which is the $T_0 \cdot P_0$ product term) to progressively build-up the Z_0 output sample.

Further, the T_1 trace signal sample can be multiplied by the P_0 pilot signal sample and added to the Z_1 output sample to build-up the Z_1 output sample. Further, as the T_2, T_3, and subsequent trace signal samples are acquired; the product computations

5   associated with each received trace signal sample can be computed and each product term can be added to the related Z_K output sample that is being built-up in the corresponding Z_K memory location as the trace samples are received. Therefore, a correlation computation may be implemented that generates

10 sequential product terms as the related trace signal samples are received to progressively build up the Z_K output samples, thereby eliminating the prior art requirement to store input trace signal samples until a complete set of trace signal samples is acquired. Effectively, this real-time algorithm generates sub-computational

15 solutions for each Z_K output sample as the computation progresses in real-time in contrast to the prior art approach of storing all trace samples, then completely calculating a particular Z output sample and then progressing to the calculation of the next complete Z output sample.

20   An orderly structure is shown in Table V, wherein each column has the same trace signal samples related to a constant sample time interval. Therefore, as time progresses toward the right of Table V, the trace signal may be sampled and all computations related to a particular trace signal sample may be

25 performed without dependence on any other trace signal samples.

          The maximum number of products that must be generated for each input trace sample is equal to the number of samples in the pilot signal, which is four in the present example. Further, the first trace samples and the last trace samples do

30 not require this maximum number of product terms, as shown in Table III. This is further shown in Table V, wherein the T_0 trace sample need only be multiplied by the P_0 pilot sample, the T_1 trace sample need only be multiplied by the P_1 and P_2 pilot samples, etc. Therefore, it can be seen that extra computational time may be

35 available at the start of a trace and at the completion of a trace for a real-time correlation algorithm, as will be discussed in detail hereinafter with reference to Figs 5 and 6.

-34-

In summary, the real-time correlator algorithm of the present invention defines an output signal sample as the sum-of-the-products of a pilot sample and a trace sample for a fixed shift position or phase relationship therebetween.

5　Therefore, each point is defined by a sample of a pilot signal multiplied by a corresponding sample of a trace signal and with the corresponding products summed together. For an "on-the-fly" algorithm, all trace signal samples may not be available simultaneously and therefore partial products may be built-up.

10　This is accomplished by taking each trace signal sample in turn as it becomes available and comparing that trace signal sample with a plurality of samples of the pilot signal, adding each product to a different output signal sample. For example, a trace signal sample may be multiplied by a first pilot signal

15　sample and added to a first output signal sample, multiplied by a second pilot signal sample and added to a second output signal sample, multiplied by a third pilot signal sample and added to a third output signal sample, etc.

A further feature of the present invention provides

20　for compositing-after-correlation, where it is desired to continue to build-up the output terms over many traces. Therefore, the start of a trace would not necessarily clear the output sample memory but may add the correlated trace product computations from the new trace to the corresponding product computations of the

25　last prior trace.

The real-time time-domain correlation algorithm and arrangement of the present invention is significantly different from the prior art non-real-time frequency-domain correlation arrangements. In prior art systems, correlation of a multi-trace

30　set of data is performed by processing the data for each trace signal separate and independent of processing of the data for the other traces. In one embodiment implemented in the CAFDRS system, 24-input channels provide 24-individual trace signals which are

processed with a compositor to provide 24-individual composited trace signals. A non-real-time frequency-domain correlator is implemented with a General Automation SPC-16 minicomputer, wherein the minicomputer accesses one composited trace signal from th

5   stored composited data and performs a correlation computation between the single trace signal and a pilot signal. Each of the 24-traces are correlated independent of all other traces. Therefore, the correlator is merely a single trace correlator that correlates each of a plurality of traces in sequence with

10   the pilot signal. The prior art correlator architecture does not consider that a plurality of traces are provided from a plurality of channels, where the correlator is implemented as merely a single channel correlator that is time-shared between a plurality of channels.

15   In accordance with a feature of the present invention, a multichannel correlator arrangement is provided wherein the correlator algorithm and implementation considers the number of channels and processes information from a plurality of channels in an interleaved or overlapping form. This multichannel

20   correlator arrangement is a unique feature of the real-time time-domain correlator of the present invention, wherein prior art non-real-time correlators provide for buffering of input trace signals such as with disc memories where prior art correlators partition and structure correlation computations independent of

25   real-time considerations. For example, the prior art non-real-time correlators process all samples of a first trace signal before processing any samples associated with another trace signal, wherein the samples at the end of a first trace signals that had been acquired after the samples at the beginning of the

30   other traces may be processed first. Therefore, in prior art systems all samples in a single trace may be processed before earlier received samples at the beginning of other traces are processed where prior art correlators correlate data in a form that is not only not in real-time but is not even time sequential for

35   the relative times of arrivals of the samples.

Spacial-domain and temporal-domain signals will now
be illustrated with a brief example with reference to Table VI.
Time samples A-D may be considered to be temporal-domain samples
wherein samples A-D are taken at different times and therefore
5   have a variable temporal-domain characteristic. Samples of a
plurality of trace signals such as trace signals 1-3 may be made
at a particular sample interval such as a sample interval A.
Samples 1A-3A taken at sample interval A from trace
signals 1-3 respectively have a constant temporal-domain
10   characteristic, wherein the time of each sample is substantially
the same, and have a variable spacial-domain characteristic, wherein
each sample is taken from a different trace signal generated by
a different transducer of an array of transducers across the array
in the spacial-domain. Similarly, samples 1A-1D may be taken
15   from a single trace at successive sample intervals thereby having
a constant spacial-domain characteristic related to a single trace
signal and having a variable temporal-domain characteristic
being the sequential samples at increasing sample times TA-TD.

For simplicity herein, any references to temporal-domain
20   samples are intended to mean samples having a variable temporal-
domain characteristic and having a constant spacial-domain
characteristic such as trace signal 1 samples 1A-1D; trace
signal 2 samples 2A-2D; or trace signal samples 3 samples 3A-3D.
Similarly, any reference to spacial-domain samples are intended
25   to mean samples having a constant temporal-domain characteristic
and having a variable spacial-domain characteristic such as
time TA samples 1A-3A; time TB samples 1B-3B; time TC samples 1C-3C,
or time TD samples 1D-3D.

Spacial-domain and temporal-domain samples are herein
30   intended to mean samples taken with both a variable temporal-domain
characteristic and a variable spacial-domain characteristic such as
samples taken across an array of trace signals at sequential sample
times exemplified by samples 1A, 2B, and 3C or samples 1B, 2C,
and 3D.

Further, a spacial-frequency is herein intended to mean
the frequency across the array such as the wave pattern sensed
by an array of transducers for a particular sample interval
and a temporal-frequency is herein intended to mean the frequency
5   as a function of time such as sampled with a plurality of sample
intervals for a particular trace signal.

In accordance with another feature of the present
invention, the real-time time-domain correlator of the present
invention provides correlation computations for the samples that
is consistent with the time-of-arrival or time-of-acquisition of
5   the samples. Therefore, the earlier samples associated with each
of a plurality of trace signals may be processed before the later
arrivals associated with the plurality of any of the trace
signals. Effectively, correlation is performed across an array
in the spacial-domain based upon constant time-of-arrival or
10 constant temporal-domain samples in contrast to the prior art
arrangements of correlating along a trace with constant spacial-
domain trace samples and varying time-of-arrival or temporal-
domain samples. Another way of defining this feature of the
present invention is to consider the correlation algorithm of
15 the present invention as providing correlation in the spacial-
domain across a plurality of channels for a particular time-
interval in contrast with the prior art correlator arrangements
which provide correlation in the temporal-domain or time-domain
along a trace with varying time-of-arrival but constant channel or
20 spacial-domain samples. This consideration may be better
understood with a simplified example shown in Table VI. Three
traces are shown as traces 1 through 3, with each trace having
four samples A through D. For simplicity, it is herein assumed
that all corresponding time samples are sampled simultaneously
25 for each of the three channels. Therefore, at time T, sample 1A
is taken from channel 1, sample 2A is taken from channel 2, and
sample 3A is taken from channel 3. In prior art systems, each
trace is correlated effectively simultaneously and independent
of all other traces. For example, prior art correlators accept
30 samples 1A through 1D of trace 1 and correlate all of these
samples in trace 1 independent of other traces. In prior art
systems, after completion of correlation of trace 1, trace 2 will
be correlated and finally trace 3 will be correlated in sequence.

Each trace signal corresponds to a channel in the spacial-domain, where the horizontal dimension set forth in Table VI may be considered to be taken in the spacial-domain at constant time and each of the samples A through D may be considered to be

5   taken in the temporal-domain with increasing time. In accordance with one feature of the present invention, a correlator is provided for real-time time-domain correlation across the temporal-dimension or in the temporal-domain of the array, wherein correlation is provided for all samples taken at time TA;

10   being samples 1A, 2A, and 3A; across the array of traces during substantially constant time. In one embodiment of the present invention, these samples are correlated as they are received in time; where the prior art requirement, to buffer all of the information until a complete trace is accumulated, is eliminated

15   with the system of the present invention, thereby reducing the amount of memory required and further enhancing the real-time nature of the correlation computation.

A distinction between prior art correlation algorithms and the real-time time-domain algorithm of the present invention

20   discussed above will be further exemplified
relative to Table VI. Trace signal samples are typically taken at substantially fixed time intervals across an array, wherein the samples across the array have a constant temporal-domain or time-domain parameter and have a variable spacial-domain parameter

25   from trace-to-trace across the array. For example, sample A represents a substantially constant time period, wherein each of the traces; trace-1, trace-2, and trace-3; are sampled at sample time A to provide constant time samples 1A-3A across the array. The real-time time-domain algorithm of the present invention

30   provides for processing these constant temporal-domain, variable spacial-domain samples and to provide correlation computations thereon. In prior art systems, all of the samples for all of the traces are acquired, buffered, and composited prior to correlation

where samples 1A-3A, 1B-3B, etc are acquired and buffered prior
to correlation. After all samples are taken in the temporal-
domain as shown in Table VI as a row; prior art systems correlate
each individual trace in the spacial-domain as shown in Table VI
5   as a column, wherein each trace is correlated independent of all
other traces. For example, prior art systems would correlate
trace 1 comprising samples 1A-1D, then store the correlated
output samples of trace 1; then correlate trace 2 comprising
samples 2A-2D, then store the correlated output samples of
10 trace 2; wherein correlation would progress on a trace-by-trace
basis from channel-to-channel in the spacial-domain.

The spacial-domain may be considered to be the domain
having a spacial variable, wherein the plurality of trace channels
may be related to a distribution of transducers along an array
15 in the spacial-domain and each trace from a particular transducer
is related to a constant spacial-domain parameter with samples
taken at a variable time in the temporal-domain. Similarly,
samples taken across an array at particular time intervals may
be considered to have a constant temporal-domain parameter for
20 each set of constant time samples and a variable spacial-domain
parameter.

One feature of the present invention provides a
significantly different correlation algorithm for real-time
operation, wherein correlation is provided as the samples are
25 received, wherein each correlation operation is related to a
constant time-domain parameter and a variable spacial-domain
parameter across the array. For example, when sample A is acquired
across the array (samples 1A-3A), the samples acquired for a
particular sample time interval may all be correlated as the
30 samples are received. At subsequent sample times such as sample B
time, another set of constant temporal-domain, variable spacial-
domain samples (samples 1B-3B) are acquired and correlated.
This real-time correlation algorithm of the present invention

progressively builds up the correlation output signal as the
samples are acquired, thereby mitigating the need to buffer
large amounts of input information until a complete set of
trace samples are acquired as with prior art systems. Further,

5 with the compositing-after-correlation feature of the present
invention, the need to accumulate the samples for compositing-
before-correlation is eliminated thereby further enhancing the
feasibility of real-time compositing-after-correlation.

In summary, one real-time correlation feature of the

10 present invention can be contrasted to prior art correlation
algorithms with reference to Table VI; wherein the real-time
correlation algorithm of the present invention provides successive
correlation computations across the rows of Table VI for each
sample before progressing to subsequent samples arriving at

15 subsequent time-intervals on a sample-by-sample progression
basis as contrasted to prior art correlation algorithms
which provide correlation along the columns of Table VI for each
trace before progressing to the correlation of the next trace on
a trace-by-trace progression basis. This real-time algorithm

20 of the present invention will be described hereinafter relative
to Fig 6E for a multi-processor arrangement such as having an
individual correlation processor for each channel, wherein each
sample for each channel may be processed as it is received
simultaneously or in parallel by each of the multi-processor

25 channel arrangements. An alternate embodiment of this feature of
the present invention described with reference to Fig 5A herein-
after may provide a processor for a plurality of channels
being time-shared between the plurality of channels such as by
sequentially processing each of the received samples for a

30 particular sample interval having a constant temporal-domain
parameter as described above; wherein the sequential processing
across the array such as across a row associated with Table VI
before sequentially progressing to other subsequent samples
exemplifies this real-time correlation algorithm in accordance

35 with the instant real-time correlation algorithm feature of the
present invention.

For simplicity of discussion, signal samples are shown lined up in columns and rows in the tables for exemplifying the features of the present invention, where this row and column configuration is provided for simplicity and is not intended to

5   be a limitation on the present invention. For example, sampling of all traces for a particular sample interval is shown associated with each row of Table VI wherein all samples in a particular row such as samples 1A-3A correspond to a particular sample time.

In accordance with another feature of the present

10   invention, the samples need not be taken at a constant sample time but the samples may be taken sequentially such as by using a sequential multiplexer arrangement; wherein the sampling process may be sequential and may be either continuous or discontinuous with time intervals between samples. As an example

15   of this feature of the present invention, the samples shown in Table VI may be taken in the sequence of samples 1A, 2A, 3A, 1B, 2B, 3B, 1C, etc in a sequential fashion for scanning across the traces in the spacial-domain and then repeating the scanning across the traces for subsequent sample times. This embodiment

20   may be implemented with all samples having constant sample intervals and alternately may be implemented with differences between the sample intervals. For example, samples 1A-3A may be taken rapidly for a substantially constant time of sampling for all traces at sample time A (samples 1A-3A), followed by a

25   longer time delay before sampling the traces at sample time B, followed by relatively rapid sampling of all traces at sample time B (samples 1B-3B), etc. Sampling techniques are well known in the art such as in data acquisition systems and telemetry systems, wherein sampling intervals may be controlled by clock

30   pulse rates and sampled signals may be selected with an address counter being incremented with controlling clock pulses to sequence between addresses of a plurality of channels; wherein a particular channel may be selected with a multiplexer operating in response to an address counter.

The operation of compositing will now be described. Compositing is used in the prior art to accumulate input signals for improvement of signal-to-noise (S/N) ratio and for data compression to reduce data rates required for recording or
5 postprocessing. Compositing will now be described with reference to Tables VII and VIII.

A schematic notation will be described with reference to Table VII to illustrate compositing. Six signal rows are shown labeled signals A through E and X. Signal A is received,
10 sampled, and digitized to provide a sequence of samples shown as samples A1-A8 having substantially constant time periods therebetween. Similarly, waveforms B through E have sequential samples B1-B8 through E1-E8 respectively. Waveform X illustrates a composited waveform having composited samples X1-X8 which are
15 calculated from the corresponding samples in waveforms A-E as described with the equations shown in Table VIII. The first composited sample X1 in composited waveform X is calculated by adding up all of the corresponding samples of the received signals, wherein signals A-E have corresponding first samples A1-E1 and
20 wherein corresponding first samples A1-E1 are summed together to generate the first composited sample X1. Similarly, corresponding second samples A2-E2 are summed together to generate the second composited sample X2, corresponding third samples A3-E3 are summed together to generate the third composited sample X3, etc.
25 In a geophysical embodiment, a VIBROSEIS may be used to ensonify subsurface structures and a return signal A is sampled to provide sequential time related samples A1-A8. Next, the VIBROSEIS may be used to again ensonify subsurface structures and the return signal B is sampled to provide sequential time
30 related samples B1-B8 corresponding as nearly as possible to samples A1-A8 respectively of waveform A. This process may be repeated many times, wherein 16-times is a typical quantity thereby generating 16-signals that are sampled and wherein a composited signal is generated having the sum of all corresponding
35 samples. Therefore, a composited signal X is generated by compositing corresponding samples of a plurality of waveforms A-E to generate the composited samples X1-X8 for the composited wave-waveform X. _44_

Compositors are well known in the art such as provided by Scientific Data Systems of Santa Monica, California as Trace Compositor Model 1011 described in Technical Manual SDS 980262A dated November 1967 and incorporated herein by reference and

5   such as the compositor in the CAFDRS system manufactured by United Geophysical of Pasadena, California.

Prior art compositors have many limitations and problems. For example, the ensonifying signals such as the VIBROSEIS must be precisely synchronized with the receiving of

10 the reflected signals to insure that the sequential trace signals line-up therebetween. Further, it is necessary that ensonifying signals be identical to insure that corresponding samples composited together are related to the same sweep signal. Still further, the operation of compositing precludes the use

15 of non-repeatable ensonifying sources such as explosives because of the above requirement for repeatability between ensonifying signals. Yet further, the operation of compositing integrates, averages, smears, and otherwise obscures the specific information from each signal.

20   As will be discussed in detail below, an arrangement that correlates trace signals without compositing obtains substantial advantages such as precluding the need to have precisely repeatable ensonifying signals, permitting use of non-repeatable ensonifying sources such as dynamite, eliminating

25 a large memory requirement for storing trace signals, and eliminating a large computational requirement associated with storing composited signals and computing the composited signals respectively. Further, a compositor arrangement requires a listening period, as will be described hereinafter, which may

30 be eliminated with the system of the present invention to enhance productivity.

A correlator may be considered to be a device for data compression, wherein large amounts of data may be processed to compress the data into a reduced form. For example, A geophysical embodiment may have 1,000-channels and 32,000-samples per channel based upon a sample rate of 1,000-samples per second and a 32-second trace. Therefore, a total of approximately 32-million (1,000-channels times 32,000-samples per channel) would have to be buffered for prior art geophysical correlator arrangements. Further, assuming a 24,000-sample pilot signal, total of 8,001 output signal samples would be generated per channel as calculated with equation (2) (32,000-trace samples minus 24,000-operator samples plus 1) providing data compression that reduces a total of 32-million input signal samples (1,000-channels) to only 8-million output signal samples (1,000-channels) for data compression by a factor of 4. Further, the use of compositing to further compress the input information, such as with compositing-before-correlation or by compositing-after-correlation in accordance with the present invention, provides additional data compression by a factor related to the number of composites. For example, a system providing sixteen composites provides an additional data compression factor of 16 by compositing 16-ensembles together to reduce the number of individual samples that must be stored and processed. Therefore, data compression for the above example provides a data compression factor of 4 for correlation and a data compression factor of 16 for compositing, yielding data compression by a factor of 64. Therefore, the quantity of output signal samples may be only about 2% of the total number of trace signal samples.

Data compression is further improved with the system of the present invention by eliminating the need to buffer composited information prior to correlation. In the above example, 32-million composited samples would be buffered or stored prior to correlation and an additional 8-million samples would be buffered or stored after correlation, yielding a total storage requirement

of 40-million samples. In accordance with the compositing-after-correlation feature of the present invention; the need to store the composited information before correlation is eliminated where the above requirement for storing 40-million samples (32-million

5 composited samples and 8-million correlated samples) is reduced to a requirement for storing only the 8-million correlated signals for an improvement of 5-times (8-million samples compared to 40-million samples). This advantage is further enhanced by the consideration that this large number of samples must be continually

10 accessed for compositing and correlation updates, where a reduction in the number of samples by a factor of 5 may also provide a reduction in memory access data rates.

Resolution Considerations

It is generally considered that the accuracy of a digital computation is limited by the least accurate computational parameter. Therefore, prior art systems are implemented under

5 the incorrect assumption that high resolution input data and high resolution computations are necessary to obtain high accuracy output data for a correlation computation. For example, if a 10-bit resolution digital number is added to a 15-bit resolution digital number, the sum will be a 15-bit resolution digital number

10 having 10-bits of significant resolution which is the 10-most-significant-bits (MSBs) and 5-bits of nonsignificant resolution which is the 5-least-significant-bits (LSBs). Further, if a 10-bit resolution digital number is multiplied by a 15-bit resolution digital number, the product will be a 25-bit resolution

15 digital number with 10-MSBs of significant resolution and 15-LSBs of nonsignificant resolution. Therefore, the prior art has considered that it is necessary to provide high significance resolution input data and high significance resolution computations to obtain high significance resolution output data. For example,

20 prior art correlators provide 16-bits of significant digital resolution for input words and 16-bits of significant computational resolution to attempt to achieve up to 16-bits digital output accuracy. This prior art rationale has necessitated implementation of complex whole-word data processors in prior art systems.

25 For simplicity of discussion, the term "resolution" is herein intended to mean "significant resolution"; wherein the distinction of significant resolution over non significant resolution will be achieved by referring to non significant resolution by the full terminology "non-significant resolution". Although many

30 non significant bits of resolution may be provided which do not contribute to the effective resolution or accuracy of the system such as by adding non significant zero LSBs; the terms accuracy or precision is therefore intended to be related to the significant resolution of a number and not to the nonsignificant

35 resolution of the number.

One feature of the present invention provides high resolution output data in response to low resolution input data and low resolution computations for a digital filter processor. Therefore, in accordance with one feature of the present invention,

5 a digital filter exemplified with a correlator arrangement is provided for receiving input data having a first resolution characteristic and for generating output data having a second resolution characteristic; wherein the output data has a greater, or higher, or better resolution characteristic than the input data.

10 In effect, output data can be provided having a resolution characteristic that is relatively independent of the resolution characteristic of the input data. In one embodiment, input data having single-bit resolution is processed with a single-bit correlator arrangement in accordance with the present invention

15 for providing output data having 20-bit resolution. The single-bit input resolution may not significantly limit the resolution of the output data, where the resolution of the output data is determined more by the number of correlation samples than by the input signal resolution and where even 20-bit output resolution is not an inheren

20 limitation for single-bit input resolution data. For example, correlation with a larger number of samples may permit 24-bit, 32-bit, and greater levels of output data resolution depending upon the number of correlation samples.

A digital number may be defined as having a resolution

25 determined by the number of binary-bits, wherein the number of bits to the base two defines the number of counts for the linear resolution of the system. For example, a 10-bit number is said to have a resolution of 10-bits, which means that the resolution is one part in 2^{10} or one part in 1,024-counts. Therefore, a

30 10-bit digital number provides an exponential resolution of 10-bits which is equal to a linear resolution of one part in 1,024 or approximately a resolution of one-tenth of one-percent (0.001).

The feature of the present invention wherein high-resolution output correlation numbers are generated in response to low resolution input numbers will now be discussed with reference to several examples to illustrate the concept.

5   In a first example, a digital system will be considered having single-bit resolution for the pilot and trace signal samples and wherein the pilot signal has 66,000 correlatable samples. For a single-bit trace signal sample and a single-bit pilot signal sample, the product may be either a one-bit product for a

10   comparison condition or a zero-bit product for a non-comparison condition. This consideration can be better understood with reference to multiplication of a pair of sign-bits. A positive sign-bit product is obtained when the sign-bit of the trace signal sample and the sign-bit of the pilot signal sample have

15   the same sign, either both being positive or both being negative, thereby yielding a positive product sign-bit. Similarly, a negative sign-bit product is obtained when the sign-bit of the trace signal sample and the sign-bit of the pilot signal sample are different wherein one sign-bit is positive and the other

20   sign-bit is negative. The magnitude of an output signal sample is determined by the sum-of-the-products. Therefore, a minimum output signal sample magnitude may be obtained for all summed products being negative sign-bits indicative of non-comparisons and a maximum output signal sample magnitude may be obtained for all

25   summed products being positive sign-bits or one-bits indicative of full comparison between the trace signal and the pilot signal. For the present example having 66,000 pilot signal samples; a maximum output signal sample magnitude may be 66,000 which is related to approximately a 16-bit digital resolution. Combinations

30   of positive and negative products yield output signal sample magnitudes inbetween the minimum of zero and the maximum of 66,000 wherein the magnitude of an output signal sample is related to the degree of correlation for a particular comparison between

the trace signal and the pilot signal. Therefore,
a correlation computation having only single-bit input
data resolution can generate output data with 16-bit resolution or
any other resolution output information depending upon the number
5 of correlation samples considered.

In a second example, an input analog signal may have
noise superimposed thereon and may have a low signal-to-noise
ratio. An analog filtering arrangement such as an integrator may
be used to smooth or filter the input signal to enhance the
10 signal-to-noise ratio, wherein the smoothing is a summation type
of operation and wherein the smoothed or filtered output signal
may have greater precision than the noisy input signal. For
example, an input signal may be a 2-volt DC signal having $\pm$ 1-volt
of ripple or noise superimposed thereon. Therefore, an instantaneous
15 measurement or sample of the input DC signal may be anywhere
within the range of 2-volts $\pm$ 1-volt, yielding a relatively low
accuracy measurement of 50%. After filtering, the output signal
may be a 2-volt DC signal having only 0.1-volt of noise or ripple
superimposed thereon. Therefore, an instantaneous measurement or
20 sample of the output DC signal may be anywhere within the range
of 2-volts $\pm$ 0.1-volt yielding a relatively high accuracy
measurement of 5% which is approximately 10-times better than the
accuracy of the input signal. Therefore, integration or summation
of a signal over a period of time or over a plurality of samples
25 may be used to integrate-out or filter-out errors in that signal,
combining signal portions to provide an output signal that has
a higher accuracy and resolution than the related input signal.

Resolution and accuracy of a correlator is related
to (1) the resolution and accuracy of the input trace and pilot
30 signal samples, (2) the number of sub-computational products which
are related to the number of samples in the pilot signal, and
(3) the number of signals that are composited together after
correlation. For the single-bit correlator of the present invention,

accuracy and resolution of the input signal samples may be one-bit.
For a 24,000 sample pilot signal, the accuracy and resolution is
about 14-bits. For 16-trace composite-after-correlation operations,
the accuracy and resolution are enhanced with another 4-bits.

5 Therefore, a system having a single-bit correlation with a 24,000-
sample pilot signal and with 16-composite-after-correlation
operations may provide an 18-bit output signal sample resolution
(14-bits plus 4-bits).

     In general with computations such as the correlation

10 computation, summation of a plurality of samples increases
resolution and accuracy of an output signal with respect to an
input signal because of the summation or integration process.

     In accordance with the present invention, a high
accuracy correlator can be implemented by providing computational

15 resolution less than the resolution required for the output
signal, thereby reducing costs and increasing speed over prior
art correlators that implement computations having a computational
resolution comparable to the resolution required for the output
signal. In a preferred embodiment, the trace signal and the pilot

20 signal may each be single-bit resolution signals and the
computation may be implemented with single-bit multiplication and
addition computations. In another embodiment, the input signal
and the data signal may be represented by a single-bit signal and
a multi-bit signal, wherein the trace signal may be the single-

25 bit signal and the pilot signal may be the multi-bit signal, or
conversely. In yet another embodiment, the trace signal and/or
the pilot signal may be a single-bit binary signal, a ternary
signal, or a multi-bit binary signal and wherein both the trace
signal and the pilot signal may have the same resolution or may

30 have different resolutions. In still another embodiment, the
trace signal and the pilot signal may be represented with low
resolution multi-bit binary signals such as 4-bit resolution
signals to yield a high resolution output signal such as a

20-bit resolution output signal. Therefore, advantages are
obtained by representing the trace and pilot signals as lower
resolution binary signals for generating higher resolution
output signals, wherein the input signals may be represented as
5   low resolution single-bit binary, ternary, or multi-bit binary
signals for generating higher resolution output signals. In
accordance with yet another feature of the present invention, the
two correlation input signals, which are the trace signal and the
pilot signal, may have different resolutions; wherein the pilot
10   signal may be single-bit binary resolution signal and the trace
signal may be a ternary signal or a multi-bit binary signal. In
general, different lower resolution input correlation signals may be
used to generate higher resolution output signals. In an
embodiment described above, the input correlation signals (the
15   trace signal and the pilot signal) may be single-bit resolution
binary signals which are used to generate a 20-bit resolution
output signal. Alternately, one of the two input correlation
signals (the trace signal or the pilot signal) may be a single-bit
binary signal and the other one of these two input correlation
20   signals may be a ternary signal. In yet another embodiment,
the trace signal and the pilot signal may both be ternary signals.
In still another embodiment, one of the two input correlation
signals (either the trace signal or the pilot signal) may be a
multi-bit digital signal such as a four-bit digital signal and
25   the other of these two input correlation signals may be either a
one-bit binary signal or a ternary signal. In still another
embodiment, the two input correlation signals (the trace signal and
the pilot signal) may be multi-bit binary signals either having
the same resolution such as both of these signals being four-bit
30   binary signals or may have different resolutions such as one of
these signals being a two-bit binary signal and the other of
these signals being a four-bit binary signal to generate a
20-bit output signal. Other combinations of accuracy and resolution
will now become obvious to those skilled in the art from the
35   teachings of the present invention.

A simplified discussion will now be provided to illustrate
how low resolution input information can preserve amplitude
information sufficient to reconstruct signals through digital
filtering such as through correlation to generate high resolution

5 output signals. These discussions are provided in simple form
for intuitive understanding and are not intended to be rigorous
derivations nor error analysis. Further, these discussions
on errors, noise, and resolution are provided merely for backup
information to impart an intuitive understanding of a rationale

10 that shows why the system of the present invention operates in
the form described. It should be noted that one skilled in the
art may practice the present invention from the hardware and
software embodiments disclosed herein independent of whether the
underlying qualifications are understood and accepted. For

15 example, from the teachings of the present invention one skilled
in the logical design art can design a correlator to accept
single-bit input signal samples for generating higher resolution
output signal samples independent of whether such a logical designer
understands why it is permissible to round-off input signals to

20 single-bit resolution. The following discussions are presented to
inpart an intuitive feeling associated with considerations such
as very small signal-to-noise ratios (large noise components),
enhancement of resolution with correlation computations, and
other such considerations and is not intended as a rigorous

25 analysis or qualification of the implementations provided herein.

The correlation computation of the present invention
may be used to locate signals mixed with high levels of noise,
wherein the noise may have a very high amplitude and the signal
may have a very low amplitude. Therefore, conversion of trace

30 input samples with high resolution provides high resolution noise
information, wherein the signal is "buried" in the noise and the
high resolution of the input signal merely relates to sampling of
noise with high resolution. Therefore, sampling of extremely

noisy signals to high resolution may not provide a meaningful
advantage over sampling of noisy signals with low resolution
such as with one-bit resolution. Signal enhancement may be
achieved through correlation operations enhancing the signal-to-
5   noise ratio but may not be achieved by high-resolution conversion
of input samples, wherein correlation operations do not require
high resolution noise information and other digital filtering
operations discussed do not require high resolution noise information.
It may be considered that a noisy signal is inherently a low ·
10   resolution signal because the noise superimposed thereon reduces
the significance of an input signal sample. Therefore, because
of the low resolution associated with the noisy input signal,
sampling to high resolution such as with a ten-bit analog-to-
digital converter provides extensive nonsignificant information
15   that is not necessary for a correlation computation.

A correlation algorithm may be described as searching
a trace signal in the temporal-domain or phase-domain to find
a match with a pilot signal, wherein the correlation computation
is extremely sensitive to phase considerations and may have only
20   a secondary sensitivity to amplitude considerations. Phase
information is preserved in low resolution input samples because
phase may be related to the sign-bit of the input sample to
detect when a zero-crossing occurs as positive-to-negative or
negative-to-positive transitions; wherein the magnitude of
25   peak signals may be of less significance and may actually degrade
the sensitivity of the correlation operation especially in the
presence of extensive noise.

When a small analog signal has high levels of noise
superimposed thereon, the random nature of the zero-crossings of
30   the noise signal components may be biased by the amplitude of
the signal component. For example, a positive signal component
reduces the negative duty-cycle of the noise signal component.
Therefore, magnitude of the signal component may be related to a

duty-cycle characteristic of the noise signal. The duty-cycle
of a purely random noise signal is 50% in the positive-state and
50% in the negative-state, which is then biased to provide different
duty-cycle relationships in the positive and negative states
5   based on the biasing by the signal superimposed thereon. Duty-
cycle is herein intended to mean the percent of time that a
signal occupies a state, wherein noise duty-cycle may be the
percent of time that the noise is in the positive-state compared
to the percent of time that the noise is in the negative-state.
10   For example, a 50% duty-cycle may indicate that the noise is in
the positive-state for a duration of time equal to the time the
noise is in the negative-state and a 100% duty cycle may indicate
that the noise is always in the positive-state and never in the
negative-state. If the noise has a relatively high frequency,
15   then a large number of zero-crossing conditions will occur.
Further, if the signal-to-noise ratio is small, then the noise
duty-cycle will not be biased too far from the normal 50% duty-
cycle nature of noise and, therefore, the large number of zero-
crossings will be essentially preserved. Because the signal
20   amplitude may be resident in the duty-cycle of the noise in the
positive-state and in the negative-state, a low resolution input
sample such as a one-bit input sample may be sufficient to
completely define the duty-cycle nature of the noise as biased by
the signal. Further, the duty-cycle considerations and the
25   relatively large number of zero-crossing transitions preserve the
phase nature of the signal in the noise and therefore provide good
correlation even with low resolution input samples and low
signal-to-noise ratios. Further, high resolution samples may
provide noise amplitude information having only a small component
30   of signal amplitude information; wherein the correlation computation
used in conjunction with low input signal-to-noise ratios is very
sensitive to phase information which is preserved with low
resolution input samples and is relatively insensitive to high

resolution amplitude information; wherein high resolution amplitude information may be related mostly to noise amplitude and therefore may not significantly enhance the phase information; and wherein signal amplitude information may be implicit in the noise

5   duty-cycle and therefore in zero-crossing information available from low·resolution samples. Different amplitudes of the signal component in either the positive-state or negative-state biases the noise component from a 50% duty-cycle to a greater duty-cycle in the positive-state when biased with a positive signal component

10   and a greater duty-cycle in the negative-state when biased with a negative signal component; wherein the magnitude of the duty-cycle is related to the magnitude of the signal bias impressed thereon.

Therefore, a small signal superimposed upon large

15   amplitude noise biases the noise duty-cycle in relation to the signal amplitude and polarity and therefore the signal amplitude and polarity can be reconstructed from the noise duty-cycle. Because noise zero-crossing information is related to noise duty-cycle, a low·resolution sample such as a single-bit sample

20   is sufficient to extract noise duty-cycle information and therefore to reconstruct the signal impressed thereon. This consideration can be better understood by the analogy of filtering of analog signals, where a filter effectively averages noise and generates a filtered output signal related to duty-cycle of the noise as

25   biased by the signal impressed thereon.

Input signals are usually mixed with extensive amounts of noise so that a visual observation of the input signals may only show large amounts of noise but may not show the signals included therein. Therefore, a whole-number analog-to-digital

30   conversion of input samples may provide primarily sampled noise information that is non-significant, where the whole-number resolution may merely provide the noise magnitude to high resolution and may provide the signal magnitude to low resolution.

Therefore, monitoring the sign-bit of the signals with a single-bit
analog-to-digital conversion may provide substantially the same
signal resolution as provided with a whole-number analog-to-
digital conversion for a noisy input signal. Therefore, roundoff

5 of the input signal may have an inconsequential effect and may
not require the high resolution input signals as provided with
prior art systems.

The system of the present invention may provide
significant precision advantages over the prior art systems,

10 notwithstanding the above discussed roundoff of the input signal.
As discussed herein, the correlation and compositing algorithms
enhance resolution by combining or filtering many samples having
random noise superimposed thereon to reduce the amount of noise
and to effectively improve the signal-to-noise ratio. In the

15 system of the present invention, the sum-of-the-products computation
may use low resolution input signals such as single-bit signals
and the low resolution computation may be used to update output
words having high resolution such as 16-bit words or 20-bit words
or any resolution word required; wherein the sum-of-the-products

20 computation may not be rounded-off in a preferred embodiment of
the present invention.

In prior art systems, the input signal may be converted
with 16-bit resolution and the computations; such as a Fast
Fourier Transform, correlation computation in the frequency-

25 domain, and an inverse Fast Fourier Transform; typically have a
fixed word size such as 16-bits wherein the multiplication,
addition, and other computations are rounded-off to the 16-bit
word size during the computation. Assuming that the correlation
computations permit enhancement of resolution, prior art arrangements

30 provide the correlation computation in the frequency-domain thereby
generating high resolution information which is subsequently
processed with an inverse Fast Fourier Transform which rounds-off
the high precision correlated information to 16-bit information

through many iterative stages of transform computations, thereby progressively degrading the precision of the computation through successive computation and roundoff operations, where roundoff errors accumulate as the computation progresses through the

5   inverse Fast Fourier Transform operations and wherein the error buildup may be based upon a root-sum-of-the-squares (RSS) statistical relationship or other well known error propagation relationships. Therefore, roundoff after correlation as implemented in prior art systems causes an error buildup in the output

10   information while the absence of roundoff after correlation in accordance with the present invention preserves the accuracy obtained with the correlation computation.

In view of the above, roundoff during signal acquisition may have small impact or even an inconsequential impact on

15   precision of output information while roundoff after the correlation computation may have a significant impact on precision of output information. Therefore, low resolution conversion and multiplication and high resolution output in accordance with the present invention may provide significant accuracy improvements over the prior art

20   arrangements where prior art arrangements provide smaller amounts of roundoff in the input but propagate roundoff through the correlation computation and the computations following the correlation computation. Therefore, the system of the present invention provides lower cost higher speed input signal conversion

25   and multiplication computations in conjunction with high output resolution in contrast with prior art systems.

Description Of Fig 1

The present invention provides various unique
arrangements of subsystems to configure improved digital
filtering systems and provides unique arrangements for the
5 subsystems. System arrangements 100-105 are shown in Figs 1A-1F,
wherein advantages achievable with different arrangements in
accordance with the present invention will be discussed with
reference thereto. Preferred embodiments of the subsystems
discussed with reference to Figs 1A-1F are discussed in more
10 detail with reference to Figs 2-9 hereinafter. Alternately,
subsystems shown in Figs 1A-1F may be implemented with well
known prior art devices that may be arranged in the unique
manner in accordance with the present invention and having the
unique cooperation discussed with reference to Figs 1A-1F. For
15 simplicity of discussion, the system of the present invention may
be described with reference to a geophysical exploration system
or other systems. It is herein intended that any references to
a geophysical exploration system or other system be exemplary
of the more general applicability of the system of the present
20 invention and be useable in other applications such as sonar
applications, radar applications, communication applications,
and other applications.

A plurality of system configurations 100-105 are
illustrated in Figs 1A-1F respectively and will be discussed
25 hereafter to illustrate preferred embodiments of the system of
the present invention.

One embodiment of the present invention is shown as
system 100 in Fig 1A. Transmitter 108 may generate transmitted
signals 109 to ensonify an environment. Reflections from the
30 environment shown as signal 109 may be received by an array of
transducers 110 to generate transducer output signals 111 to
signal processor 112. Signal processor 112 may process array
signals 111 to generate processed output signals 113 for
processing with compositor 114 and correlator 116 and for
35 subsequent outputting with output device 118.

-60-

Transmitter 108 may be a VIBROSEIS for generating
seismic energy to ensonify subsurface structures. Alternately,
transmitter 108 may be a pieso-electric crystal transducer for a
sonar application, a radar transmitter for a radar application,
5   or other well known transmitter devices. Transmitted signal 109
may be a signal having a constant frequency such as with a
constant frequency radar or sonar pulse or may have a variable
frequency such as a chirp signal as used in chirp radar systems and
in geophysical exploration systems.
10   Array 110 may be an array of geophones in a geophysical
application, an array of hydrophones in a sonar application, an
array of radar receivers such as in a phased array antenna for
radar systems, or other well known transducer arrays. Array 110
may be a single-dimensional linear array, a rectangular two-
15   dimensional array, or other array configuration such as discussed
in copending patent application Holographic System For Object
Location And Identification incorporated herein by reference.
Transducer signals 111 may be unprocessed signals obtained directly
from the array transducers or may be preprocessed such as with
20   isolation amplifiers associated with array 110.
           Signal processor 112 may be any well known signal
processor including arrangements of filters and amplifiers for
processing analog signals and analog-to-digital converters (ADCs)
such as used in geophysical exploration systems and acoustic
25   imaging systems. Processed signals 113 may be digital signals from
an ADC included in signal processors 112 for processing with
digital devices such as compositor 114 and correlator 116.
           Compositor 114 may be used to enhance a signal such
as for enhancing signal-to-noise ratio, where the function of a
30   compositor is well known in the art. A compositor performs signal
enhancement by adding corresponding samples from each of a
plurality of sequential trace signals 113; where the operation of
a compositor is discussed in detail hereinafter. Correlator

input signals may be digital signal samples 115 from compositor 114 or digital signal samples 113 from signal processor 112. Correlator 116 receives input trace signals in either composited form as signals 115 or in uncomposited form as

5 signals 113 for correlating trace signals 113 or 115 with a pilot signal 122. The output of correlator 116 is filtered signal 117 which may have an enhanced signal-to-noise ratio, an enhanced resolution through compression of a chirp signal into a pulse signal, or otherwise enhanced filtered signals.

10 Compositor 114 and correlator 116 may be whole-number compositors and correlators that are well known in the art such as used in the CAFDRS system. Alternately, in accordance with the present invention correlator and compositor arrangements may process single-bit resolution digital signals to provide low cost and

15 high speed correlation and compositing.

Filtered signals 117 may be provided to output device 118 which may include a CRT display, a magnetic tape recorder, and a general purpose digital computer as provided in a sonar acoustic imaging system; a magnetic tape recorder, a

20 plotter, and a digital computer as provided in a geophysical exploration system; or other well known output devices.

In accordance with another feature of the present invention, a combined correlator and compositor device 121 is provided for simplicity of mechanization and for providing a

25 capability of compositing-after-correlation. The arrangement of system 101 shown in Fig 1B replaces compositor 114 and correlator 116, which are discussed with reference to Fig 1A above, with the combined correlator and compositor arrangement 121 including correlator 119 and compositor 120. In Fig 1B,

30 transmitter 103 generates signals 109 which are sensed by array 110 to generate array signals 111 to signal processors 112, as discussed with reference to Fig 1A above. Processed signals 113 from signal processor 112 may be processed with

correlator 119 such as a one-bit correlator and then by
compositor 120, wherein the operation of compositing may be
implicit in the correlation algorithm and may not actually
require a separate compositor device. This arrangement may

5   provide substantial savings in cost of a compositor and may provide
the valuable capability of compositing-after-correlation as will
be described in detail hereinafter. Output signal 117 from
correlator and compositor arrangement 121 may be further
processed with output device 118 as discussed with reference to

10 Fig 1A above. A preferred embodiment of a combined compositor
and correlator is provided herein and discussed in detail with
reference to Figs 5 and 6 hereafter. Alternately, correlator 119
and compositor 120 may be separate devices such as prior art
correlator and compositor devices which may be arranged in the

15 preferred embodiment of system 101 shown in Fig 1B to obtain
the further advantages of compositing-after-correlation.

An alternate embodiment for the system of the present
invention is illustrated in Fig 1C as system 102. Transmitter 128
is shown including a combination of individual transmitters 128A

20 and 128B generating different signals 129A and 129B respectively.
As discussed above for signal 109 with reference to Fig 1A,
signals 129A and 129B are used to ensonify an environment.
Reflections related thereto may be sensed by array 110 providing
transducer signals 111 to signal processor 112 for generating

25 processed signals 113 as discussed for Fig 1A above. The plurality
of ensonifying signals 129A and 129B may be chirp signals having
different signatures for separation through correlation as will
be discussed in detail hereafter. For example, signal 129A may
be an up-chirp signal and signal 129B may be a down-chirp signal.

30 In a geophysical embodiment, transmitters 128A and 128B may each
be a separate VIBROSEIS signal generator, wherein VIBROSEIS 128A may
generate up-chirp signal 129 and VIBROSEIS 128B may generate
down-chirp signal 129B. Up-chirp signal 128A and down-chirp
signal 129B may be combined or mixed together as they propagate

through the subsurface environment and as they are reflected from
various subsurface reflectors towards transducer array 110.
Devices shown in Fig 1C such as array 110, signal processor 112,
and compositor 114 may be the same as discussed with reference
5   to Figs 1A and 1B above. Composited output signal 115 may
include the combined components of reflections associated with
each transmitted signal 129A and 129B superimposed together.

    Correlator 116 may include a plurality of correlator
devices 116A and 116B for correlating processed signal 113 with
10 pilot signals 122A and 122B respectively. If pilot signal 122A
is an up-chirp signal similar to that generated by transmittor 128A,
correlator output signal 117A from correlator 116A may represent
correlation information related to up-chirp signal 129A.
Similarly, if pilot signal 122B is a down-chirp signal similar
15 to that generated by transmitter 128B, correlator output signal 117B
from correlator 116B may represent correlation information
relating to down-chirp signal 129B. Therefore, mixing of up-chirp
and down-chirp signals 129A and 129B may generate a combination
processed signal 113 related to both up-chirp and down-chirp
20 signal reflections which may be separated with correlators 116A
and 116B for correlating input trace signal 113 with up-chirp
pilot signal 122A for generating up-chirp related signal 117A
and with down-chirp pilot signal 122B for generating down-chirp
related signal 117B respectively. Mixing and separation of
25 signals in accordance with the present invention will be discussed
in detail with reference to Figs 3 and 7 hereinafter. Separated
output signals 117A and 117B from correlators 116A and 116B
respectively may be recorded on different output devices 118A
and 118B respectively for separately outputting the separated
30 information. Output devices 118A and 118B may each be the same
as output device 118 as discussed for Fig 1A above.

A particular advantage of the embodiment shown in Fig 1C is that different ensonifying signals 129A and 129B may simultaneously generate different forms of information. For example, a high-frequency chirp signal 129A may generate

5 high resolution information and a low-frequency chirp signal 129B may generate low resolution information, or different chirp signals may have different ranges, or different chirp signals may have other different characteristics therebetween. Therefore, generation of a plurality of different ensonifying signals 129A

10 and 129B and separation of the reflected signals through correlation may permit isolation of different characteristics of reflectors in the environment with simultaneous or overlapping signals.

As will be discussed in detail hereinafter, ensonifying an environment with different signals 129A and 129B will cause

15 mixing and superposition of these signals in the environment as they propogate through the environment. An alternate arrangement may provide generating a plurality of different signals and mixing these different signals before transmission such as with an electronic signal input to a VIBROSEIS signal generator which

20 may be used to ensonify an environment with a single transmitter excited by having a plurality of different signal components, such as represented by signals 122A and 122B, for separation through correlation as discussed with reference to Fig 1C above. Such an arrangement having overlapping signals will be discussed

25 in detail with reference to Fig 7 hereinafter.

In an alternate embodiment, system 103 is shown in Fig 1D as being similar to system 102 shown in Fig 1C except that system 102 provides correlation-after-compositing capability and system 103 provides compositing-after-correlation capability.

30 As discussed for system 102 above, system 103 includes a plurality of transmitter devices 123A and 123B to generate transmitted signals 129A and 129B respectively which may be reflected by subsurface structures and wherein the reflected signal may be received by

array 110 to generate transducer signals 111 for processing with signal processor 112 to generate processed transducer signals 113. Correlator 116 may comprise a plurality of individual correlators 116A and 116B to correlate processed signal 113 with

5 a first pilot signal 122A corresponding to transmitted signal 129A and a second pilot signal 122B corresponding to transmitted signal 129B to generate individual correlation output signals 117A and 117B respectively to compositor 121. Compositor 121 may be a multiple channel compositor, which may be similar to the

10 single channel compositor 114 described with reference to Fig 1A except that multiple channel compositor 121 may receive a plurality of corresponding signal samples 117A and 117B substantially simultaneously for compositing together. Therefore, each sample in compositor 121 may have a plurality of substantially

15 simultaneously received trace samples 117A and 117B for compositing theretogether for each composite sample operation in contrast to the single channel compositor 114 of Fig 1A which merely composites one trace sample for each compositor operation. Alternately, compositor 121 may include a plurality of compositors such as

20 compositor 114, wherein an individual compositor 114 may be provided in each channel such as for separately compositing signals 117A and 117B. Output device 118 may be used for outputting correlated and composited signal 117 (as discussed with reference to Fig 1A above) or, alternately as shown in Fig 1C, a plurality

25 of output devices such as output devices 118A and 118B may be used to output separately correlated and separately composited information in conjunction with the arrangement set forth in Fig 1D.

In accordance with another feature of the present

30 invention, system 104 shown in Fig 1E and system 105 shown in Fig 1F may be used to further process the processed signal 113 from signal processor 112. A Fast Fourier Transform (FFT) device 123 may be used to generate frequency-domain information to correlators 124 in response to time-domain information 113

from signal processor 112. Correlators 124 may be frequency-domain correlators that implement correlation by multiplying corresponding frequency-domain samples of a trace signal from FFT processor 123 with frequency-domain pilot signal samples 122A

5   or 122B to generate a correlated frequency-domain signal. System 104 may provide compositing of separately correlated frequency-domain signals with compositor 125 and then provide an inverse FFT 126 to generate correlated and composited time-domain signal 117 for output with output device 118. Alternately as

10 shown in Fig 1F, the frequency-domain correlator output signals may be processed with inverse FFT 126 to obtain time-domain signals to compositor 116 which may be a time-domain compositor for generating time-domain composited and correlated signals 117 to output device 118.

15   The arrangement shown in Fig 1E provides frequency-domain correlation, frequency-domain compositing, and compositing-after-correlation capabilities while the arrangement shown in Fig 1F provides frequency-domain correlation, time-domain compositing, and compositing-after-correlation capabilities.

20 Although the arrangements described with reference to Figs 1E and 1F provide for combining of the correlation output signals in compositors 126 and 116 respectively, alternate embodiments may provide correlation output signals for individual compositing with separate compositors so that each signal separated with

25 correlators 124 may be composited separately for separate recording such as discussed with reference to Fig 1C above using a plurality of output devices.

              Correlators and compositors are well known in the art such as the compositor and correlator arrangements of the

30 CAFDRS system. Because that prior art system implements correlation and compositing under program control in GP computers, many alternate arrangements may be implemented in accordance with the teachings of the present invention by reprogramming of the GP computers. For example, because the CAFDRS correlator performs

-67-

frequency-domain correlation with a single operator, the
embodiments discussed with reference to Figs 1C-1F may be
implemented for correlating the trace signal against a plurality
of operators and separately storing the correlation output
5   signals therefrom. Alternately, correlation output signals may
be composited together in the frequency-domain as discussed with
reference to Fig 1E or may be each converted to the time-domain
with the well known inverse FFT computation for compositing in
the time-domain. Therefore, although preferred embodiments of
10 the present invention discussed with reference to Fig 1A-1F
may use the improved correlator and compositor arrangement of the
present invention; alternately prior art compositors and correlators
may be used to implement the arrangements shown in Figs 1A-1F and
to implement other arrangements in accordance with the teachings
15 of the present invention.

In a preferred embodiment, systems embodiments 100-105
shown in Figs 1A-1F may operate in real-time providing fully
processed data to output device 113 simultaneously as data is
being acquired from transducer array 110. Alternately, systems
20 100-105 may operate in a non-real-time or in an off-line manner
wherein information may be received from array 110 and buffered
or temporarily stored such as with a memory contained in
compositor 114 or correlator 116 until it can be fully processed.
In such an off-line non-real-time system, data may be selectively
25 processed with compositor 114 and/or correlator 116 so that only
part of the information received is processed to permit higher
speed portions of the system to continue to operate. In the
non-real-time embodiment, the system may generate information for
compositing and for correlation and may cease data acquisition
30 operations until the previously acquired data has been processed
and output. A real-time high speed correlator and compositor
arrangement will be discussed in detail hereinafter in accordance
with a preferred embodiment of the present invention.

Subsystem components shown in Figs 1A-1F will now be discussed in more detail.

Transducer array 110 may consist of a single transducer or a plurality of transducers. The plurality of transducers may
5   be arranged in various geometrical configurations. For example, a geophysical system may provide a linear single-dimensional array of transducers, an underwater acoustic system may provide a two-dimensional rectangular array of transducers, a medical diagnosis system may provide an array of transducers stratigically
10 located on the body of a patient, and an equipment diagnosis system may provide a three-dimensional array of transducers located on the structure of a machine. In a geophysical application, input signals 109 may be seismic signals or shock waves transmitted through subsurface geophysical structures and
15 sensed with seismic transducers known as geophones. In an underwater acoustics application, input signals 109 may be acoustic signals transmitted through a water medium and sensed with acoustic transducers known as hydrophones. In a radar application, input signals may be electromagnetic radar or radio signals transmitted
20 through the atmosphere or through space and sensed with electromagnetic transducers such as radar antennas and receivers which may be integrated together in a phased array antenna arrangement. In a medical diagnostic application, input signals 109 may be electrocardiograph signals sensed with well known electrocardiograph
25 electrodes or may be acoustic signals sensed with hydrophone type electrodes. In a machine diagnosis application, input signals 109 may be vibration signals, fluid flow signals, electrical signals or other well known signal forms sensed with well known transducers such as vibration transducers, fluid flow meters, electrical
30 sensors, or other well known transducer devices.

In view of the above, input signals 109 may be any form of signals such as vibration signals, acoustic signals, radio signals, electrical signals, fluid flow signals, or other well known signals and transducers 110 may be any well known transducers for sensing input signals 109 such as geophones, hydrophones, vibration transducers, flow transducers, electrical sensors, and other well known transducer elements. Further, transducer array 110 may be a single transducer or a plurality of transducers arranged in various array configurations including a single-dimensional linear array, a two-dimensional rectangular array, or a three-dimensional array. Further, array 110 may not necessarily be linear, rectangular, or in any other well known geometric arrangement; but may be arranged for optimum response such as a distribution of sensors on the body of a patient, a distribution of sensors on a structure of a machine, or a distribution of geophones on the ground. Still further, array 110 may be a one-dimensional array, a two-dimensional array, or a three dimensional array wherein these array configurations may have regular or irregular forms or patterns. Further, input signals 109 may be available as an array of signals and may not require a physically identifiable array of transducers, wherein the transducers may be implicit in the device and the array may merely constitute an array of input signals without the necessity for transducers to change the form of the signals.

Signal processors 112 may be any signal processors required to process array signals 111 to provide processed output signals 113. Signal processors 112 may include analog signal processor circuits and digital signal processor circuits. Transducer signals 112 may be analog or digital signals and processed signals 113 may be analog or digital signals. In a geophysical application, signal processors 112 may include amplifiers, filters, multiplexers, and analog-to-digital converters to provide processed digital output signals 113. In an underwater

acoustic application, signal processors 112 may include phase
sensitive demodulators, filters, multiplexers, and analog-to-
digital converters to provide processed digital signals 113.

In an alternate embodiment, signal processors 112 may include

5   squaring amplifiers or other arrangements to generate an
incremental squarewave or a digital sign-bit for output signal 113,
as will be described in detail for a preferred embodiment
hereinafter. Further, signal processors 112 may include analog
signal processors such as amplifiers and filters to generate analog

10   output signals 113 such as for compositing or correlation with
analog devices such as with charge coupled devices or other well
known analog signal processing arrangements. In still other
embodiments, signal processors 112 may be an integral part of
transducer array 110 such as with a batch fabricated transducer

15   array and signal processing arrangement or for monolithic
transducers and signal processors.

Output device 118 may be any output devices including
displays, recorders, control systems, and other output devices.
In a geophysical embodiment, output devices 118 may include a

20   magnetic tape recorder for recording either composited or correlated
and composited information for subsequent processing at a large
scale computer center. A geophysical system embodiment further
provides visual display outputs such as with a galvanometer strip-
chart recorder or a plotter for plotting composited and/or

25   correlated data for operator viewing. In an acoustic imaging
system, output device 113 may include a CRT display for displaying
acoustic images and may include a magnetic tape recorder or other
recording device for more permanent storage of processed
information. In a diagnostic embodiment, output device 118 may

30   be an oscilloscope or a plotter for displaying correlated
waveforms to a doctor in a medical diagnostic system or to a
mechanic in an equipment diagnostic system. In a control
embodiment, output device 118 may be a control system for

controlling a missile or an aircraft in response to correlated
data 117 or for controlling a machine such as a machine tool to
adaptively optimize operation in response to correlated output
signals 117. Many other output devices are well known in the
5   art and may be used with the system of the present invention,
where output device 118 may even be a data communications terminal
for communicating information with a remote computer center over
telephone lines or over a microwave data link. Therefore,
output device 118 is considered to be a generalized output device
10   that may be satisfied by any user system, data acquisition system,
data communication system, or other such arrangements.

<u>Description Of Fig 2</u>

The signal acquisition arrangement of the present
invention will now be described with reference to Figs 2A and 2B
to illustrate the signal acquisition portions of the systems
shown in Fig 1. The arrangement of Fig 2A may represent a single
trace channel associated with the multi-channel arrangements of
Fig 1. Transducer 210 may be one of a plurality of transducers
included in array 110 and may be a geophone such as manufactured
by Geo Space Corp of Houston, Texas. Transducer signal 111
may be processed with well known amplifier arrangements 211
and well known filter arrangements 212 prior to conversion with
converter 213. Amplifiers 211, filters 212, and converter 213 may
be included in signal processor 112 (Fig 1).

Filters 212 may be any combination of filters and
may include a low-cut filter, a high-cut filter, an anti-aliasing
filter, and other well known filter arrangements such as provided
with prior art geophysical exploration systems. Converter 213 may
be an analog-to-digital converter (ADC) such as used in prior art
geophysical systems or such as a preferred embodiment discussed
with reference to Fig 2B hereafter. Amplified and filtered
signal 215 may be processed with converter 213 to provide digital
signal 113 to processor 214. Processor 214 may include
compositor 114 and correlator 116 (Fig 1) and may include various
computer and data processing arrangements for data processing
of converted signal 113.

Converter 213 shown in Fig 2A will now be discussed
in more detail with reference to Fig 2B. Amplified and filtered
signals 215 may be received from a plurality of channels such as
the channel shown in Fig 2A and may be multiplexed with analog
multiplexer 220 to be sequentially converted with analog-to-
digital converter (ADC) 222 for input to a computer 223 and for
storage in memory 224. Each of the plurality of channels 215
may be selected by a multiplexer MUX 220 under control of

address register 221. Address register 221 may be a well known

sequential counter arrangement or may be programmable by loading

a desired channel address 227 from computer 223 into address

register 221. The selected analog signal from MUX 220 may be

5 converted with ADC 222 to provide a digital output signal to

computer 223. Operation of ADC 222 may be under control of self-

contained sequencing logic as with prior art ADC devices or may

be operated under program control of computer 223 with control

signals 226, as discussed in copending patent application

10 Apparatus And Method For Providing Interactive Audio Communication

which is incorporated herein by reference. Computer 223 may be

used in conjunction with memory 224, wherein memory 224 may be a

computer main memory for storing instructions or may be an output

memory device such as a disc memory or a magnetic tape memory.

Description Of Fig 3

The signal processing system of the present invention can be readily described with various examples to illustrate the signal forms and the signal processing operations. Various
5   signal forms are shown in Figs 3A-3D and will be used to exemplify various features of the present invention.

Signals processed with the system of the present invention may be any well known signal form and may include many signal forms that may be readily synthesized or generated with
10   well known signal generators. In a preferred embodiment, the signal may have a sinusoidal form or a squarewave form, but other embodiments utilizing sawtooth signals, trapezoidal signals, pulse signals, and even noise signals may be used in accordance with the present invention. For simplicity herein, sinusoidal
15   type signals will be considered to exemplify the present invention, wherein sinusoidal signals are intended to exemplify the broader teachings of the present invention which are applicable to a wide range of different signal types.

A schematic notation will be defined to illustrate
20   signals in a form that more clearly exemplifies the present invention. Drawing of sinusoidal signals and combining of sinusoidal signals may be relatively complex and may not illustrate the teachings of the example in a clear and simple form that is readily understood. Therefore, a schematic signal notation will
25   now be described with reference to Fig 3A, where this schematic notation will be used for simplicity and clarity. A pilot signal 310 is shown in Fig 3A using this schematic notation. A horizontal line 305 is shown to illustrate the duration of the signal from the start of the signal representing an earliest
30   time shown at the left-hand edge of the signal to the completion of the signal representing later time at the right-hand edge of the signal; wherein time is assumed to be linearly increasing as the signal progresses toward the right-hand portion of the

figure as shown with arrow t. Waveform 310 is shown changing as a chirp signal wherein the frequency changes as time progresses. Waveform 310 is shown as an up-chirp signal starting at a low frequency and progressing in a frequency sweep towards a higher

5 frequency. Vertical lines are used to represent frequency by the spacing therebetween. Waveform 310 shows a wider spacing between vertical lines at the left-hand edge of the signal and a narrower spacing between vertical lines at the right-hand edge of the signal, wherein the wider spacing is indicative of

10 lower frequency portions and the narrower spacing is indicative of higher frequency portions of waveform 310. The relative spacing between vertical lines may be considered to be proportional to the relative periods between signal cycles or may be representative of a fixed number of signal cycles between adjacent vertical lines.

15 For example, the vertical lines may represent a period of five signal cycles; wherein vertical lines spaced further apart are intended to represent signal cycles therebetween having a longer period and therefore a proportionally lower frequency than is represented by vertical lines having smaller spacing therebetween.

20 The frequency is shown increasing toward the right-hand portion of waveform 310, where the vertical lines get closer together until the spacing becomes very small as indicated by the shaded portion of waveform 310 at the right-hand edge of the waveform.

A multiplexed signal 315 may be shown in schematic form
by projecting the component vertical lines of signals 311-314
vertically downward projected on multiplexed signal 315.
Multiplexed signal 315 contains vertical lines corresponding to
5 the combination of vertical lines contained in the phase related
signals 311-314 that are multiplexed together. For example,
the first vertical line of signals 311-314 is the first vertical
line of signal 311 which is projected vertically downward to
provide the first vertical line for multiplexed signal 315.
10· Similarly, the second vertical line in signals 311-314 is the second
vertical line of signal 311 which is projected vertically downward
and drawn as the second vertical line for multiplexed signal 315.
Similarly, the third and fourth vertical lines of signals 311-314
are shown as the first vertical line in signal 312 and the first
15 vertical line in signal 313 respectively which are projected
vertically downward and drawn as the third and fourth vertical
lines for multiplexed signal 315. Similarly, all other vertical
lines in signals 311-314 are projected vertically downward to form
the vertical lines shown for signal 315. When concentrations of
20 vertical lines are projected from the combination of a plurality
of vertical lines in signals 311-314, the vertical lines may be
slightly spread when projected on multiplexed signal 315 to
illustrate the concentration of projected vertical lines. Therefore,
multiplexed signal 313 provides a schematic representation related
25 to the concentration of frequency related components shown
schematically with vertical lines from signals 311-314 which are
superimposed as projected onto multiplexed signal 315.

Correlation output signals may be represented by a
showing of peak signals, related sidelobe signals, and other
30 signal components. For example, a correlation output signal 316
shows four peak signals such as peak signal 317 with related
sidelobe components. Further, output signals 343 and 344
(Fig 3D) show sidelobe signals 346 and 347 and output signal 345

shows the absence of sidelobe signals 348. Further, correlation output signal noise components and other perturbations are shown with output signals 329 and 331 (Fig 3C) as noise signal components 330 and 332. A schematic notation is used for correlation output

5 signals such as signal 316 that is different from the schematic notation used for frequency chirp signals 310-314 and multiplexed signal 315, wherein the shape of the envelope of digital sample magnitudes is represented with output signals as shown with output signal 316. This digital magnitude envelope representation is

10 different from the frequency related vertical line notation used for chirp signals 310-314 and the multiplexed signal vertical line notation used with multiplexed signal 315. As will be described in detail with reference to Figs 5 and 6 hereinafter, the output signal is represented by a plurality of output signal samples

15 having amplitudes being represented by a binary magnitude representation of a digital number. Therefore, a correlation output signal such as signal 316 may not be a continuous signal as shown in Fig 3A in continuous signal envelope schematic form, but may actually be a sequence of digital samples. A continuous

20 envelope representation is used for correlation output signals such as signal 316 to illustrate the envelope associated with the sequence of digital samples, wherein the amplitude of a correlation output signal 316 at a particular point is provided by a digital word associated with that sample point, wherein the digital word

25 has a digital magnitude related to the amplitude of the correlation output signal sample at the related point. For example, digital output signal samples associated with signal peak 317 may have large digital magnitudes, digital output signal samples associated with sidelobes of peak signal 317 may have smaller digital

30 magnitudes, and digital output signal samples associated with the low level signal inbetween peak signals may have very small digital signal sample magnitudes.

Chirp waveforms are well known in the art and may be
defined as an up-chirp having an increasing frequency and a
down-chirp having a decreasing frequency. Frequency changes may
be linear frequency changes, where frequency may vary directly as
5   a function of time; but frequency changes or sweeps may follow
other functions such as being exponential frequency changes or
other frequency changes having various analytic functions and
further may be random or discontinuous frequency changes having a
discontinuity or having random frequency changes such as with a
10 noise signal. For simplicity of discussion, a chirp signal may

be shown as a linear up-chirp signal or a linear down-chirp signal to exemplify the features of the present invention. It is herein intended that any simplified discussion relative to a chirp signal, a linear frequency sweep, or other such well known

5 and simple signal be merely exemplary of the more general concepts of the present invention which are applicable to a broad range of signal forms and are not limited to the simple linear chirp signals used for simplicity to exemplify the features of the present invention.

10   A chirp signal may be defined as a sinusoidal waveform that changes in frequency, wherein the change in frequency may be a linear change in frequency or other change in frequency. A chirp may be an up-chirp starting from a low frequency and increasing in frequency, a down-chirp starting at a high frequency

15 and decreasing in frequency, or other variations in frequency. A chirp is a well known signal that may be generated by a voltage controlled oscillator (VCO) or a variable frequency oscillator (VFO), wherein a VCO and a VFO may generate a sinusoidal signal, a squarewave signal, a trapezoidal signal, or other signal having

20 a controllable frequency characteristic. For simplicity of discussion, a chirp signal will be shown as a sequence of vertical lines (Figs 3A, 3B, 3C, 3D, 7B, and 7C) wherein the spacing between the vertical lines is related to the frequency. For example, waveform 310 (Fig 3A) is shown as an up-chirp signal starting

25 at a lower frequency having a larger spacing between vertical lines and progressing toward a higher frequency having successively smaller spacings between vertical lines. In one schematic notation, these vertical lines may be used to indicate a quantity of cycles of the waveform, where the spacing between vertical lines

30 in waveform 311 may indicate every fifth cycle of a sinusoidal waveform. Therefore, as the vertical lines become more closely spaced, the five sinusoidal cycles have shorter periods and therefore have a higher frequency.

One feature of the present invention provides for separation of signals such as separation of a chirp signal from noise and separation of a plurality of superimposed chirp signals which may also be superimposed on noise. For simplicity of

5　illustration, effects such as a superimposed noise may not be shown to provide a clear illustration of the signals contained therein. Nevertheless, the effects of noise and other such influences are intended to be implicit in the waveform diagrams and discussions presented herein.

10　　　A chirp signal may be generated by many well known techniques. In a geophysical embodiment, a chirp signal may be generated by a VIBROSEIS vibration generator which is a vibrator that introduces vibratory or seismic signals into the ground. Various types of sweep generators may be used to provide a chirp

15　signal including a voltage controlled oscillator (VCO) and a variable frequency oscillator (VFO) which are well known in the art. Similarly variable frequency or pulse rates may be generated with well known digital devices such as a digital differential analyzer (DDA) or a counter arrangement using digital feedback. One such

20　product is the voltage-to-frequency converter Model No 3329 manufactured by Optical Electronics Inc of Tucson, Arizona which generates an output frequency having sinusoidal, triangular, and squarewave outputs at a frequency proportional to an input DC signal. Another well known voltage-to-frequency converter is

25　model VFV manufactured by Datel Systems Inc of Canton, Mass. These voltage-to-frequency converters may be used to generate a signal having controllable frequency such as an up-chirp signal by providing an analog function module for generating an input signal to the voltage-to-frequency converter. For example, if

30　a voltage integrator is used as the input to the voltage-to-frequency converter having a constant voltage input, the integrator will generate a linear ramp voltage to the voltage-to-frequency converter and the voltage-to-frequency converter will generate a linear chirp frequency in response thereto as will be discussed

with reference to Fig 7 hereinafter. Various other
analog functions may be generated such as an analog exponential
function which may be implemented with a pair of cascaded integrators.
Further, other analog function modules such as multipliers,

5   dividers, reciprocals, and logrithmic function generators are
commercially available. For example, Function Modules Inc of
Costa Mesa, Calif provides a multiplier/divider module P/N 550,
divider module P/N 540, reciprocal module P/N 545, logrithmic
module P/N 530 and other analog function generating modules.

10   Still other analog function generating modules are well known in
the analog computer art such as discussed in the textbooks by
Korn and by Levine referenced herein. Further, Hybrid Systems
Corp of Burlington, Mass provides multiplying, dividing, and
square rooting modules model numbers 107, 125, 106 and 101

15   respectively for generating analog functions. Still further,
various inverse analog functions may be provided using implicit
servos with the function generation module in an implicit servo
feedback loop as discussed in the textbook by Levine referenced
herein. In view of the above, well known analog function generator

20   modules may be provided to generate virtually any desired function
in analog signal form and a commercially available voltage-to-
frequency converter may be used to convert the analog function to
a frequency function to synthesize a frequency related sweep or
chirp having substantially any desired sweep characteristics.

25   The operations of correlation and compositing will
be better understood with the following discussion referenced to
Figs 3A-3C. Briefly stated, the operation of correlation is
related to the searching of a signal with an operator or pilot
signal to find the similarity therebetween and further to compress

30   the similarities into a pulse or amplitude peak signal and the
operation of compositing is related to the adding or summation or
integration of corresponding signal portions. The operations
of correlation and compositing include summation operations on

information that may be statistically uncorrelated due to high
levels of random noise, wherein such summation operations may
enhance the signal-to-noise ratio of the signal and may be used
to enhance the resolution or precision of the signal. The

5   operation of compositing merely enhances the signal-to-noise
ratio and the related signal amplitude but does not change the
form or signature of the repetitive signals contained therein.
The operation of correlation enhances the signal-to-noise ratio
of a signal and further changes the characteristics of the signal

10 by grouping many terms of the signal to perform what is known in
the art as compressing a signal to a pulse. These operations
of increasing signal-to-noise ratio, signal location, and signal
compression are useful where a correlator can find signals
buried in noise, can enhance the signal-to-noise ratio, and can

15 compress a long signal into a pulse to provide high resolution
and a high signal-to-noise ratio. These effects are very important,
wherein the signal-to-noise ratio and therefore the
discriminating power of the correlator is related to the length
of the pilot and trace signals, yet the length of the signal

20 does not degrade the time resolution because of the compression
to a pulse. Therefore, extremely long chirp signals may be used
in noisy environments, wherein the noise is significantly reduced
by the length of the signal received and the time resolution is
reconstructed when the long chirp signal is compressed into a pulse.

25 These characteristics will be exemplified with Figs 3A-3C
hereinafter.

        The waveforms shown in Fig 3A exemplify a typical
correlation and compositing application. This arrangement may
be discussed with reference to geophysical exploration applications

30 to exemplify the features of the present invention. It is herein
intended that any reference to a particular application be
exemplary of a broad range of applications to which the example may
be applied.

A pilot signal 310 is shown as a chirp signal which
may be generated with a VIBROSEIS to ensonify subsurface structures
in a geophysical application. Subsurface structures cause the
pilot signal to be reflected, wherein the reflected signals are
5   received with a geophone array and wherein the time between the
generation of the pilot signal 310 and acquisition of each
reflected signal 311-314 is related to the distance or depth of
the reflector. Pilot signal 310 is reflected from a first shallow
depth reflector and received as reflection signal 311. Deeper
10   reflectors cause reflection signals REFL 2-REFL 4 312-314 to be
reflected at subsequently greater depths and thereby to be
received by the geophone array at sequentially longer time
intervals. This is indicated by the reflection signals REFL 1-
REFL 4 311-314 starting at progressively longer time intervals
15   from the generation of the pilot signal 310 as shown by the start
of the reflected signals 311-314 being progressively shifted to
the right of Fig 3A. Therefore, each reflected signal 311-314
represents reflection from a different subsurface structure and the
time delay from the start of pilot signal 310 to reflected
20   signals 311-314 represents the relative depths of the subsurface
structures. Amplitude of the reflected signals may vary as a
function of size of the reflector, reflection characteristics of
the subsurface structure, depth of the subsurface structure,
absorption and dispersion characteristics of the subsurface
25   environment and other such characteristics. For simplicity,
amplitude variations are not shown in Figs 3A-3C but will become
apparent to those of ordinary skill in the prior art. The various
reflected signals 311-314 are received by the geophones, wherein
a geophone signal or trace signal is shown in simplified schematic
30   form as multiplexed waveform MUXED 315. The geophone transducer
senses the reflections as the seismic energy is reflected from
the subsurface structures, wherein the geophone transducer senses
the various reflections as superimposed signals or multiplexed

signals MUXED 315. These superimposed signals are shown
schematically as waveform 315 wherein the vertical lines of
waveforms 311-314 are projected vertically downward to construct
multiplexed signal 315 containing the superimposed components

5   supplied by reflected waveforms 311-314. The summation of all
of the signal components having different frequencies is shown
as MUXED signal 315 wherein the densities of vertical lines
are related to the frequency components superimposed together.

An observer viewing multiplexed signal MUXED 315

10 may not be able to distinguish between the individual reflections.
This consideration is rendered even more complex when large
amounts of noise are superimposed on signal 315, when
reflected signals are varied in amplitude, when reflected
signals are shown in continuous signal form rather than the

15 vertical line schematic notation of this example, and when
occurrence of hundreds and possibly millions of different
reflections are superimposed together. Therefore, multiplexed
signal 315 is shown in simplified schematic form representing
only four superimposed reflections to illustrate the concepts

20 of the present invention.

A correlation algorithm may be used to separate each
reflection from multiplexed waveform 315, to separate the reflected
signals from the noise, and to compress each reflected signal
into a pulse. The correlation algorithm "searches" the multiplexed

25 signal 315 with the pilot signal 310 to detect common portions
therebetween. The "search" is performed by shifting or sliding
pilot signal 310 past multiplexed signal 315 and by comparing the
two signals at each particular shift position to evaluate the
degree of similarities. The correlation output signal 316 provides

30 a figure-of-merit related to the degree of similarity, wherein
this correlation output signal 316 is generated by summing all
products of all corresponding samples between the pilot signal 310
and the multiplexed signal 315 for a particular shift position

therebetween as discussed above with reference to Tables I-VI.
This sum-of-the-products computation is shown as a correlated
signal CORR 316, wherein the position along correlated signal 316
is related to the shift position of the pilot signal 310 as it is
5 shifted along and compared with the multiplexed signal 315. For
example, when pilot signal 310 has been shifted to a position
corresponding to reflection signal 311; a comparison between
the pilot signal 310 and the multiplexed signal 315 shows a good
comparison because the sum-of-the-products computation has a high
10 value for this position showing good comparison. The sum-of-the-
products computations provide a peak 317 related to compression
of reflection REFL 1 311 into pulse 317 by correlation with
pilot signal 310. Similarly, as pilot signal 310 is shifted
along multiplexed signal 315 and compared for each shift position,
15 additional good comparisons are provided for positions defined by
pulses in correlated waveform 316 corresponding with the start
of reflections 312-314 shown directly above the correlated output
pulses of waveform 316. Therefore, a very complex multiplexed
signal 315 can be searched with a pilot signal 310 to detect
20 similarities therebetween and a correlation output signal 316
provides peaks 317 related to the degree of correlation between
pilot signal 310 and multiplexed signal 315 for each shift
position. Therefore, a correlation output peak 317 may be
provided for pilot signal shift positions having good correlation,
25 thereby indicating the finding of a chirp signal buried in
multiplexed signal 317; wherein the correlation output peak 317
may indicate the start of a chirp signal component buried in
multiplexed signal 315 and the amplitude of the peak signal 317
may be related to the degree or figure-of-merit of the comparison.
30 For simplicity of explanation, correlation signal 316 shows
correlation peaks and correlation peak sidelobes, but does not
obscure the example by showing noise, amplitude relationships, or
other complexities that may exist in such a correlated signal.

In a geophysical embodiment, peaks of correlated signal 316 are related to location of reflectors in the subsurface environment, wherein the relative displacements of the peaks of the correlation signal 316 are related to signal propogation

5   times through the subsurface environment and wherein propogation times are related to depths of the subsurface structures. Therefore, for a geophysical embodiment correlated waveform 316 may be related to four important reflectors at particular depths defined by the distances along correlated signal 316 and where

10   greater depths are represented by greater distances from the left-hand edge of correlated signal 316.

The operation of compositing-before-correlation will now be discussed with reference to Fig 3B. Pilot signal 310 (Fig 3A) is shown as pilot signal 318 in Fig 3B for convenience.

15   Pilot signal 318 is used to ensonify subsurface structures resulting in a first trace signal shown as multiplexed signal MUXED 1 319 which is received and stored by a geophysical exploration system. Multiplexed signal 319 is shown identical to multiplexed signal 315 (Fig 3A) representing the same subsurface

20   structures as for the example described with reference to Fig 3A. One difference exists between ideal multiplexed signal 315 and multiplexed signal 319, wherein a noise pulse 322 is introduced into signal 319. Similarly, pilot signal 318 is again used to ensonify subsurface structures resulting in a second multiplexed

25   signal MUXED 2 320 which is received and stored by the geophysical exploration system. Multiplexed signal 320 is shown identical to multiplexed signal 319 except that the noise pulse 322 in multiplexed signal 319 is not included in multiplexed signal 320; vertical line 323 is shown with reduced amplitude; and an

39   additional noise signal 334 is introduced into multiplexed signal 320 to illustrate the effects of random noise. The effects of random noise is shown different between different traces, being multiplexed signal 319 and multiplexed signal 320.

Multiplex signals 319-320 may be composited by adding
corresponding samples to generate composited signal COMP 321.
Corresponding samples of traces 319 and 320 are represented by
vertical correspondence, wherein traces 319 and 320 are added

5 together, corresponding vertical point by corresponding vertical
point, to form composited signal 321. Composited signal 321 is
shown with constant amplitude normalized to a peak amplitude for
simplicity, although it should be understood that the amplitude
of composited signal 321 is related to the sum-of-the-amplitudes

10 of the trace signals 319 and 320. Noise signals 322 and 334 are
not repeated in alternate trace signals and therefore may sum
to small signal amplitudes 324 and 326 respectively. Signal
amplitude 323 that is shown degraded by noise in trace signal 320
is summed with corresponding trace signals to provide corresponding

15 composited sample 325 having a reduced effect of the signal
degradation introduced in multiplex signal 320 but not introduced
in multiplexed signal 319; wherein the effect of this degraded
signal component 323 is reduced by the adding of the non-degraded
signal component from multiplexed signal 319. Therefore, it can

20 be seen that compositing operations will reduce effects of random
errors such as noise, where the randomness of the noise signal
components will integrate to lower amplitudes and the repetitive
nature of the actual signal portions will integrate to higher
amplitudes, thereby enhancing the signal-to-noise

25 ratio and mitigating the effects of noise and other random type
error mechanism.

The operation of correlation may be performed after
the compositing operation by correlating composited signal 321,
wherein the correlated output signal 327 is similar to correlated

30 output signal 316 (Fig 3A) except that noise may be
reduced and signals may be enhanced through compositing operations.

The operation of compositing-after-correlation will
now be discussed with reference to Fig 3C. Pilot signal 328 is
shown identical to pilot signal 310 for simplicity. It is
assumed that pilot signal 328 illuminates subsurface structures
5   to generate a first trace signal 319 which is correlated to provide
correlated signal 329 similar to correlated signals 316 and 327
and to generate a second trace signal 320 which is correlated to
provide correlated signal 331 similar to correlated signals 316
and 327 because of the same subsurface structures being ensonified.
10 Correlated signal 329 is shown with noise signal component 330 and
correlated signal 331 is shown with noise signal component 332,
wherein noise signals 330 and 332 are not repeated for different
correlated signals because of the random nature of the noise.
Compositing of the corresponding samples of correlation signal 329
15 and correlation signal 331 is similar to the compositing of
uncorrelated trace signals 319 and 320 which was discussed with
reference to Fig 3B above; wherein the compositing of correlated
signals 329 and 331 yields composited correlated signal 333.
Composited correlated signal 333 does not show the effects of
20 noise 330 from signal 329 nor noise 332 from signal 331 because
these noise signal components 330 and 332 were not repeated on
other correlated waveforms where their significance is
reduced by compositing in signal 333. Therefore,
compositing-after-correlation has an effect of enhancement of
25 signal-to-noise ratios similar to compositing-before-correlation.
        Prior art systems may perform compositing-before-
correlation because the compositing operation is substantially
simpler than the correlation operation, wherein compositing
involves merely summation of corresponding samples while
30 correlation involves multiplication computations and substantially
greater amounts of sum-of-the-products computations and wherein
multiplication to derive the products is a complex and time
consumming computation when implemented with prior art digital

computers. Therefore, prior art systems perform compositing for data compression; where many trace signals are combined to minimize storage and computations and where correlation computations may be performed on the composited signal as discussed with reference

5 to Fig 3B. The high-speed real-time nature of the correlator of the present invention permits real-time correlation while the trace signals are being received and provides compositing-after-correlation capability yielding substantial advantages over the prior art systems. These advantages include (1) elimination of

10 the requirement for large amounts of compositor memory, where the correlation memory requirements are smaller than the compositor memory requirements; (2) use of different pilot signals to ensonify the subsurface structures; and (3) use of ensonifying signals that are not repeatable such as with dynamite blasts by correlating

15 the pilot signal out of the trace signal before compositing wherein compositing may obscure effects of different pilot signals. Other advantages of the compositing-after-correlation feature of the present invention are discussed elsewhere herein.

Another feature of the present invention will now

20 be exemplified with reference to Fig 3D. A plurality of chirp signals may be provided as pilot signals for ensonifying subsurface structures. A VIBROSEIS signal generator may be used to generate the plurality of ensonifying signals. For example, a first up-chirp signal 336 may be generated with a first VIBROSEIS and a

25 first down-chirp signal 337 may be generated with a second VIBROSEIS. Alternately, signal 336 and signal 337 may be electronically generated and electronically mixed as discussed for summing or multiplexing circuit 759 with reference to Fig 7D, wherein MUX signal 342 may have a plurality of different chirp signals

30 multiplexed therein and may be used to excite a VIBROSEIS for generating a multiplexed pilot signal. For simplicity, each chirp signal 336 and 337 are shown lined-up and starting at the same time and having the same chirp envelope. It will be recognized

that the teachings of this simplified example are readily
expandable to having chirp signals that start at different times,
chirp signals having different length chirp envelopes, and other
forms of chirp signals that may be multiplexed together.

5   Multiplexing may be accomplished by electrically
combining a plurality of different chirp signals or by implicitely
combining a plurality of different signals. For example, the
use of a plurality of VIBROSEIS generators each ensonifying the
subsurface environment with a different chirp signal provides
10 implicit or implied multiplexing of chirp signals because the
different chirp signals impressed on the subsurface environment
are combined in the subsurface environment and are effectively
multiplexed together. An electronic form of multiplexing will be
discussed with reference to Fig 7D, wherein a plurality of chirp
15 signals are added together electronically with circuit 759
to provide a multiplexed chirp signal.

           The plurality of chirp signals 336 and 337 are
reflected from subsurface structures, wherein the reflections
appear to be multiplexed together as shown for multiplexed signal
20 342 related to two such reflections. The build-up of multiplexed
signal 342 is shown by a first reflection of up-chirp signal 336
and down-chirp signal 337 having a time delay related to the
distance of the reflecting structure, wherein SIG 3 338 and
SIG 4 339 represent the components of the chirp signals reflected
25 from a first subsurface structure. Similarly, SIG 5 340 and
SIG 6 341 represent the components of the chirp signals reflected
from a second subsurface structure. Reflected signals 338-341
are shown multiplexed together in time relation therebetween as
multiplexed signal 342. Correlation of multiplexed signal 342
30 with up-chirp signal 336 will detect and separate out up-chirp
components of the reflected signal shown by SIG 3 338 from a
first reflector and SIG 5 340 from a second reflector to generate
output signal 343 in response thereto. Similarly, correlation of

multiplexed signal 342 with down-chirp signal 337 will detect
and separate out components of the reflected signal shown by
SIG 4 339 from a first reflector and SIG 6 341 from a second
reflector to generate output signal 344 in response thereto.

5   The correlation output peak signals shown in output signal 1 343
and output signal 2 344 line up vertically in time and phase
because the pilot signals chirp SIG 1 336 and chirp SIG 2 337
are lined up in time and phase and the reflecting structures are
detected at the same distances, thereby resulting in the same
10   time intervals between each chirp signal reflection.

Output signal 1 343 and output signal 2 344 may be
composited-after-correlation by adding signals 343 and 344 sample-
by-sample to generate each of the corresponding output samples
of the composited signal 345. Therefore, in accordance with yet
15   another feature of the present invention, Fig 3D illustrates the
generation of a plurality of different pilot signal signatures
either simultaneously, overlapping therebetween, or sequentially
following each other; receiving and correlation of the multiplexed
pilot signals such as to define subsurface structures; and
20   compositing-after-correlation of the correlation output signals
to obtain a composite-after-correlation signal 345.

In accordance with still another feature of the present
invention; noise, sidelobes and other perturbing effects on an
output correlation signal may be reduced by compositing a
25   plurality of signals after correlation, wherein each of the
composited signals may be related to different correlation pilot
signals. For example, correlation output signal 343 is related to
up-chirp signal 336 and correlation output signal 344 is related
to down-chirp signal 337. The perturbing effects such as noise,
30   sidelobes, and other perturbing effects may be different for
different types of pilot signals; wherein compositing-after-
correlation may be used to reduce these perturbing signal
components by adding the different correlation output signals

having different perturbing components and thereby adding the different perturbing components together causing cancellation of these perturbing components therebetween. For example, correlation output signal 343 is shown with sidelobe 346 and correlation output signal 344 is shown

5   with sidelobe 347; wherein sidelobes 346 and 347 may be different therebetween such as caused by different correlation operators. Compositing or adding corresponding samples of correlation output signal 343 and correlation output signal 344 together generates composited signal 345 which may have enhanced signal peaks because

10   the signal peaks are similar and may have reduced perturbing components such as shown in signals 343 and 344. Therefore composited signal 345 may have reduced sidelobe signal 348 and reduced noise and other perturbing effects because of the adding together of different perturbing components from correlation output signal 343 and correlation output

15   signal 344 thereby providing cancellations therebetween.

Separation of different signature signals through correlation is based upon two primary considerations and many secondary considerations. The primary considerations are how well a signature signal correlates with itself and how poorly a signal correlates with

20   other signature signals. For example, if a first signature signal generates a large output signal peak when correlated with a first pilot signal and generates a small output signal peak when correlated with a second signature signal and if a second signature signal generates a large output signal peak when correlated with the second pilot signal

25   and generates a small output signal peak when correlated with the first signature signal, then the first and second signature signals may be separated therebetween through correlation. These characteristics of good signature signals may be described as having good autocorrelation by correlation with the same signature signal and having poor cross-

30   correlation by correlation with the different signature signal for separation therefrom. The secondary considerations may be the signal-to-noise ratio, the number of pilot signal samples, the number of trace signal samples, and others.

One well known code having a good autocorrelation function

35   is a Barker code. A Barker code may be used with the features of the present invention for providing signature signals in accordance with Barker codes.

An arrangement providing a plurality of chirp generators
such as for simultaneously ensonifying a geophysical environment
provides advantages such as for generating different signature
signals related to different signal characteristics. A correlator

5   arrangement may be provided having a plurality of correlator
channels, wherein each correlator channel operates in response to
a pilot signal related to a different one of the ensonifying
signals to individually separate out the reflections related to
each of the ensonifying signals. In an alternate arrangement,

10   a single correlator channel may be provided having a pilot signal
that is related to the combination or superposition of a plurality
of the ensonifying signals. For example, the plurality of
ensonifying signals may include an up-chirp signal and a down-chirp
signal transmitted simultaneously and the pilot signal for the

15   correlator may be related to the sum or combination of the
up-chirp and down-chirp ensonifying signals for separating out
reflections related to the combined or multiplexed up-chirp and
down-chirp ensonifying signals. Such an arrangement may be
exemplified with reference to Fig 3D wherein up-chirp signal 336

20   and down-chirp signal 337 may be used to ensonify a subsurface
environment and wherein up-chirp signal 336 may be generated by a
first VIBROSEIS and down-chirp signal 337 may be generated by a
second VIBROSEIS or, alternately, up-chirp signal 336 and down-chirp
signal 337 may be combined electronically such as with the

25   multiplexing arrangement discussed with reference to Fig 7
hereinafter to form a combination or multiplexed up-chirp and
down-chirp signal for exciting a VIBROSEIS to ensonify the geophysical
environment.

A plurality of correlators may be provided as discussed

30   with reference to Fig 3D above for correlating the multiplexed
signal 342 with up-chirp signal 336 in a first correlator and
with down-chirp signal 337 in a second correlator to generate
output signals 343 and 344 respectively which may be composited
together to generate signal 345, as discussed in detail above.

Alternately, a single correlator may be used for correlating
multiplexed signal 342 in response to a multiplexed pilot signal,
wherein the multiplexed pilot signal may be a pilot signal having
up-chirp signal 336 and down-chirp signal 337 multiplexed together

5   for providing a combination up-chirp and down-chirp pilot signal.
Correlating multiplexed signal 342 with the combination up-chirp
and down-chirp pilot signal may provide an output signal related
to correlation with both, up-chirp signal 336 and down-chirp
signal 337; which may be similar to composited signal 345. In

10   view of the above, it may be desirable to generate a plurality of
signature signals multiplexed together either by electronic summing
or by propagation through an environment and wherein signal
components may be separated from   multiplexed signal 342 by
either (1) correlating with individual pilot signals and compositing

15   the plurality of correlation output signals theretogether or
(2) correlating with a composite pilot signal being related to a
plurality of signal signatures combined theretogether for
generating an output signal related to characteristics of each of
a plurality of correlation operations.

20   An arrangement has been discussed with reference to
Fig 3D above for providing compositing-after-correlation associated
with chirp pilot signals. In an alternate embodiment, a plurality
of ensonifying signals may be provided such as with dynamite
blasts or other characteristic signatures. The signature of an

25   ensonifying signal may be determined by monitoring the signals
and loading a pilot signal memory such as pilot signal memory
discussed with reference to Figs 4 and 6 hereinafter. The
acquired pilot signal may then be used to correlate with a related
trace signal for identification of subsurface reflectors. In

30   accordance with the composite-after-correlation feature of the
present invention, subsequent ensonifying signals may be stored
as pilot signals for correlation of subsequent trace signals to
provide compositing of a sequence of trace signals associated with

different ensonifying signals such as with sequential dynamite
blasts. In a first embodiment, a dynamite blast may be initiated
and the pilot signal signature thereof may be monitored and stored
in a pilot signal memory, followed by correlation of the stored
5 pilot signal with a related trace signal related thereto for
updating output signal samples. After completion of correlation
of a first trace signal, a second dynamite blast may be initiated
and the pilot signal signature monitored and stored in the pilot
signal memory, followed by correlation of the stored pilot signal
10 with a trace signal related thereto for updating output signal
samples; wherein correlation of the second trace signal with the
second pilot signal may composite output samples of the second
correlation with output samples of the first correlation.
Similarly, a plurality of sequential dynamite blasts may be initiated
15 sampled to generate related pilot signals, correlated with the
related trace signals, and then composited with prior correlation
output signal samples in an output signal memory arrangement
as discussed with reference to Fig 6 hereinafter.

In an alternate embodiment, a plurality of ensonifying
20 signals such as dynamite blasts may be initiated in sequence,
wherein each ensonifying signal may be monitored and stored in a
different pilot signal store. It may be desirable to provide each
ensonifying signal in sequence without overlap therebetween to
permit convenient detection and sampling of each ensonifying
25 signal without being overlapped and obscured by other ensonifying
signals, where ensonifying signals such as dynamite blasts may
have a relatively short duration compared to the propagation
time through the ensonified environment. In such an embodiment,
reflections of each of the ensonifying signals from subsurface
30 structures may be superimposed or multiplexed theretogether and
receive as a multiplexed trace signal. The plurality of pilot
signals sampled in response to the plurality of ensonifying signals

may each be correlated with the single trace signal which has all reflections multiplexed together; wherein the correlated output signals associated with each correlator channel may be related to reflections associated with a particular one of the dynamite

5   blasts. The plurality of correlation output signals from the plurality of channels may be composited theretogether such as by updating output signal samples with an update circuit and output sample memory common to each of the plurality of correlator channels, as will be further discussed with reference to Fig 6

10   hereinafter.

In still another embodiment, a plurality of VIBROSEIS signal generators may simultaneously ensonify the subsurface environment wherein each of a plurality of VIBROSEIS generators may be positioned at a different shotpoint and may generate different

15   ensonifying signals. For example, a first VIBROSEIS generator at a first shotpoint may generate up-chirp ensonifying signals and a second VIBROSEIS generator at a second shotpoint may generate down-chirp ensonifying signals. A geophysical exploration system in accordance with the present invention may provide a multi-

20   channel correlator for correlating reflected seismic signals with an up-chirp pilot signal in a first correlator channel and with a down-chirp pilot signal in a second correlator channel to provide a plurality of correlation output signals each being related to a different shotpoint. This simultaneous ensonification from a

25   plurality of shotpoints provides enhanced productivity, as will be discussed in detail in the section on a multiple shotpoint arrangement provided hereinafter.

In yet another alternate embodiment, a plurality of explosive signals may be provided at different shotpoints,

30   wherein the explosive signal at each shotpoint may have a characteristic signature that is different from the characteristic

.signatures of explosive charges at other shotpoints for separation
therebetween through correlation, as discussed above for
simultaneous VIBROSEIS ensonification at each of a plurality
of shotpoints. In yet another alternate embodiment, each

5 explosive blast may be initiated in sequence without having
overlapping therebetween such as for providing a first blast at
a first shotpoint and then providing a second blast at a second
shotpoint, wherein the second blast may not be initiated until
after the first blast has been completed. Although the ensonifying

10 blasts may not be overlapping, the reflected signals from each
of the ensonifying blasts from different shotpoints may be
overlapping therebetween. An arrangement may be provided for
sampling each of the ensonifying explosions at each of the shot-
points and for storing the sampled ensonifying explosion as a

15 correlator pilot signal. Seismic reflections from subsurface
reflectors related to the plurality of ensonifying blasts from
different shotpoints may be multiplexed together as they propogate
through the subsurface environment and may be received as a
multiplexed signal having reflected seismic signals related to

20 ensonifying signals from each of a plurality of shotpoints
reflected from each of a plurality of subsurface reflectors. A
multi-channel correlator may provide correlation in response to
each of a plurality of pilot signals wherein each pilot signal may
have been derived by monitoring the ensonifying signals for each

25 of the shotpoints. Therefore, simultaneous ensonification from
a plurality of shotpoints may be provided with explosive
generators in place of the VIBROSEIS generators discussed above.
This simultaneous ensonification from each of a plurality of
shotpoints and separation of reflected seismic signals related

30 to the different shotpoints is discussed in detail herein in the
section on the multiple shotpoint arrangement.

Description Of Fig 4

A hardware embodiment of a correlator in accordance
with the present invention will now be discussed with reference
to Fig 4. A pilot signal register 412 and a trace signal
5 register 417 are provided for storing pilot signal samples and
trace signal samples respectively. Input circuitry 423 may be
used to load or recirculate the pilot signal samples and the
trace signal samples. Computational circuitry 413, 419, and
420 are used to update output signal samples stored in registers
10 421.

A pilot signal may be received with squaring amplifier
410 to provide a single-bit digital squarewave signal to input
gates 411 enabled by the LOAD P signal through inverter 414.
As digital register 412 is clocked, the squarewave pilot signal
15 from amplifier 410 is sampled or shifted into register 412 to
load single-bit pilot signal samples into register 412. Similarly,
a trace signal may be processed with squaring amplifier 415 for
input to trace shift register 417 through selection gate 416 in
response to the LOAD T signal through inverter 418. In this
20 manner, registers 412 and 417 can be loaded with single-bit
pilot signal samples and single-bit trace signal samples. In
an alternate embodiment, squaring amplifiers 410 and 415 may
be replaced with analog-to-digital converters for generating
whole-number multi-bit samples for storage in registers 412 and
25 417. For simplicity of illustration, a single-bit correlator
is discussed with reference to Fig 4.

After the pilot and trace signals are loaded into registers
412 and 417 respectively, the LOAD P and LOAD T signals may be
controlled to be high to disable the loading of new pilot and
30 trace signals through gates 411 and 416 respectively as disabled
by inverters 414 and 418 respectively and to enable the re-
circulation or feedback path into registers 412 and 417
respectively. The pilot signal in register 412 and the trace
signal in register 417 may be recirculated to provide access

to the desired pilot signal and trace signal in registers 412
and 417 respectively to provide the multiplication operation
with exclusive-OR (XOR) circuit 419 such as an S/N 7486
exclusive-OR circuit and a summation operation with counter 420.

5   As the pilot signal samples in register 412 and the trace signal
samples in register 417 are recirculated, the pilot signal
samples are shifted one-bit to the left with an extra time
delay imposed by flip-flop 413; wherein the pilot signal
samples stored in register 412 are processed one-bit per

10 recirculation with respect to the trace signal samples stored
in register 417 to effectively shift the pilot signal samples
along the trace signal samples, as discussed with reference to
Table III above. As each pilot and trace signal becomes
available from registers 412 and 417 respectively, a one-bit

15 multiplication is provided with exclusive-OR circuit 412 to
provide command signal 424 to counter 420 to control updating
of the output signal sample in register 421. Command signal 424
may command counter 420 to either increment or not-increment
the count for an embodiment using an up-counter such as

20 S/N 7490 or S/N 74163 up-counters. Alternately, command
signal 424 may command counter 420 to either increment or
decrement the count for an embodiment using an up-down counter
such as S/N 74190 or S/N 74192 counters. Alternately, the command
signal 424 may command counter 420 to either decrement or not-

25 decrement the count for an embodiment using a down-counter
such as S/N 74190 and S/N 74192 counters operating in a down-
counter mode. Such counter operations are discussed in greater
detail with reference to Z-counter 613 with reference to Figs 6D
and 6E hereinafter and for other counter arrangements herein.

If output signals from registers 412 and 417 are the
same, either both zeros or both ones; command signal 424 will
be a zero and if the outputs of registers 412 and 417 are
different, wherein one of the signals is a one and the other
5   signal is a zero, then command signal 424 will be a one.
Counter 420 may be incremented in response to a zero-state of
signal 424 and may not be incremented for a one-state of
signal 424 for the above mentioned up-counter embodiment.
Therefore, the greater the magnitude of an output signal sample
10   in counter 420 or in registers 421, the greater the correlation
between the trace signal and the pilot signal and the lower
the magnitude of an output signal sample in counter 420 or in
registers 421, the less the correlation between the trace signal
and the pilot signal. If an inverter is placed in any one of
15   the signal paths into or out of exclusive-OR gate 419, the
counter information will be inverted wherein counter 420 and
registers 421 will then have a sample magnitude that is the
inverse of the sample magnitudes discussed above.

       Each recirculation of the pilot signal in pilot register
20   412 and of the trace signal in trace register 417 provides a
single comparison or a single output signal sample, as shown
for each row in Table III. Counter 420 is shown being loaded
from registers 421 and being unloaded into registers 421,
wherein a sequence of output signal samples such as samples
25   Z_0-Z_{12} (Table III) may be stored in counter 420 and registers
421. In an embodiment related to Table III, registers 421
may comprise 12 16-bit registers and counter 420 may comprise
one 16-bit counter totaling storage for thirteen output signal
samples; wherein registers 421 and the counter 420 are
30   recirculated similar to that shown for recirculation around
registers 412 and 417 to sequentially load the next output
signal sample in sequence from registers 421 into counter 420
and to load the last prior updated sample from counter 420
into registers 421. This loading and storing of the contents

of counter 420 may be accomplished once per recirculation of registers 412 and 417, wherein the plurality of comparisons between the pilot signal in register 412 and the trace signal in register 417 are each used to control the incrementing or

5 non-incrementing of counter 420 in response to the comparison for each bit of the pilot signal and the trace signal stored in registers 412 and 417. Therefore, for each recirculation of registers 412 and 417, counter 420 updates an output sample related to a plurality of comparisons made with gate 419 between

10 the pilot signal in register 412 and the trace signal in register 417. For the next subsequent recirculation, the last updated output signal sample from counter 420 may be stored in registers 421 and the next output signal sample in sequence may be loaded from registers 421 into counter 420 for updating

15 during the next sequential recirculation of registers 412 and 417 under control of command signal 424 from exclusive-OR gate 419.

The computational and output memory arrangement using exclusive-OR gate 419, counter 429, and registers 421 has been

20 described briefly for simplicity with reference to Fig 4 above to illustrate the single-bit correlation algorithm of the present invention. This computational output arrangement will be discussed in greater detail for an alternate embodiment of the single-bit correlation algorithm with reference to

25 Fig 6 hereinafter.

Because AND-OR-NOT circuits 411 and 416 generate
inverted outputs, the pilot and trace signal samples stored
in registers 412 and 417 are stored in inverted or ones-
complement form. Therefore, by obtaining the output
5   on the $\bar{Q}$ output line of registers 412 and 417, the inverted
information in registers 412 and 417 may be again inverted
to provide non-inverted outputs from registers 412 and 417.

Control logic may be provided for the arrangement
shown in Fig 4, wherein such control logic is well known in
10   the art. Further, analog signal processing arrangements may
be provided in a form similar to that shown in Fig 2A. Further,
prior art arrangements can readily be modified to permit one
of ordinary skill in the art to practice the teachings of the
present invention. One such prior art arrangement is the
15   MW-10 system manufactured by Real Time Geophysics Inc of
Norwood, Mass   wherein the documentation related thereto is
incorporated by reference.

The arrangement shown in Fig 4 uses well known
components where squaring amplifiers 410 and 415 may be μA710
20   comparitors; inverters 414 and 418 may be S/N 7404 inverters;
AND-OR-NOT gates 411 and 416 may be S/N 7451 gates; shift
registers 412 and 417 may be S/N 7491A circuits or may be well
known MOS-FET shift register circuits; D flip-flop 413 may be
an S/N 7474 circuit; exclusive-OR circuit 419 may be an
25   S/N 7486 circuit; counter 420 may be a plurality of 4-bit
up-counter circuits such as S/N 7490 or S/N 74163 circuits or
a plurality of 4-bit up-down-counter circuits such as
S/N 74190 or S/N 74192 circuits; and registers 421 may be a
plurality of parallel-input parallel-output register circuits
30   such as S/N 74174 circuits, or 74175 circuits, or a random
access memory (RAM) such as S/N 74200 circuits, or a plurality
of shift registers such as S/N 7491A circuits, or other well
known register or memory circuits.

Description Of Fig 5A

The features of the correlator of the present invention will now be illustrated with an example using a general purpose computer embodiment. The present invention

5 provides many important features that will be exemplified therewith including real-time correlation, time-domain correlation, compositing-after-correlation, and other features.

The system of the present invention has been discussed with reference to Fig 1B above for a combination

10 correlator and compositor arrangement and with reference to Figs 2A and 2B above for a stored program computer implementing the digital data processing operations including correlation and compositing. In particular, signal processor 112 is shown in Fig 2B including a multiplexer 220 and 221 and an ADC 222

15 while the correlator-compositor arrangement 121 (Fig 1B) is shown in the form of a general purpose computer 223. Any well known general purpose stored program computer may be used such as the PDP-11 computer and associated interfaces and peripherals supplied by Digital Equipment Corp of Maynard, Mass and the

20 SPC-16 computer and associated interfaces and peripherals supplied by General Automation of Anaheim, California. Alternately, the SPC-16 computer implementation of the CAFDRS system may be modified to practice the teachings of the present invention. In a preferred embodiment, the computer system of copending

25 patent application S/N 101,881 referenced above and continuations therefrom, incorporated herein by reference, may be used to practice the teachings of the present invention.

The correlator arrangement shown in Fig 2A uses a computer to implement a correlation algorithm under program

30 control. Such a software correlation embodiment is described herein because of the simplicity in illustrating the features of the present invention. From the teachings of this example, those of ordinary skill in the art will be able to practice the present invention with other embodiments such as special purpose

35 logical embodiments.

A flow diagram is provided in Fig 5A illustrating
the operation of a correlation algorithm in accordance with
the present invention. This algorithm may be implemented in a
software form with a general purpose digital computer or in a
5 hardwired logic form with a special purpose logical arrangement.
For simplicity of discussion, the implementation of the flow
diagram set forth in Fig 5A will be exemplified with a software
embodiment using a stored program computer.

System 200 (Figs 2A and 2B) provides for implementing
10 the correlation algorithm shown in flow diagram form in Fig 5A.
A plurality of channels 215 are received with multiplexer 220
for selecting one of said plurality of channels for input to a
correlator. Trace signals 215 may be preprocessed such as with
analog signal processors 112 including amplification and filtering.
15 A particular trace channel is selected with multiplexer 220 in
response to an address placed in an address register 221 to
address the desired channel. The selected channel is processed
with ADC 222 to generate a digital signal to computer 223 in
response to the analog signal from multiplexer 220. Computer 223
20 may control multiplexer 220 by transmitting an address to address
register 221 to select one of a plurality of input channels 215
with multiplexer 220. Computer 223 may also control operation
of the ADC 222 with ADC control signals 226. Computer 223
operates with memory 220 for accessing and for storing digital
25 information including a stored program for operating computer 223
and including correlation output signal samples and correlation
pilot signal samples. MUX 220 may be implemented with a plurality
of analog switches such as FET switches selected with address
decoding logic for decoding a desired address from address
30 register 221 to select an appropriate analog switch for communicating
the selected input channel 215 to the output of MUX 220. ADC 212
may be a conventional whole-number successive approximation ADC
or may be a single-bit ADC as described in detail hereinafter.

Computer 223 may be any well known stored program digital computer and memory 224 may be any well known memory arrangement such as a core memory, a disc memory, a tape memory, or combinations thereof.

5   In one embodiment, system 200 may be implemented with equipment sold commercially by Digital Equipment Corporation of Maynard, Mass; wherein computer 223 may be the PDP-11 computer, memory 224 may be the PDP-11 computer main memory in a core memory form and may also be peripheral memory such as well known tape

10   and disc memories using interface memory controllers provided by Digital Equipment Corp. Further, input signal processors MUX 220 and ADC 222 may be commercially available devices such as provided for use with said PDP-11 computer by Digital Equipment Corp. Alternately, an addressable MUX 220 and a controllable

15   ADC 222 operating in conjunction with a stored program computer 223 under program control is presented in copending patent applications incorporated herein by reference. Therefore, from the disclosures set forth herein with reference to Figs 2A, 2B, and 5A and other disclosures thereof; one of ordinary skill in the art will be

20   able to practice the present invention.

The flow diagram set forth in Fig 5A represents a real-time correlation algorithm for a plurality of input trace signals processed in a time-shared manner. A plurality of iterative loops are provided to process each sample for each trace signal,

25   which will now be briefly described and which is described in detail hereinafter. Inner loop 503 iteratively processes a particular trace signal sample T_L with each of the pilot signal samples P_J to update the output signal samples Z_K for the particular channel N. Middle loop 502 sequences across a plurality of trace

30   signal channels N to obtain a trace signal sample T_{LN} from each of the plurality of trace signals for a substantially constant sample time; wherein each spacial-domain sample across the array of trace signals is iteratively processed with the appropriate

pilot signal samples P_{JN} with inner loop 503. Further, outer loop 501 is used to control sampling in the temporal-domain. Therefore, each iteration through outer loop 501 selects the next sequential sampling time t_S; each iteration through middle

5   loop 502 selects a sample from each of the trace signal channels N for the sample time interval controlled with outer loop 501; and each iteration through inner loop 503 selects a pilot signal sample for processing the trace signal sample that was selected with middle loop 502 for the time interval samples selected with

10   outer loop 501.

        Assuming that there are J pilot samples, N trace channels and L sample time intervals; inner loop 503 iterates to process the quantity of J pilot samples for each of the N channel trace signal samples selected with inner loop 502, for each of the

15   sampling intervals selected with outer loop 501; yielding a total number of J iterations through inner loop 503 for each of N iterations through middle loop 502 for each of L iterations through outer loop 501 for a total of $J \cdot N \cdot L$ iterations through inner loop 503 to implement a complete correlation computation.

20   A symbolic notation will now be defined for simplicity of describing correlation algorithms. A trace signal sample may be designated with a symbol T having the appropriate subscripts to designate the spacial-domain channel N and the temporal-domain sample L. Similarly, a pilot signal sample may be designated with

25   a symbol P having the appropriate subscripts to designate the spacial-domain channel N and the temporal-domain sample J. Similarly, an output signal sample may be designated with a symbol Z having the appropriate subscripts to designate the spacial-domain channel N and the temporal-domain sample K.

30   Therefore, temporal-domain samples for the trace signal, the pilot signal, and the output signal are designated with the subscripts L, J, and K respectively and the spacial-domain channel is designated with the subscript N. Therefore, a trace signal

sample may be designated T_{LN} for defining the temporal-domain trace signal sample L from the spacial-domain trace channel N. Similarly, a pilot signal sample may be designated P_{JN} for defining the temporal-domain pilot signal sample J from the

5   spacial-domain pilot channel N. Similarly, an output signal sample may be designated Z_{KN} for defining the temporal-domain output signal sample K from the spacial-domain channel N. Therefore, subscripts L, J, and K define the temporal-domain designation of the sample for the trace signal, pilot signal, and output

10   signal respectively for a particular channel N.

The subscript N may be used to designate the channel when appropriate such as for an embodiment having a plurality of different channels but the subscript N may be eliminated for simplicity of discussion and when the channel designation is not

15   needed.

The subscript notation discussed above may have particular significance to a computer programmer because the subscripts may be used as indicies for multi-level indexing. For example, the stored pilot signal samples P_{JN} and the output

20   signal samples Z_{KN} may be stored in sections of memory called pages or blocks in the form of tables, wherein the index N may identify a table of samples in a page or block of memory for a particular channel and wherein the J or K subscript associated with the pilot signal sample and output signal sample respectively

25   may identify the sample from the table. In a simple embodiment, the subscript N may represent the more significant portion of an index parameter and the subscript J may represent the less significant portion of an index parameter; wherein first indexing of a pilot sample address with the N-index will address the

30   appropriate block of memory and second indexing of the indexed pilot sample address with the J-index will address the location in the block of memory storing the desired pilot signal sample or first indexing of an output sample address with the N-index will address the appropriate block of memory and second indexing of the indexed

35   output sample address with the K-index will address the location in the block of memory storing the desired trace signal sample.

The software embodiment of the correlator algorithm
of the present invention will now be described with reference
to Fig 5A. Fig 5A may represent either a software embodiment
or a hardware embodiment. In a software embodiment, Fig 5A may

5 be used as a computer flow diagram which may be coded in any
well known instruction set for general purpose digital computers
such as the Digital Equipment Corp PDP-11 mini-computer. In a
hardware embodiment, Fig 5A may represent a state diagram executed
under control of special purpose logical counter and decoder

10 control arrangements for sequencing through a plurality of states
in iterative or repetitive form, where each state represents one
or more operations performed in response to the state control
signals. Therefore, the teachings of the present invention
described with reference to Fig 5A may be implemented in either a

15 software embodiment or a hardware embodiment by those of
ordinary skill in the art from the teachings provided herein.
Further, a hardware embodiment is discussed herein with reference
to Fig 5B using many of the teachings set forth in the discussions
referenced to Fig 5A but departing from Fig 5A for both,

20 simplicity of discussion and for teaching of an alternate embodiment.

Flow diagram 500 may be exemplified with the
computation algorithm shown in Table III and Table IV, where
flow diagram 500 will be further discussed hereinafter with
reference to examples set forth in Table III following the

25 generalized description of flow diagram 500.

A plurality of iterative or repetitive loops are shown
in Fig 5 to iteratively generate or build-up partial correlation
solutions until all of the input trace samples have been received
and processed for completing the solutions. A plurality of

30 loops are provided within other loops to show the various stages
of data processing. Inner loop 503 provides for processing each
trace signal sample for each channel with the complete set of
pilot signal samples. Middle loop 502 provides for sequencing

across an array of channels or traces to setup the processing for
each sample of each channel, wherein each trace sample of each
channel is processed with inner loop 503 for the particular
sample selected with middle loop 502. Outer loop 501 provides

5   for sequencing through a plurality of trace samples in the
temporal-domain or time-domain, wherein each temporal-domain
sample including a sample from each of the plurality of channels
is processed with middle loop 502 to select each channel sample
in sequence and each channel sample is processed with each of a

10 plurality of pilot signal samples with inner loop 503. Therefore,
flow diagram 500 provides iterative loops within iterative loops
for efficient implementation of the real-time correlation algorithm
of the present invention in either software or in hardware. In
a software embodiment; iterative loops 501, 502, and 503 may be

15 programmed as subroutines having calling sequences to setup
initial conditions of the subroutine as shown in flow diagram 500
and as discussed in detail hereinafter. Programming of various
levels of subroutines ;   shown with operations 501, 502, and 503;
is well known in the prior art and may be defined as nesting of

20 subroutines wherein the nested subroutines shown in flow diagram 500
are programmable by those or ordinary skill in the art from the
teachings of the present invention.

          The correlation routine may be programmed as a
reenterant routine under control of an executive program for

25 time-shared operation or may be programmed as a dedicated routine
such as with a general purpose digital computer performing only
the correlation operations. In a dedicated embodiment, entrance
point 1 may be operationally connected to exit point 2. In a
reentrant routine operating under control of a time-shared

30 executive routine, the executive routine may transfer to point 1
to enter correlation program 500 and correlation program 500
may return to the executive routine from point 2.

Flow diagram 500 will be discussed herein in the form of a reentrant subroutine under control of an executive routine for simplicity of discussion. The executive routine may transfer to the correlation routine entered at point 1 through operation 510.

5   A calling sequence may be implemented in operation 510 to store the return address and to provide other overhead or executive operations. Correlation operations may be initialized in operation 511 where initialization may include loading of pilot signal samples and zero-setting the trace sample parameter L and the pilot start

10 sample parameter Jo. The pilot signal samples may be stored in an off-line memory such as a disc or tape memory and may be accessed with well known computer arrangements. Alternately, computer 223 may sample the pilot signal such as with multiplexer 220 and ADC 222. Pilot samples may be whole-number samples such as

15 5-bit or 16-bit samples or may be single-bit samples such as one-bit samples described herein. Pilot signal samples may be stored in a main computer memory such as a core memory in sequential addresses such as for well known table lookup operations and for convenient indexing through the table of pilot signal samples

20 with an index parameter which may be related to the pilot signal sample parameter J as discussed hereinafter. Initialization of trace sample parameter L to a zero defines that the first sample in time will be processed first and wherein the L-parameter may be incremented from the zero initial condition as the correlation

25 computation progresses to subsequent time-domain trace signal samples. The pilot start sample parameter Jo may be initially set to zero and may be incremented as the computation progresses, as described for the L-parameter above.

The program may next test a composite command in

30 operation 528 to determine if compositing-after-correlation is required. If compositing-after-correlation is not required, the program may branch along the NO path to clear the output sample memory in operation 529. Clearing of a memory is a well known

prior art operation and may be performed with an iterative loop incrementing through memory addresses and clearing the addressed locations. If compositing-after-correlation is required, the memory storing the output signal samples from the last

5   correlation is not cleared but is preserved, wherein the program will loop around operation 529 along the YES path to test for a start signal in operation 512 without clearing output memory in operation 529. This compositing control operation is discussed further with reference to operation 517 hereinafter.

10   The correlation program may be synchronized with the input trace signal, where synchronization may be performed with a sync pulse tested in operation 512. If a sync pulse is not detected, the program may loop back around test 512 as a delay until a sync pulse is detected. When a sync pulse is detected in

15   operation 512, the program will branch to outer loop routine 501 to process the trace signal samples. In one embodiment, the sync pulse may be received as a discrete input (DI) detected with a skip-on-discrete (SD) instruction in operation 512. If the discrete sync pulse is not detected, the program will execute a

20   transfer (TR) instruction following the SD-instruction which will loop back along the NO path to wait for a sync pulse. If a sync pulse is detected with an SD-instruction, the program will skip over the transfer instruction and follow the YES path to commence with the processing of trace signal samples.

25   When the sync pulse is detected in operation 512, the program will branch to outer loop routine 501 to process sequential trace signal samples for a plurality of parallel trace channels. Routine 501 begins with an initialization operation 513 to initialize the computation to channel zero (N=0). Because of

30   the real-time nature of the sampling and processing of trace signals, time t will be measured in operation 514 and stored as time sample t_s. After processing the samples for a particular sample interval, the program may delay until the next sample time

prior to iterating through the outer loop 501 for the next

subsequent set of acquired samples, as will be discussed for

operations 523 and 524 hereinafter. Timing may be performed

with an off-line real-time clock, by counting time with the program,

5 or by considering time delays implicit in the program as

is well known in the prior art.

After initializing the outer loop 501 for a particular

time interval in operations 513 and 514, middle loop routine 502

will be executed to process each time related sample for each of

10 the plurality of channels, where the program sequences through

the plurality of channels with operations 515 and 516 and performs

correlation computations on a single trace sample for a single

channel with inner loop routine 503 before looping back to

operation 513 to again initialize the outer loop 501 for the next

15 sequential sample for each channel.

Middle loop 502 may be entered from operation 514 of

outer loop 501 to load a trace sample in operation 515 and to

initialize the computation for processing that sample in

operation 516. Trace sample T_{LN} is obtained from channel N in

20 the sequence of channels for each time related sample L. Middle

loop 502 iteratively processes samples from each of the plurality

of channels N for each sample time period L by continually looping

back to operation 515 for each subsequent channel N associated with

a particular time interval L.

25 Inner loop 503 may be initialized in operation 516

to define the starting pilot signal sample with P_{J_0} and to define

the starting output signal sample with Z_0. Inner loop 503 then

iteratively updates each of the output signal samples Z_K

starting with output signal sample Z_0 with each of the related

30 pilot signal samples P_J starting with pilot signal sample P_{J_0}.

The pilot signal sample address J is decremented for each

iteration, analogous to the shifting of the pilot signal past

the incoming trace signal as discussed above for the correlation

algorithm.

Inner loop 503 provides processing for each input trace sample with all of the appropriate pilot samples for that channel and provides for exiting inner loop 503 when the last output signal sample has been updated with the product of the
5 related pilot signal sample and the particular trace signal sample. Updating of each output signal sample is performed by multiplying the trace signal sample T_{LN} and the appropriate pilot signal sample P_{JN}, then adding the product thereof to the related output sample Z_{KN}, and then storing the updated output
10 signal sample Z_{KN} in the related storage location.

The trace signal sample T_{LN} and the pilot signal sample P_{JN} may either or both be a single-bit sample, a ternary sample, or a digital whole-number sample and the product thereof may be a single-bit sample, a ternary sample, or a whole-number
15 sample. This product may be added to the least significant portion of the output signal sample Z_{KN} which is accessed from memory. The updated output signal sample Z_{KN} is then stored back into memory. The pilot sample P_{JN} and the output sample Z_{KN} may be accessed from memory and stored in memory with well known
20 techniques such as table-lookup techniques, wherein the subscripts K, J, and N may be used as index operators for indexing through a table of parameters. Output signal sample Z_{KN} may be accessed from a stored table with multi-level indexing such as indexing to the appropriate section of memory related
25 to the channel N and indexing to the appropriate sample K within that channel N with multi-level indexing using index operators K and N. Adding of the product $T_{LN} \cdot P_{JN}$ to the output sample Z_{KN} may be performed without roundoff, thereby permitting the updated output sample Z_{KN} to build-up to a greater precision
30 than available in the resolution of the product, as discussed in detail above.

If correlation output memory had been cleared in
operation 529 above, then the first execution of operation of 517
for each output point would fetch a zero value for Z_{KN} because the
output memory location Z_{KN} had been zero-set in operation 529

5 for correlation without compositing. Therefore, the output
signal samples in storage locations Z_{KN} will buildup from zero for
the single correlation operation being implemented. If compositing-
after-correlation is selected with test 528, then the program
will branch along the YES path to bypass operation 529 to preserve

10 the results of prior correlation operations. The new correlation
updates for a new correlation computation may be added to the
corresponding output signal samples from prior correlation
computations, wherein correlation updates from the present
correlation computation may be used to update the output signal

15 samples from a prior correlation computation for implementing
compositing-after-correlation. Therefore, the effects of
compositing-after-correlation of two independent trace signals is
similar to the mere correlation of a single trace signal with a
pair of operators or the correlation of a double-length trace signal

20 with a single operator; wherein the system of the present
invention improves correlation with compositing-after-correlation
operations.

After performing the partial sum-of-the-product
computation in operation 517, the program branches to operation 518

25 to test the K-parameter to determine if the K-parameter is equal
to Kmax, indicative of the last output sample Z_{Kmax} for a
particular channel N being processed. If the last output signal
sample has not been processed, operation loops back to sequence
through the set of output samples Z_{KN} and related pilot samples P_{JN}

30 to complete the processing for the particular trace signal sample T_{LN}
through operations 519 and 527. When the last output signal
sample for the particular channel has been updated, indicated by
the K-parameter being equal to the Kmax-parameter, the program

branches to operation 520 to exit the inner loop 503 for iteratively looping back through middle loop 502 or outer loop 501 or for exiting the subroutine if the correlation operations have been completed.

If the K-parameter is not equal to the Kmax-parameter. as tested in operation 518, then additional ·output samples must be updated for the particular trace signal sample. This iterative sequence progresses to operation 519 for decrementing the J-parameter, which is related to the shifting of the pilot signal, and for incrementing the K-parameter which is related to the updating progression through the output samples. This operation of decrementing the J-parameter and incrementing the K-parameter can be better understood with the discussion referenced to Table III above.

Many computations associated with this algorithm may be eliminated with the test set forth in operation 527, wherein computations may be eliminated that are related to the blank spaces shown in Table III which do not have pilot signal samples P_0-P_3 associated therewith and which therefore represented the absence of an output signal update requirement. If a pilot signal sample is within the scope of the computation indicated by the pilot signal parameter J being inbetween 0 and Jmax, the appropriate output signal sample Z_{KN} must be updated with the product of the pilot signal sample P_{JN} and the trace signal sample T_{LN} as performed in operation 517. If the pilot signal parameter J is outside of the range from 0 to Jmax such as with a negative value of J, then output signal sample Z_{KN} should not be updated in the computation of operation 517. Therefore, computationa time may be saved by skipping the correlation computation shown in operation 517 for a J-parameter outside of the computational range as defined with operation 527, where a pilot signal parameter J outside of the range of the computation causes the program to branch along the NO path directly to operation 518

instead of to operation 517 in order to save computational time and to avoid undesirable updates of the output signal. The program iteratively progresses each trace signal sample within inner loop 503 to sequentially update a plurality of output signal
5   samples in response to a plurality of pilot samples within the range of the computation for each input trace signal sample of each channel and the program skips the computation in operation 517 and merely increments through the iteration for pilot signal sample parameters J outside the range of the computation.
10   When inner loop 503 has incremented through all of the output signal samples for a particular trace signal sample, as determined by K equalling Kmax in operation 518, the program exits inner loop 503 through operations 520 and 521 to loop back to operation 515 for processing of samples of the other channels
15   for a particular sample interval and then through operations 520, 525, 522, 523, and 524 to operation 513 for processing of samples of subsequent sample intervals after all channels have been processed for a particular sample interval.
          After a particular trace signal sample has been
20   processed to update the output signal samples for a particular channel in inner loop 503, the program loops back to operation 515 in middle loop 502 to sequence through each of the N-channels for a particular sample time L. A test is made in operation 520 to determine if the trace signal sample just processed with inner
25   loop 503 is the sample for the last channel Nmax. If the sample for the last channel Nmax has just been processed, the program branches along the YES path from operation 520 to exit middle loop 502 for processing trace signal samples for the next time period. If the trace signal sample just processed with inner
30   loop 503 is not from the last channel Nmax, then the program branches along NO path from operation 520 to operation 521 to increment the N-parameter to identify the next sequential trace channel and to loop back to operation 515 in middle loop 502 to iteratively select the next trace channel for correlation
35   with the pilot signal in inner loop 503. Middle loop 502

provides iterations to process the particular time interval

samples for each of a plurality of trace channels in sequence

until the last channel has been processed for that time interval,

at which time middle loop 502 is exited through operation 520

5   to wait for and to process the samples for the next sample time

interval.

           After processing each trace signal sample with inner

loop 503 for each of the N-channels for the same time interval

as controlled with middle loop 502, the program branches out of

10   the middle loop 502 to operation 525 to determine if the last

processed time interval sample L is the last time interval

sample Lmax which must be processed. If the last sample has been

processed, the program branches out of outer loop 501 to

operation 526 for exiting the correlation routine through point 2.

15   Exiting of the routine is indicative of completion of the

correlation for each of the trace signals. Exiting of routine 500

may be performed by accessing a return address and transferring

indirect to this return address location which may be an executive

routine location for commencing with executive routine operations.

20   If the test in operation 525 shows that the last time

interval sample Lmax has not been processed, wherein L is not

equal to Lmax; then the program branches to operation 522 to

increment the trace signal parameter L to the next sample and to

increment the pilot signal start sample Jo for outer loop

25   processing of the next set of time interval samples. The program

then progresses to operation 523 for sampling the time parameter t

and calculating a time interval parameter Δt by subtracting the

last prior sample t_S from the present time t. The Δt-parameter is

tested in operation 524 to determine if the proper time interval

30   has expired for sampling of the N-channel signals for the next

set of trace signal samples. If the time interval has not expired,

the program loops back to operation 523 along the NO path to

continue to again sample the time parameter t and to again test

the change in time Δt until the time interval t_I has expired.
When the time interval has expired, the program loops back along
the YES path from operation 524 to operation 513 to iterate
through the correlation for the next time interval set of samples
5 from each of the N-channels.

The correlator of the present invention may generate
a correlation output as digital samples stored in an output memory
device. In an embodiment requiring preserving of each correlation
output signal, the results of a correlation computation may be
10 transmitted to a using system or may be recorded on a disc
memory or on magnetic tape for future use. A subsequent
correlation solution may be preserved independent of the prior
correlation by clearing out the correlation memory prior to
starting a new correlation operation. Further, if it is desired
15 to provide compositing-after-correlation, the correlation output
memory may not be cleared but the results of a subsequent
correlation computation may be added to the results of the prior
correlation computation thereby implementing compositing-after-
correlation by not clearing the correlation output memory.
20 Clearing of memory is a simple task that is well known in the art.
Clearing of memory in a hardware embodiment may be accomplished
by disabling or zero-setting one stage of a fetch and restore
recirculation loop while a sequence of memory locations are
accessed, as discussed with reference to Fig 6D hereinafter.
25 Alternately, memory may be cleared by enabling a clear input such
as for a memory or a counter device having appropriate memory and
counter circuitry for clearing. Clearing of memory in a software
embodiment may be provided with a program loop that iteratively
increments through memory and zero-sets the stored information
30 such as by writing zeros into the stored locations or by other
well known programming techniques. A simple test to determine
whether compositing-after-correlation is to be performed for a
particular correlation operation may be readily implemented with
digital logical devices or with program operations to determine
35 if memory should be cleared for not compositing-after-correlation
or if memory should be preserved for compositing-after-correlation.

Various operations such as looping operations 512 and 524 are shown in a form that particularly lends itself to simplicity of discussion. Greater efficiency may be provided using a real-time correlation routine that periodically returns to

5 the executive routine such as during a wait time delay period shown with operations 512 and 524 to perform other calculations while waiting for a sync pulse to arrive in operation 512, or a sample time interval to expire in operation 524, or for other such reasons. In such real-time operations, the correlation

10 routine may transfer to a real-time executive routine when time is available or when priority operations associated with other operations must be performed and the executive routine may transfer back or return to the correlation routine to continue the correlation algorithm. Such real-time operation is well known

15 in the art and may be applied to the program flow diagram 500 of Fig 5A by those of ordinary skill in the art from the teachings herein.

The subscripts set forth in Fig 5A may be representative of well known indexing operations such as multi-level indexing

20 operations. For example, the P_J pilot signal may have a J-index which is decremented as shown in operation 519, wherein the J-parameter may be used as an index parameter for indexing through the pilot signal sample memory to access the appropriate pilot signal sample P_J for the computation in operation 517.

25 Alternately, the pilot signal may have a multi-level JN-index, where a first level of index may be based upon the channel index number N and wherein a second level of index may be based upon the pilot sample index number J. Using one well known multi-indexing programming arrangement, the location of a pilot sample

30 to be accessed may be indexed first with the N-channel parameter defining the more significant portion such as a "page" or "block" of addresses of the stored pilot signal samples and may be further indexed with the J-sample parameter defining the less significant

portion of the addresses within the "page" or "block" of N-
addresses of pilot signal samples associated with the selected
channel N. Therefore, a common correlation program can be used
for all samples and for all channels by merely changing the
5   index parameters L, N, and K.

   As discussed above, correlation is accomplished for a
plurality of time interval samples in the temporal-domain as
selected with outer loop 501; wherein each temporal-domain set of
samples across the N-channels in the spacial-domain is sequentially
10 processed with middle loop 502; and wherein each of the samples
in the temporal-domain (iteratively selected with outer loop 501)
and in the spacial-domain (iteratively selected with middle
loop 502) is iteratively processed with inner loop 503 by performing
the correlation computations on the trace signal sample by
15 comparison with all of the pilot signal samples and by updating of
the appropriate output signal samples. Outer loop 501 and middle
loop 502 may be considered to be a two-dimensional selection
program, wherein middle loop 502 provides for scanning across the
array of N-channels in the spacial-domain and outer loop 501
20 provides for scanning along the trace signals in the temporal-
domain.

   In view of the above description and flow chart 500,
many important features and teachings have been exemplified in
accordance with the present invention. For example, a unique
25 algorithm has been provided for real-time correlation and for
time-domain correlation. Real-time correlation is exemplified by
the partial signal updating of the output signal samples for each
trace signal sample, thereby precluding the need to store the
input trace samples, and thereby providing all processing
30 associated with a particular trace signal sample when that trace
signal sample is received. Further, time-domain correlation is
exemplified by the multiplication of each trace sample with all
of the related pilot signal samples and by the shifting of the pilot

signal and trace signal in relation thereto; which is in direct
contrast to the prior art frequency-domain correlation such as with
transformation using Fast Fourier transforms and multiplication of
matricies in the frequency-domain. A further feature of the
5   present invention is exemplified with the sampling of a plurality
of channels in the spacial-domain for a substantially constant
time-interval in the temporal-domain and the processing of a set of
spacial-domain samples before temporal-domain samples. Yet
further, an arrangement is provided for reducing the number of
10 computations required to implement the correlation algorithm by
detecting when updates are required with operation 527 and by not
performing update operations that are not required. Still further,
flow diagram 500 exemplifies iterative processing and nesting of
iterative routines for more efficient correlation computations.

15   In order to provide a better understanding of the
correlation algorithm set forth in Fig 5A, a brief example will
be discussed with reference to Table IX. Table IX sets forth the
parameters associated with the flow diagram of Fig 5A and provides
numerical values for these parameters to illustrate the iterative
20 nature of the processing and to specifically exemplify the
operation.

            The column headings of Table IX will now be described.
The ROW NO column provides sequential row numbers as a reference
to the operations set forth in Table IX. The operations shown in
25 Fig 5A that are sequentially executed to change the parameters of
this example are listed in the column titled OPERATION REF, wherein
the 500 series numbers in this column correspond to the 500 series
numbers referencing operations in Fig 5A. For example, reference
number 511 in row 1 of Table IX corresponds to operation 511 of
30 Fig 5A. The columns SAMPLE TIME L, CHANNEL N, PILOT START SAMPLE Jo,
PILOT SAMPLE J, and OUTPUT SAMPLE K correspond to the parameters L,
N, Jo, J, and K discussed above with reference to Fig 5A. The
column entitled SKIP OPERATIONS shows an arrow opposite a blank row
related to a group of sequential operations that have been skipped
35 for simplicity of discussion. For example, row 6 shows a skip
operation symbol indicative of skipping the large number of

TABLE IX

ROW NO	OPERATION REF NO	TRACE SAMPLE L	CHANNEL N	PILOT START SAMPLE Jo	PILOT SAMPLE J	OUTPUT SAMPLE K	SKIP OPERATIONS
1	511	0	-	0	-	-	
2	513	0	0	0	-	-	
3	516	0	0	0	0	0	
4	519	0	0	0	-1	1	
5	519	0	0	0	-2	2	↕
6							
7	519	0	0	0	-11	11	
8	519	0	0	0	-12	12	
9	521	0	1	0	-12	12	
10	516	0	1	0	0	0	
11	519	0	1	0	-1	1	
12	519	0	1	0	-2	2	↕
13							
14	519	0	1	0	-11	11	
15	519	0	1	0	-12	12	
16	521	0	2	0	-12	12	
17	516	0	2	0	0	0	
18	519	0	2	0	-1	1	
19	519	0	2	0	-2	2	↕
20							
21	519	0	2	0	-11	11	
22	519	0	2	0	-12	12	
23	522	1	2	1	-12	12	
24	513	1	0	1	-12	12	
25	516	1	0	1	1	0	
26	519	1	0	1	0	1	
27	519	1	0	1	-1	2	↕
28							
29	522	15	-	15	-	-	
30	513	15	0	15	-	-	
31	516	15	0	15	15	0	
32	519	15	0	15	14	1	
33	519	15	0	15	13	2	↕
34							
35	519	15	0	15	4	11	
36	519	15	0	15	3	12	↕
37							
38	521	15	2	15			
39	516	15	2	15	15	0	
40	519	15	2	15	14	1	
41	519	15	2	15	13	2	↕
42							
43	519	15	2	15	4	11	
44	519	15	2	15	3	12	
45	526	15	2	15	3	12	

iterations through operation 519 inbetween row 5 and row 7 while
the K-parameter is being incremented from output sample K=2 in
row 5 to output sample K=11 in row 7. A showing of the skipped
operations would not add to the description wherein the repetitive
5 nature of the processing and the following description will permit
one skilled in the art to reconstruct the skipped operations from
the teachings of the present invention.

An example of operation of the embodiment discussed
above with reference to Fig 5A will now be provided for the
10 parameters discussed above for Table III. In Table III the trace
sample parameter L ranges from 0 through 15, the maximum trace
sample parameter Lmax is 15; the pilot start sample parameter Jo
ranges from 0 through 3, the pilot sample parameter J ranges
from 0 through 3, the maximum pilot sample parameter Jmax is 3,
15 the output sample parameter K ranges from 0 through 12, and the
maximum output sample parameter Kmax is 12. Table III has been
used to illustrate operation of a single trace channel but the
arrangement discussed with reference to Fig 5A illustrates a
multiple trace arrangement. For the example described with
20 reference to Table IX, a set of three channels will be assumed
wherein the channel parameter N ranges from 0 through 2 and the
maximum channel parameter Nmax is 2.

Operation of the algorithm shown in Fig 5A will now be
discussed in detail with reference to Table IX.
25   The program enters the routine through operation 510
and initializes the trace sample parameter L to zero and the pilot
start sample Jo to zero as shown in row 1 for operation 511.
The program detects a sync pulse in operation 512 and enters
outer loop 501 to initialize the channel parameter N to channel zero
30 in operation 513 (row 2), then enters middle loop 502 to sample the
input trace signal for sample time zero channel zero (L=0 and N=0
for row 3.) in operation 515. The program initializes the J-parameter
and the K-parameter by loading the Jo-parameter of zero into the

J-parameter and by zero setting the K-parameter in operation 516
(row 3).

Operation commences to inner loop 503 to compute
the output term Z_{KN} for output samples K=0 and channel N=0
5   (row 3) associated with pilot signal P_J for the first pilot
sample of J=0 (row 3). The K-parameter is tested in operation 518,
where the K-parameter is equal to zero and not equal to Kmax
(row 3). The program branches to operation 519 where the J-parameter
is decremented to -1 and the K-parameter is incremented to 1
10 (row 4). The J-parameter is tested in operation 527, where the
J-parameter is negative (-1) and therefore less than zero, where the
P-samples for the J-parameter less than zero are not used to update
the output samples. Therefore the program branches to operation 518,
skipping operation 517 wherein the output samples are not updated
15 for this and subsequent negative values of the pilot sample
parameter J. The program then tests for the K-parameter in
operation 518, but the K-parameter equals 1 (row 4), causing the
program to branch through operation 519 which decrements the
J-parameter to -2 and increments the K-parameter to 2 (row 5).

20   The program continues to loop through operations 518,
519, and 527 for 10-iterations (8-skipped iterations with row 6
and rows 7 and 8) until the output sample parameter K is
incremented to 12 (row 8). Therefore, the test for K=Kmax
in operation 518 causes the program to branch along the YES path
25 because K=12 (row 8) and Kmax=12 (Table III); resulting in the
program exiting from inner loop 503 to operation 520. The
13-iterations through inner loop 503 corresponding to the
13-output samples Z_0-Z_{12} (Table III) to provide an update of the
output samples with the trace sample multiplied by the pilot
30 samples. This iteration provides no updates for output samples
Z_1-Z_{12} because the test in operation 527 determined that the
pilot signal parameter J corresponding to the output samples
Z_1-Z_{12} were negative, as illustrated in the T_o column of Table III
having blanks in those table positions.

After exiting from inner loop 503 through
operation 520, the N-parameter is tested to see if the output
samples of the last channel Nmax have been updated, but N=0
(row 8) and not Nmax which equals 2. Therefore, the program

5 branches to operation 521 to increment the N-parameter from zero
(row 8) to 1 (row 9). The program then loops back within middle
loop 502 to sample channel 1 for N=1 (row 9) and then to initialize
the J-parameter to Jo which is zero and to zero-set the K-parameter
in operation 516 (row 10). Therefore, operation 516 sets up the

10 computation to iterate through inner loop 503 for the next trace
signal sample which is the trace signal sample for the second
trace channel N=1. The program iterates through inner loop 503
13-times related to the 13-output samples Z_0-Z_{12} (rows 11-15) but
updates only the first output sample Z_0 as discussed above for

15 trace channel zero (rows 4-8). The primary difference between
the operations performed in rows 3-8 and in rows 10-15 is that the
program has incremented from the first channel (N=0) to the second
channel (N=1), where all other parameters are the same.

As discussed for row 9 above, the program exits inner

20 loop 503 and increments the channel parameter N, wherein the
channel parameter N is incremented to N=2 (row 16). The program
again iterates through inner loop 503 with operations shown in
rows 17-22 which are the same as the operations performed in
rows 3-8 except that the correlation computations are performed

25 for the third channel (N=2). One difference for the programmed
operations for the third channel is provided in operation 520
where Nmax=2 for this example and therefore when N=2 (rows 22 and 23)
the program branches out of middle loop 502 along the YES path
from operation 520 into outer loop 501 to test the L-parameter

30 in operation 525. Because Lmax=15 (Table III) and L=0 (row 22),
the program branches along the NO path from operation 525 to
operation 522 to increment the L-parameter to 1 and the Jo-parameter
to 1 (row 23).

At the end of the sample interval defined in operations 523 and 524, the program loops back to operation 513 in outer loop 501 where the channel parameter N is initialized back to zero to identify the first channel for this second sample

5   time interval (row 24) to start the iterative processing for each channel associated with the second sample time interval L=1. The program inputs a trace sample in operation 515 related to the first channel and the second time interval, wherein N=0 and L=1 respectively (row 24); then the program initializes the J-parameter

10 to the Jo-parameter which is 1 and the K-parameter K to zero (row 25) to set up the parameters for iterative processing of input samples $T_{LN}=T_{10}$. The program updates the first output sample Z_0 for the first channel (N=0) in operation 517 and iterates through inner loop 503 13-times until the K-parameter is

15 incremented to Kmax which is 12, thereby causing the program to exit inner loop 503 from operation 518 along the YES path because K=Kmax=12. The J-parameter is initially set to J=1 (row 25) and therefore must be decremented twice (row 26 and row 27) before going negative, wherein the first two output samples Z_0

20 and Z_1 are updated before the test in operation 527 detects a negative pilot sample parameter J to skip the output update computation in operation 517. Inner loop 503 continues to generate the computations for each trace signal sample, middle loop 502 continues to sample each channel for a particular time interval,

25 and outer loop 501 continues to sequence through time intervals until all correlation computations have been completed.

The last sample time is also shown in Table IX to illustrate how the program exists from the iterative routines, where the intermediate iterations between the second sample

30 time (L=1) (row 27) and the sixteenth sample time (L=15) (row 29) are skipped (row 28) for simplicity of description. One skilled in the art can readily complete the skipped operations from the teachings herein and the above examples for rows 1-27, where these skipped operations are substantially identical to the iterative

35 operations discussed for ⌊ows 1-27.

Continuing the discussion from operation 522 where the sample time parameter L has been incremented to 15 and the pilot start sample parameter Jo has been incremented to 15, the program performs the time delay operation for the sixteenth sample interval

5 with operations 523 and 524 before looping back to operation 513 for initializing the channel parameter N to the first channel (N=0) (row 30) to input the first channel sample for this sixteenth sample time interval in operation 515 and for initializing the pilot sample parameter J to Jo which is 15 and for zero setting

10 the output sample parameter K in operation 516 (row 31). Iterations through inner loop 503 are exemplified with decrementing of the pilot sample parameter J and incrementing of the output sample parameter K (rows 32-36) until the output sample parameter K is incremented to the Kmax parameter value of 12 (row 36)

15 resulting in the program exiting from inner loop 503 along the YES path from decision operation 518. The operations shown in rows 31-36 are similar to the operations discussed for rows 3-8 above except that the sample time parameter L and related pilot start sample parameter Jo are equal to 15, related to the

20 sixteenth and last trace sample interval. For this example Jmax=3, wherein all values of J greater than 3 which are the values of J related to output samples Z_0-Z_{11} are not used in the output computation as detected in operation 527; resulting in the program looping back through operation 518 and skipping

25 compute operation 517 for these values of pilot sample parameters J greater than J=3.

The second channel N=1 is iteratively processed for sample intervals L=15 similar to the processing of the first channel N=0 for sample intervals L=15 (rows 30-36) and therefore

30 the detailed description for the second channel N=1 is skipped as indicated in row 37. The program starts the processing of the third and last channel N=2 for the last sample interval L=15 in operation 521 by incrementing the channel parameter N to N=2

(row 38) then looping back in middle loop 502 to sample the third
channel N=2 for the last time interval L=15 in operation 515
and to initialize the computation for this sample in operation 516
by setting the pilot sample parameter J to the pilot start

5   sample Jo which is 15 and to zero-set the output sample
parameter K (row 39). The program then enters inner loop 503
and iterates through the inner loop 13-times until the output
sample parameter K is incremented to Kmax=12, causing the program
to exit inner loop 503 from operation 518 along the YES path to

10   operation 520. These 13-iterations through inner loop 503 are
exemplified with rows 40-44 similar to the above operations shown
in rows 18-22 except that the sample time parameter L has been
incremented to L=15 for rows 40-44. The program tests the
channel parameter N in operation 520, wherein the channel parameter N

15   is now equal to Nmax=2 (row 44) causing the program to branch
along YES path to operation 525 to test the sample time parameter L.
The sample time parameter L is equal to Lmax of 15 (row 519)
causing the program to exit the correlation routine along the
YES path from operation 525 to operation 526.

20   In view of the above example, the iterative operations
through the correlation program have been shown in detail to
illustrate in detail how the computation progresses.

Description Of Fig 5B

An alternate embodiment of the system of the present invention will now be described with reference to Fig 5B. Fig 5B may represent a computer flow diagram for a software embodiment as discussed with reference to Fig 5A above or may represent a state diagram for a hardwired logical embodiment as will be discussed with reference to Fig 6 hereinafter. Because Fig 5A has been discussed primarily with reference to a software embodiment, Fig 5B will be discussed primarily with reference to a hardware embodiment; illustrating the similarity between computer flow diagrams and hardware state diagrams and illustrating the ability to either program a computer or to design logic to implement a computer flow diagram and a hardwired logic state diagram. For example, the textbook by Chu referenced hereinafter discusses implementation of state diagrams with hardwired logic with reference to Figs 11-5 and 11-6 on pages 408 and 411 therein and the textbooks by Sherman, Stark, Jeenel, Golden, Schriber, Maurer, Martin, and Swallow referenced hereinafter discuss programming of computers in response to flow diagrams. Therefore those skilled in the art will be able to program flow diagram operations with a general purpose computer and be able to design hardwired logic from the flow diagrams and state diagrams of Fig 5A and 5B; wherein the information contained in a flow diagram and in a state diagram are substantially the same and would permit those skilled in the art to program a computer or design hardwired logic to implement flow diagram and state diagram operations.

The state diagram of Fig 5B will now be discussed in detail. Table III exemplifies an algorithm substantially the same as that mechanized with the state diagram of Fig 5B, wherein reference to Table III will assist in understanding the state diagram of Fig 5B. A sequencer using integrated circuits may be used to sequence through a sequence of states, wherein the

sequencer may comprise a word-counter and a bit-counter or the
sequencer may be implicit in the counters and sequential logic
of the correlation processor. The sequencer is shown commencing
operation at reference point 1 and proceeding to test for a sync
5   pulse in operation 540. The sequencer remains "locked up"
waiting for a sync pulse, as shown by the looping-back along the
NO path and the sequencer proceeds along the YES path to operation
541 when a sync pulse is detected. The sync pulse may be used to
clear a counter or to reset logic to permit the sequencer to
10 continue operation through the state diagram wherein the logic
may be "locked up" waiting for the sync pulse to clear or to
reset logical elements. Upon detection of a sync pulse; the
parameters L, Jo, J, and K may be cleared in operation 541;
wherein the arrival of a sync pulse may "unlock" the sequencer
15 by clearing counters, as will be discussed in detail with reference
to Fig 6D hereinafter. The parameters L, Jo, J, and K have the same
significance as in the discussion referenced to Fig 5A above
and will be briefly summarized below. The L-parameter represents
the designation of a trace signal sample, wherein the first trace
20 signal sample is designated by L=0. The Jo-parameter represents
the designation of the first pilot signal sample, where the
Jo-parameter may be equal to the L-parameter as shown in Table III
and where the designation of the trace signal sample in the top
row of Table III and the designation of the pilot signal sample
25 in the top pilot signal sample row of Table III, which is the
first pilot sample, have corresponding numbers therebetween for
this particular algorithm. The J-parameter represents the pilot
signal sample which ranges from J=Jo set forth in the top pilot
signal sample row of Table III through J=0 for the last pilot
30 signal sample designated P_0. The K-parameter represents the output
signal sample, wherein the first output signal sample is Z_0 having
a K value of zero and being incremented through the last output
signal sample which is Z_{15} in Table III representing a Kmax-parameter
of 15.

After clearing the L, Jo, J, and K parameters in operation 541, the pilot sample P_J and trace sample T_L are accessed in operation 542, wherein the P_J signal sample is the appropriate pilot signal sample and the T_L signal sample is the

5   appropriate trace signal sample for the computation.

In a hardware embodiment, the signal samples such as the pilot signal samples P_J and the output signal samples Z_K may be accessed from a shift register memory, a random access memory (RAM), a read-only memory (ROM), a core memory, a

10   disc memory or other well known memory devices which may be used for storing signal samples. The trace signal sample T_L may be accessed by sampling an input trace signal in real-time or may be stored in a buffer memory and accessed when appropriate. For the first pass through the iteration, J is equal to zero for the

15   first pilot signal sample P_0 and L is equal to zero for the first trace signal sample T_0. The accessed trace and pilot signal samples T_L and P_J are multiplied in operation 543, wherein this multiplication computation may be an incremental multiplication such as by using a hardware exclusive-OR circuit as discussed in

20   detail in Fig 6 hereinafter or may be various combinations of whole number, ternary, and incremental multiplications that can be implemented with well known stored program computer and hardware logical arrangements.

The product of T_L and P_J computed in operation 543

25   is used to update output signal sample Z_K by adding the product $T_L \cdot P_J$ to the Z_K sample as shown in operation 543. The computed product T_L and P_J may be added to the related output signal sample Z_K which may be accessed from memory and the updated output signal sample may then be stored back in memory. In an alternate

30   embodiment, the output signal samples may be stored in the persistency of a cathode ray tube (CRT) such as used in an oscilloscope rather than in a digital memory as will be briefly discussed hereinafter. In this oscilloscope storage embodiment,

each column of Table III may represent a different sweep of the CRT beam to record the output signal sample Z-parameters on the CRT by intensity modulating the Z-axis with the product solutions T_L times P_J, as will be discussed in detail hereinafter.

5   After the computation in operation 543, the K-parameter is tested to see if K=Kmax, indicative of the last output sample Z_{Kmax} which indicates that all of the output signal samples have been updated for a particular trace signal sample, thereby necessitating accessing of the next trace signal sample for the

10   next computation iteration. If the K-parameter is not equal to Kmax as tested in operation 544; the sequencer will branch along the NO path to operation 545 to decrement the J-parameter and to increment the K-parameter. This operation can be better understood with reference to Table III, where the J-parameter associated with

15   the pilot signal sample P_J decreases and the K-parameter associated with the output signal Z_K increases as operation progresses vertically downward in Table III for a particular trace signal sample T_L. For example, the sample for L=3 starts with a pilot signal sample P_3 for J=3 related to an output signal sample Z_0

20   for K=0. As the computation progresses, the pilot sample designator J is decremented from 3 to 2 to 1 to 0 for successive iterations through operation 545 and the output sample designator K is incremented from 0 to 1 to 2 to 3 for the corresponding iterations through operation 545 related to the

25   decremented pilot samples and a particular trace signal sample.

         The J-parameter may be tested for being negative in operation 546, where the sequencer branches along the YES path to operation 547 if the J-parameter is negative and along the NO path to operation 542 if the J-parameter is positive. This can be

30   better understood with reference to Table III, where computations for a particular trace signal sample such as T_3 continues through pilot samples P_3-P_0, wherein updating of the output signal samples is disabled when the pilot sample designator J is

decremented beyond the last pilot signal sample P_0 to negative

pilot signal samples. While the J-designator is not negative, the

sequencer will continue to iterate through the accessing of the

pilot signal samples P_J and the computation of multiplying the

5 pilot signal samples P_J with the trace signal sample T_L in

operations 542 and 543. As the pilot designator J is decremented

towards a negative value in operation 545 for successive iterations,

the computation progresses towards the P_0 pilot signal sample,

as shown in Table III.

10   When the iteration progresses past the P_0 sample to

the pilot signal designator J equalling a negative value, the

computation may be disabled because such negative pilot signal

samples should not update the output signal samples Z_K. This is

illustrated in Fig 5B, wherein a negative J-parameter detected

15 in operation 546 causes the sequencer to disable the computation

in operation 547 and to loop back to operation 544 without

accessing the computational parameters P_J and T_L nor computing the

product thereof in operations 542 and 543.

      In other embodiments, the sequencer may loop back from

20 operation 547 to operation 542 thereby not skipping operations 542

and 543, wherein disable operation 547 may set a flip-flop to

disable the computation performed in operation 543 from updating

the output signal samples Z_K with computational solutions

corresponding to negative pilot sample designator J values.

25   As the sequencer causes the processor to iterate

through operations 542-547, the output sample designator K is

incremented in operation 545 and tested in operation 544 until

K=Kmax, thereby causing the sequencer to exit the iterative loop

of operations 542-547 to operation 548. The logic will test to

30 see if the trace signal sample T_L has been incremented to the last

trace signal sample T_{Lmax}. If L=Lmax, then the last trace signal

sample has been processed and the sequencer will loop back along

the YES path to lockup waiting for a new sync pulse in operation 540;

indicative of the need to start a new correlation operation.
If the L-parameter is not equal to Lmax as tested in operation 548,
the sequencer branches along the NO path to operation 549 to
increment the trace sample designator L for identification of
5 the next trace signal sample T_L and to increment the first pilot
sample designator Jo to select a first pilot sample P_{Jo} one
increment further advanced from the prior first pilot sample,
as illustrated in the first row of pilot signal samples shown in
Table III. In the embodiment exemplified with Table III, the
10 first pilot sample designator Jo is equal to the trace sample T_L
designator L and, therefore, the Jo-parameter may be set equal to
the L-parameter for one embodiment of the correlator of the present
invention.

After incrementing the L and Jo designators, the
15 sequencer branches to operation 550 to load the pilot signal first
sample designator Jo into the pilot signal designator memory
location J and to clear or zero-set the output sample designator K.
The significance of this operation can be understood with reference
to Table III, wherein operations for a new trace signal sample
20 such as T_3 are initialized by incrementing the start pilot
sample designator Jo from 2 to 3 for designation of a stored first
pilot sample of P_3 by loading the start pilot signal designator Jo
into the J-parameter memory location to select $P_{Jo}=P_3$ and to clear
the output sample designator K to initially select $Z_K=Z_0$. The
25 sequencer then branches back to operation 542 to access the
sequence of pilot signal samples P_J starting with the P_3 first
pilot signal sample, computing the sequence of updated output signal
samples Z_K in operation 543, then incrementing the output sample
designator K and decrementing the pilot sample designator J in
30 operation 545; wherein these iterations proceed until the last
output signal sample Kmax is updated followed by incrementing
to the next input trace signal sample T_L for processing.

The embodiments discussed with reference to
Figs 5A and 5B are directed to an algorithm such as discussed
with reference to Table III, but these embodiments are presented
in slightly different forms to illustrate different features of

5   the present invention. For example, Fig 5A illustrates a time-
shared embodiment for correlating a plurality of trace signals
from a corresponding plurality of transducers with either a
common pilot signal P_J or separate pilot signals P_{JN}. Therefore,
the embodiment illustrated in Fig 5A may correlate each of the

10 plurality of trace signals with a different pilot signal or with
the same pilot signal. For example, the pilot signal sample may
be a single-dimensional common pilot signal P_J or may be a two-
dimensional or different pilot signal P_{JN} for each trace signal
where the N-channel designation may identify the channel and the

15 J pilot sample designator may identify the particular pilot sample
for that pilot signal N. Alternately as discussed with reference
to Fig 5B, a single channel correlator may be implemented for
correlating a trace signal from a single channel in contrast to
the embodiment discussed with reference to Fig 5A for time-sharing

20 operations between a plurality of channels. Therefore, a single
correlator may be dedicated to a single channel in accordance with
the embodiment discussed with reference to Fig 5B or may be
shared between a plurality of channels in accordance with the
embodiment discussed with reference to Fig 5A and where a plurality

25 of single channel or multiple channel correlators may be used
to process information from a larger array of channels.

Another comparison between the embodiments discussed
with reference to Figs 5A and 5B is related to time-sharing
between other operations. The embodiment shown in Fig 5A

30 provides for a program to enter the correlation operation at
point 1 and to exit the correlator operation from point 2 and
may further provide for a program to enter and to exit on a re-
entrant basis within the correlation computation such as with

multi-level subroutines for permitting other system operations
to be performed on a time-shared basis with the correlation
operation shown in Fig 5A. Alternately, the embodiment described
with reference to Fig 5B may be dedicated to a single channel
5 correlation operation wherein a sync pulse may initiate the
correlation operation and wherein the termination of the correlation
operation following the YES path from operation 548 looping back
to the start point 1 to again "lock up" the sequencer waiting for
a sync pulse in operation 540.

Description Of Figs 6A-6C

A preferred embodiment of the correlator of the present invention will now be discussed with reference to Fig 6.

Fig 6A is a block diagram of the correlator which is
5 shown in detailed logical design form in Fig 6D. Trace signal samples T_L and pilot signal samples P_J are received by product circuitry 611 to generate product signal 612. Trace signal samples T_L may be received in real-time from signal processing circuitry and may
10 be single-bit digital samples or whole-number digital samples. Pilot signal P_J may be received in real-time from the signal processing circuitry such as for auto-correlation or may be received from a pilot sample memory shown as P-store 610 for cross-correlation. Product circuitry 611 may provide a single-
15 bit product computation such as implemented with an exclusive-OR circuit in a preferred embodiment or may provide for multiplying a pair of multiple-bit samples or for multiplying a single-bit sample with a multiple-bit sample.

Product signal 612 from product circuit 611 may be
20 used to update output signal samples Z_K with Z-update circuitry 613 for a memory output device or to modulate the Z-axis signal of a CRT for a display output device. For the CRT embodiment, synchronization of the CRT sweep may be performed by control logic 615 and modulation of CRT beam intensity may be performed
25 with product signal 612, where persistency of the CRT may be relied on for temporary storage and memory capabilities as discussed in detail hereinafter. In a digital storage embodiment, correlation output samples Z_K may be stored in Z-store 614 and may be updated with product signal 612 using Z-update circuitry
30 613. Z-update circuitry 613 may sequentially access Z-output samples Z_K from Z-store 614 for updating with product signal 612 and may then store updated output signal sample Z_K into

Z-store 614. Control logic 615 may sequentially access trace

signal samples T_L, pilot signal samples P_J, and output signal

samples Z_K for updating the output signal samples Z_K with the

product of the trace signal sample T_L and the pilot signal

5   sample P_J, then controlling the storing of output samples Z_K

back into Z-store 614. Further, control logic 615 may be

responsive to an external signal such as a sync signal related

to the start of correlation operations that is responsive to

the start of transmission of a chirp signal with a VIBROSEIS

10 signal generator.

Control logic 615 may be implemented with counters,

decoders, and logical arrangements; or with a ROM micro-

programmable control arrangement; or with other well known

sequencing and controlling arrangements. A preferred embodiment

15 will be discussed with reference to Fig 6D for implementing

control logic 615 with a logical arrangement for convenience

of discussion.

Memory devices such as P-store 610 and Z-store 614

may be implemented with a read only memory (ROM) for P-store 610

20 and with a random access memory (RAM) for Z-store 614 to exemplify

use of these different memories devices, as will be discussed

in detail with reference to Fig 6D hereinafter. Alternately,

memories may be provided for storage of trace signal samples T_L,

pilot signal samples P_J, and the output signal samples Z_K which

25 may be implemented with a core memory, a ROM, a RAM, or other

well known memories. As an alternate, these memory devices

may be implemented with combinations of well known memories,

wherein P-store 610 will be described for a ROM implementation

and Z-store 614 will be described for a RAM implementation with

30 reference to Fig 6D hereafter to exemplify the use of a combi-

nation of memory devices. As another alternative, each memory

device may include a combination of memory devices where for

example Z-store 614 may include a RAM for temporary or buffer

storage and a disc memory for more permanent larger scale storage; wherein the high access rate RAM may provide a least significant portion of Z-samples for high speed updating under control of product signal 612 and the low access rate disc

5   memory may provide a full output signal sample word for low speed updating with the least significant portion of the Z-samples from the RAM.

In a perferred embodiment discussed with reference to Fig 6D, P-store 610 is described as an integrated circuit read

10 only memory and Z-store 614 is described as an integrated circuit random access memory. Further, correlator 400 has been described with reference to Fig 4 providing shift registers 412 and 417 for storing pilot signal samples and trace signal samples respectively and a plurality of registers 421 for storing

15 output signal samples. These embodiments have been shown with different memory arrangements to exemplify the use of different types of memories for the system of the present invention. From these teachings, those of ordinary skill in the art will be able to implement a pilot signal memory, a trace signal memory, and

20 an output signal memory using other memory techniques. For example, pilot signal memory P-store 610 may be implemented with a shift register memory (Fig 4), an integrated circuit ROM (Figs 6D and 6E), an integrated circuit RAM, a core memory, a CCD memory, a disc memory or other well known memory devices.

25 Similarly, a trace signal memory may be implemented with a shift register memory (Fig 4), an integrated circuit RAM, a core memory, a CCD memory, a disc memory, or other well known memory devices. Similarly, an output signal memory Z-store 614 may be implemented with a register memory (Fig 4), an integrated

30 circuit RAM (Figs 6D and 6E), a core memory, a CCD memory, a disc memory, or other well known memory devices. The control arrangement 615 discussed in detail with reference to Figs 6B-6D may be configured by those of ordinary skill in the art from

the teachings of the present invention to accommodate other
memory devices for implementing the digital filtering algorithms
of the present invention.

In accordance with a memory feature of the present
5   invention, a unique memory arrangement such as for Z-store 614
will now be discussed in greater detail. Prior art systems
use disc memories for storing composited and correlated infor-
mation such as exemplified by the CAFDRS system mentioned
above. These disc memory arrangements have the disadvantages
10 of being mechanical rotating memories that are large in size,
heavy in weight, and low in reliability compared to solid state
devices. Further, disc memories cannot be rapidly accessed
nor readily expanded compared to solid state devices. Therefore,
in accordance with the present invention solid state memories
15 may be used for information storage; wherein these solid state
memories have high speed, small size and weight, solid state
reliability, and simple expandability. In accordance with this
memory feature of the present invention, a solid state memory
such as a random access memory (RAM), a charge coupled device
20 (CCD) memory, a magnetic bubble memory, or other solid state
memories may be used for correlation and for compositing.
Prior art disc memories have access times of approximately
30-milliseconds which may be 100,000-times slower than with
solid state memories and disc memories require complex electro-
25 mechanical rotating hardware that is expandable only within a
limited range wherein the smaller configurations are burdened
with high overhead costs.

A further feature of the present invention provides
a solid state memory for rapid access in conjunction with high
30 speed correlating and compositing operations which is used in
combination with a disc memory for mass storage. In one
embodiment, the least significant part of a correlator output
word may be stored in a higher access rate RAM while the most

signficant part of the word may be stored in a lower access
rate disc memory and wherein the least significant portion
of the word in the RAM may be updated at high speed from the
correlation computation and the most significant portion of the
5   word in the disc memory may be updated at a slower rate from
the least significant portion of the word in the RAM. This
arrangement takes advantage of the high access rate of the RAM
in conjunction with the low cost of the disc memory to provide
the advantages of both, the high access rate of the RAM and
10   the low cost storage of the disc memory.

In one example, 4-bit output words may be stored in
RAM for updating by the correlation computation such as with
incrementing or not incrementing the stored word in response to
the single-bit correlation computation. Because a 4-bit
15   (modulo-16) word can be incremented 15-times before overflowing,
the 4-bit word may be used to store the least-significant-bits
(LSBs) for a worst case of 15 accesses and increments before it
is necessary to unload this word due to potential overflow
considerations. Therefore, a 4-bit word stored in a high
20   access rate memory (RAM) need only be used to update a 20-bit
word stored in a lower access rate memory (disc memory) at
a data rate of 1/15th the data rate of the high access rate
memory. Therefore, access rate requirements on the low access
rate memory can be substantially reduced such as by a factor
25   of 15 in accordance with this feature of the present invention.
In this mechanization, the correlator may access the RAM
at high data rates to update the 4-bit words and the disc may
access the RAM at a lower data rate such as 15-times lower than
the correlator data rate to update the stored 20 -bit words in the
30   disc memory with the 4-bit words in the RAM.

Updating of the 20-bit words may be accomplished by adding the 4-bit word from the RAM to the corresponding 16-bit word in the disc memory and zero-setting the RAM word after it has been used to update the 20-bit word in the disc memory.

5 Therefore, as the 4-bit words in RAM are incrementally updated at a high data rate, the 20-bit words on the disc are updated at 1/15th the data rate with the 4-bit words from the RAM; thereby placing the major storage burden on the disc memory and placing the major access rate burden on the RAM.

10 In accordance with the incremental correlation feature of the present invention, low signal-to-noise ratios provide approximately a 50% increment or don't increment duty cycle. Therefore, a 4-bit RAM word may not have to be sampled by the disc memory at a rate greater than once every 31-correlation

15 updates because typically only half of the correlation operations may require the RAM word to be incremented. Other disc memory update rates may be provided as a safer hedge relative to preventing overflow of the RAM 4-bit word yet minimizing the disc memory access requirements. Further, the limiting circuit

20 645 of the compositor arrangement discussed with reference to Fig 6D may be used to prevent overflows and therefore optimize disc memory access rate requirements. In such an arrangement, incrementing of a 4-bit RAM word may be conditioned upon the 4-bit RAM word not being all ones, indicating a pending overflow

25 condition of a signal peak. If the 4-bit RAM word were all ones, the increment operation may be disabled with circuit 645 (Fig 6D) to preclude overflow. Loss of the increment of information due to limiting with circuit 645 may be relatively inconsequential in accordance with the characteristics of the

30 correlation algorithm as discussed herein. Further, this disabling of incrementing for a maximum word magnitude is analogous to the condition of saturation of an analog signal, wherein saturation of the digital word merely limits the amplitude and may actually have beneficial results for the

35 correlation algorithm such as by saturating large signals.

Prior art systems such as the CAFDRS and GEOCOR
systems utilize a plurality of head-per-track disc memories
to buffer data, wherein a first disc memory is used with a
compositor and a second disc memory is used with a correlator.
5   Such disc memories are expensive and unreliable, inherent in
the rotating mechanical nature of these memories. A preferred
memory arrangement in accordance with the present invention
eliminates the requirement for rotating memories for one-line
field operations. In this preferred embodiment, working
10   memories may be integrated circuit memories or other solid
state memories such as RAM, ROM, and shift register memories.
In accordance with the correlate on-the-fly and the composite-
after-correlation features of the present invention discussed
herein, the prior art requirement for an input compositing disc
15   memory is eliminated and, in accordance with the record on-the-
fly feature of the present invention discussed herein, the
requirement for a large compositor output memory may be eliminated;
where input trace information may be correlated on-the-fly and
composited-after-correlation without the need for an input
20   compositor disc memory and the correlation output
information may be recorded directly with a magnetic tape
recorder without the need for an output disc memory. Therefore,
the above mentioned advantage for eliminating the requirement
for rotating memories accrue to the system of the present
25   invention.

In an embodiment of a geophysical exploration system,
a large off-line memory may be desired for large data processing
operations such as for gathering and stacking operations. In
the prior art, a supervisory computer may be used in conjunction
30   with compositor and correlator disc memories to provide gathering
and stacking operations on an off-line basis such as during the
night time when data acquisition, compositing, and correlation
operations have been discontinued. Therefore, it may be desired

to have a large off-line rotating memory available in the system. In accordance with another feature of the present invention, a disc memory may be provided for off-line operations when the system is not experiencing severe shock and vibration conditions

5   such as during the evening when the truck is stationery and therefore not causing vibration and shock conditions due to movements over rough terrain between shotpoints. In accordance with this feature of the present invention, a well known disc pack memory may be provided without degrading the cost and

10 reliability advantages mentioned above. A disc pack memory may have a high tolerance to vibration when the disc pack is removed from the spindle and the weighed arm is locked into a stowed position. Further, a disc pack memory may provide many times more storage than with conventional disc or drum head-

15 per-track rotating memories and may have a price that is only a small fraction of a price of head-per-track rotating memories. In one embodiment, a disc pack memory may be provided for $7,000 wherein the disc pack memory may have greater storage capacity than a disc head-per-track subsystem manufactured by

20 DDC or by Pacific Micronetics selling for over $50,000.

The memory arrangement of the present invention has been described above for a high access rate RAM and a low access rate disc memory to exemplify a memory feature of the present invention. It is herein intended that the RAM and the

5 disc memory arrangement be merely exemplary of any higher access rate memory used in conjunction with any lower access rate memory to provide advantages such as discussed herein.

Synchronization of signal processing and data processing operations with external signals is well known in the art,

10 wherein such synchronization with received signals may be provided by those of ordinary skill in the art in accordance with the teachings of the present invention. For example, synchronization and triggering circuits are well known in the oscilloscope art such as the circuits used with the Tektronix

15 model 454 oscilloscope. Similarly, special oscilloscope triggers and displays such as the Tektronix digital delay device model DD501 for providing triggering, synchronization, delay, and other such signal processing operations. Still further, arrangements for synchronizing a digital device to an

20 input signal, digitizing the input signal samples, and storing the samples in memory is well known in the signal processing art. For example, Nicolet Instruments Inc of Madison, Wisconsin provides the Nicolet 1090 digital oscilloscope which provides for loading a memory with digitized samples of an input analog

25 signal for display, wherein synchronization to input signals and loading of a memory with input signal samples is well known in the prior art and may be used in conjunction with the teachings of the present invention. In the present invention, signal SYNC shown in Figs 5 and 6 may be generated with well

30 known synchronization circuits such as provided in the above mentioned products. Further, loading of a memory with a

digitized pilot signal may be accomplished with circuitry
such as used in the above mentioned Nicolet digital oscilloscope.
Still further, outputting of digital information to an output
device such as from Z-store 614 (Fig 6A) may be provided with
5   well known arrangements for outputting digital samples from
a digital memory to an output device such as a recorder; where
this outputting capability is provided with said Nicolet digital
oscilloscope and with other well known prior art devices. Yet
further, Z-store 614 may be connected to refresh an oscilloscope
10   such as for displaying of stored information with said Nicolet
digital oscilloscope.

        In view of the above, synchronization, sampling, and
storing of information is well known in the art and displaying
or outputting of stored signal samples is well known in the
15   art, wherein such well known synchronization, inputting, and
outputting circuitry may be used in conjunction with the
correlator arrangements of the present invention such as described
for Fig 6 above.

        Control logic 615 (Fig 6A) may be implemented, by
20   using well known control arrangements such as a counter arrange-
ment which will be discussed with reference to Fig 6B herein-
after and a microprogrammable read only memory (ROM) arrangement
which will be discussed with reference to Fig 6C hereinafter.
These control arrangements may be implemented for the algorithm
25   discussed with reference to Fig 5B or may be implemented for
other algorithms.

        Control arrangement 615 is shown in Fig 6B as being
implemented with a plurality of counters for generating control
signals and address signals for the correlation computation
30   logic. C-counter 616 provides a plurality of clock signals
and control signals for sequencing operations including a C3
control signal to be used as a clock signal for the other
counters. J-counter 617 generates a J-address code for accessing

a pilot signal sample P_J from pilot signal memory 610 wherein J-counter 617 may be loaded with a Jo address, then clocked with the C_3 clock signal to sequence through the pilot signal J-addresses. L-counter 618 counts trace signal samples

5 in response to each sequence of J-counter 617 as will be discussed in detail with reference to Fig 6D or alternately in response to each sequence of K-counter 619 for incrementing L-counter 618. K-counter 619 sequences through the Z-output signal samples Z_K for each trace signal sample T_L until the

10 last trace signal sample T_{Lmax} is detected by L-counter 618, which may be used to disable K-counter 619. For each iteration of K-counter 619, an output signal controls loading of J-counter 617 with the first pilot sample address Jo which may be equal to the count value in the L-counter 618 for the algorithms

15 discussed with reference to Figs 5A and 5B.

Operation of control logic 615 may be initiated with the sync signal loading counters 616-619 with initial conditions and may be terminated after the L-counter 618 has sequenced through all trace sample addresses. Termination may be

20 determined by the output signal from L-counter 618 disabling K-counter 619 and C-counter 616; thereby disabling the C3 clock to J-counter 617, L-counter 618, and K-counter 619. Operation may be resumed in response to another sync command which clears L-counter 618, enabling operation of C-counter 616

25 and initializing the other counters. During continuing operations, J-counter 617 sequences through the J-address to access the appropriate pilot signal samples P_J from P-store 610 for multiplication with the trace signal samples T_L with product logic 611 to generate product signal 612. Simultaneously,

30 K-counter 619 sequences through the K-addresses to access the appropriate output signal samples Z_K from Z-store 614 for updating of the output signal samples with Z-update logic 613. After the last trace signal sample T_{Lmax} has been processed as

determined with L-counter 618; the output of L-counter 618 may be used to disable sequential operation of the correlator until the next sync signal is detected.

An alternate embodiment of control logic arrangement 615 is shown in Fig 6C as being implemented with an ROM for generating control signals and address signals for the correlation computation logic. C-counter 616 sequences through correlator operations, as discussed with reference to Fig 6A above. The $\overline{C3}$ clock signal from C-counter 616 may be used to increment A-counter 640 for addressing ROM 641 with address signals A_o-A_m. ROM 641 may have a plurality of codes stored in each ROM address location including the pilot signal sample address J and the output signal sample address K for accessing of P-store 610 and Z-store 614 (Fig 6A). A disable bit signal D may be used to disable the computation for pilot signal samples outside of the desired range such as shown with blank spaces in Table III above. Further, an output control bit G may be used to designate the end of the correlation operation for disabling A-counter 640. In this ROM control logic embodiment, the sync signal may clear A-counter 640 to the zero-state, thereby permitting A-counter 640 to be incremented through a sequence of addresses for ROM 641. When the last-address is detected as indicated by output signal G from ROM 641, A-counter 640 is locked-up by output signal G to hold this last-address. Clearing of A-counter 640 with the sync signal will change the address from the last-address, indicated by the G-lockup signal, to the first-address which may be a zero-address. For the example shown in Table III, A-counter 640 may be a modulo-209 counter for sequencing through 208-ROM addresses. This can be calculated with reference to Table III, wherein each of 16-trace signal samples may be processed for each of 13-output signal samples for a total of 16X13=208 operations. For an alternate embodiment also shown with reference to Table III,

A-counter 640 may be a modulo-53 counter for sequencing through 52-ROM addresses. This can be calculated with reference to Table III by skipping blank locations, wherein each of 13 output signal samples may be updated with each

5   of four pilot signal samples and trace signal samples for a total of 13X4=52 operations.

A brief description will now be provided for the modulo-209 ROM control logic embodiment. For the first trace signal sample T, the first ROM word may have a J-address of

10   zero for pilot signal sample P_0 and a K-address of zero for output signal sample Z_0. Subsequent ROM words may increment through K-addresses from a K-address of one through a K-address of 15. Disable signal D may be zero-set for disabling updates related to the blanks in the first column of Table III related

15   to the trace signal sample T_0. The 14th word in ROM 641 may have a J-address of one pertaining to the P_1 pilot signal sample in the second column shown in Table III and a K-address of zero pertaining to the Z_0 first output signal sample; followed by a J_0-K_0 word, and followed by 14-words with a disable signal D

20   related to the blank positions of column two in Table III. Similarly, each block of 13-words in ROM 641 may correspond to the pilot signal sample J-addresses and output signal sample K-addresses for each trace signal sample T_L as represented by each column in Table III and with the D-signal from ROM 641 being

25   zero-set for the blank positions shown in Table III and being one-set for the words corresponding to the non-blank positions having pilot signal samples P_0-P_3 shown in Table III.

The last address in ROM 641 ($A=A_{208}$) may have a one-set G-bit being indicative of the last control word pertaining to the

30   last output signal sample Z_{12} of the last trace signal sample T_{15} as shown in Table III. The G-bit signal may be used to disable A-counter 640 and may also be used to disable computation logic as indicative of the end of the computation.

In an alternate arrangement, the signals in ROM 641 may correspond to the parameters set forth in Table IX which has been used to exemplify operation with reference to Fig 5 above.

For the example provided in Table III, the J-address
5 may be a two-bit address for defining pilot signal sample addresses 0-3 and the K-address may be a four-bit address for identifying output signal sample addresses 0-12. Therefore, for the example shown in Table III and the implementation discussed with reference to Fig 6C, an arrangement having
10 208-words of 8-bits may be required; wherein the 8-bit word may include a J-address of two-bits, a K-address of four-bits, a D-signal of one-bit, and a G-signal of one-bit. The cost of this ROM may be determined from a 208-word by 8-bit memory involving 1664-bits which may cost only $0.001 per bit in
15 production quantities for a total ROM cost of approximately $1.66. For larger more complex systems, the size and therefore the cost of ROM 641 may increase exponentially with the size of the problem; wherein the ROM logic discussed with reference to Fig 6C may be more competitive for smaller correlation
20 embodiments and wherein the counter logic discussed with reference to Fig 6B may be more competitive for larger correlation embodiments.

In view of the above, control logic 615 may be mechanized with a counter arrangement or with an ROM arrange-
25 ment to implement the algorithms discussed with reference to Figs 5A and 5B or to implement other correlation algorithms that will now become obvious to those skilled in the art from the teachings of the present invention.

Description Of Fig 6D

The arrangement shown in Fig 6D is consistent with the
real-time computational algorithm discussed with reference to
Figs 5A and 5B above, the mechanization discussed with reference
5 to Figs 6A-6C above, and the example presented in Table III above.
Although the above discussed algorithms, mechanizations, and examples
provide sufficient detail to permit one of ordinary skill in the
art to practice the present invention; extensive detail is provided
in Fig 6D to illustrate a specific logical design, circuit
10 design, and selection of components for practicing the present
invention.

A brief discussion of the arrangements set forth in
Fig 6D will now be provided, followed by a more detailed
description of this arrangement. A sync signal may be used to
15 initiate a correlation operation wherein the sync signal is
input to synchronous one-shot SOS 651 when enabled by AND-gate 638
under control of compositor logic 632. Compositor logic 632 may
count the numbers of correlations to be composited together,
compare the number of composited correlations with a programmed
20 number, and disable subsequent correlation operations after the
proper number of correlations have been composited together by
disabling the sync signal with disable signal 636 and AND-gate 638.
A preferred embodiment of compositor control 632 will be
discussed in detail with reference to Fig 6F hereinafter.
25 Correlation may be initiated with a sync pulse to
AND-gate 638 to be enabled or disabled with signal 636 from
compositor control 632 which controls the number of sync pulses
and therefore the number of correlations that are to be composited
together. An enabled sync pulse to synchronous one-shot SOS
30 may initiate an output pulse OUT to preload or to clear
C-counter 616, J-counter 617, L-counter 618, and K-counter 619
such as by loading zero inputs or other input states or by being
connected to a clear input of these counters for embodiments

having counters with clear inputs. The C-counter 616 may successively iterate through a sequence of control states or clock states C0-C3 to sequence correlator operations. One of the states of C-counter 616 may be used as a clock signal $\overline{C3}$

5   to the other counters 617-619 to clock counters 617-619 at the appropriate time.

J-counter 617 may be initially preloaded with the Jo-parameter from L-counter 618 and controlled to count down for selecting the appropriate pilot signal sample P_J from P-ROM 625.

10   For each countdown of J-counter 617 through the zero-state, L-counter 618 may be incremented as being indicative of completion of a correlation operation for a particular trace signal sample T_L for being advanced to the address of the next sample T_{L+1}. In one embodiment, the L-address from L-counter 618 may be equal

15   to the Jo-parameter as discussed with reference to Table III and Figs 5A and 5B above, where outputs QA, etc of L-counter 618 may be connected to preload J-counter 617 at the appropriate time. K-counter 619 may be controlled to sequence through output signal samples Z_K for each trace signal sample T_L, where output signal

20   address K of K-counter 619 may be used to address Z-RAM 614 to select the appropriate output sample Z_K in sequence for updating with the correlation computation.

After all output signal samples Z_K have been updated for a particular trace signal sample T_L, the address of the last

25   K-counter sample may be detected as the Km-signal from K-counter 619 which may be used to control preloading of J-counter 617 with the Jo-address from L-counter 618 for the next trace sample iteration and preloading of K-counter 619 with an initial address such as a zero address for the start of the next update iteration for

30   output signal samples Z_K. When L-counter 618 has been incremented to the number of the last trace signal sample Lm, output signal Lm of L-counter 618 may be used to identify completion of a correlation computation with compositor control 632 when selected with composite control switch 650.

-153-

A trace signal sample T_L may be accessed in real-time as it becomes available for processing with squaring amplifier 623 and latching flip-flop 624 to provide a latched trace signal sample T_L to exclusive-OR circuit 626. Pilot signal P_J may be

5 accessed from P-ROM 625 under control of the J-address from J-counter 617 to be multiplied with the trace signal sample T_L from flip-flop 624 for a single-bit multiplication operation with exclusive-OR circuit 626 for generating an output product signal to gate 627. Decoder 628 may be used to identify redundant

10 or unnecessary computations, exemplified by the blank spaces in Table III, and decoder 628 may be used to disable the computation with disable signal 652 to gate 627. Alternately, decoder 628 may be used to reduce the number of computations so that the mechanization shown in Fig 6D does not sequence through such

15 unnecessary computations, as will be discussed in more detail hereinafter.

Disable signal 652 from decoder 628 detects unnecessary computations by monitoring the J-address parameter of J-counter 617 for disabling the product signal from gate 626 with gate 627 to

20 disable updating of the output sample Z_K.

Output signal samples Z_K are accessed from Z-RAM 614 with the output signals K from K-counter 619. Accessed output samples Z_K may be loaded into Z-counter 613 for updating in response to a single-bit product signal from gates 626 and 627.

25 The single-bit product signal either enables or disables incrementing of Z-counter 613 for an incremental correlation computation, wherein output signal samples Z_K stored in Z-RAM 614 are sequentially loaded into Z-counter 613 for updating and then stored in Z-RAM 614 after updating. Output signal samples Z_K

30 stored in Z-RAM 614 may be samples from a single correlation computation or may be composited and correlated information. Start of a new compositing operation may be preceeded by clearing output signal samples Z_K stored in Z-RAM 614 with NAND-gates 630 under control of the $\overline{CLR}$ signal from clear switch CLR, where

35 prior output signal samples stored in Z-RAM 614 may be cleared to begin compositing of new output signal samples.

An adaptive composite control may be implemented with detector gate 643 for generating adaptive output signal 642 to clock compositor control 632 when selected with switch 650. Detector gate 643 detects when an output signal sample Z_K exceeds

5   a selected magnitude Z_{KS} and generates an output signal 642 to decrement Q-counter 635 in compositor control 632 in response thereto.

A limiter control may be implemented with detector gate 645 for generating limit control signal 644 to disable

10   updating of the output signal sample Z_K in Z-counter 613 if the magnitude of that output signal sample Z_K is equal to a selected limitor magnitude Z_{KL}. This limitor control prevents output signal samples Z_K from being updated beyond a maximum magnitude and therefore from overflowing.

A detailed description of the arrangement shown in
Fig 6D will now be provided.

External control arrangements used to control the
correlator shown in Fig 6D includes the composite control and
5 the clear control. The sync signal initiates a correlation
operation if enabled by composite control signal 636 from composite
control 632. If Z-RAM 614 had previously been cleared with the
clear signal $\overline{CLR}$ from the clear switch CLR, the sync signal
initiates a correlation operation without compositing.
10 If Z-RAM 614 had not been cleared with the
clear signal $\overline{CLR}$ from the clear switch CLR, the sync signal may
initiate another correlation for compositing with output samples
of a prior correlation that are stored in Z-RAM 614. Composite
control 632 enables the sync signal with enable signal 636 to
15 AND-gate 638.

As discussed above, the Z_K-samples stored in Z-RAM 614
are incrementally updated in response to trace signal samples T_L,
wherein the computational logic for updating the Z_K-samples does
not distinguish between updating in response to trace samples
20 from the same trace signal or from sequential trace signals.
Control logic 615 keeps track of updating in response to a single
trace signal and compositor control 632 keeps track of the number
of sequential correlated trace signals that are to be composited
together. Therefore, output signal samples Z_K in Z-RAM 614 are
25 enhanced in relation to the number of updates for a trace signal
and in relation to the number of trace signals without specific
distinction as to whether the updates are being obtained from a
single long trace signal or from a plurality of short trace signals.

Synchronous one-shot 651 initiates a correlation
30 computation in response to either an enabled sync pulse for
generation of a new correlation computation or in response to
clear signal $\overline{CLR}$ for clearing output samples stored in Z-RAM 614.
Output signals OUT and $\overline{OUT}$ from synchronous one-shot 651 preload

-156-

C-counter 616, J-counter 617, L-counter 618, and K-counter 619.
For simplicity of discussion, counters 613 and 616-619 will be
shown as synchronous up-down-counters with asynchronous load
capabilities such as the S/N 74190 and the S/N 74191 counters.

5   Other counters may be used such as the S/N 74163 up-counter.
The states that are preloaded into counters 616-619 are determined
by the input lines A, etc. The clear inputs CR to counters 616,
618, and 619 are grounded to zero-set counters 616 and 617 and to
zero-set the most-significant-bits of counter 619. The +V signal

10 input to the least-significant-bit of counter 619 preloads a
least significant one-bit into counter 619. The Jo-input
signals to J-counter 617 from the L-output signals of L-counter 618
are used to preload the first pilot signal sample address Jo
into J-counter 617. Alternately, if the counters have a clear

15 input such as with the S/N 74163 counters, then the counters may
be cleared with the clear input. J-counter 617 is cleared by
preloading zeros wherein the load signal to the load input LD
of J-counter 617 is responsive to output signal OUT from one-shot
651 through NOR-gate 621 to preload J-counter 617 with the state

20 of L-counter 618. Because output signal $\overline{\text{OUT}}$ of one-shot 651
provides for clearing L-counter 618 by loading zero-states as
discussed above, loading of the zero-set states of L-counter 618
into J-counter 617 results in clearing J-counter 617. The S/N 74190
and S/N 74191 type counters are loaded by placing a zero-state

25 signal on load input LD. Therefore, output signal $\overline{\text{OUT}}$ from
one-shot 651 loads the zero-state condition into counters 616
and 618 and output signal OUT from one-shot 651 is inverted with
NOR-gate 621 to provide an inverted or zero-state load signal LD
to counters 617 and 619.

30   C-counter 616 is shown in an up-count mode, where
down-up control signal DU is shown grounded for commanding an
up-count. C-counter 616 is initially cleared by loading a zero-
state as a ground condition CR on input lines A, etc under control

-157-

of inverted load signal $\overline{OUT}$ to load input LD to synchronize
C-counter 616 with the sync signal to AND-gate 638. C-counter 616
may be continuously enabled to count with ground signal on
enable input G.   External clock signal C is used to clock

5   C-counter 616 to sequence through a group of control states which
may be four-states C0-C3 or may be more than four-states. For
a four-state C-counter embodiment, a two-bit C-counter 616 may be
used such as by monitoring the two least-significant-bits QA
and QB from C-counter 616 with decoder 622. Decoder 622 may

10   generate decoded output signals $\overline{C0}$-$\overline{C3}$ in response to the two
least-significant-bits QA and QB output from C-counter 616 or
may generate additional output states in response to more-
significant-bits of C-counter 616. Decoder 622 may be a well known
integrated circuit decoder such as the S/N 7442A decoder which

15   may be connected as a two-bit decoder by grounding the two
most-significant-bit inputs C and D into decoder 622 and
connecting the QA and QB signals from C-counter 616 to the two
least-significant-bit inputs A and B respectively of decoder 622.
Output signals from decoder 622 may be provided in

20   complemented or uncomplemented form, wherein the outputs of many
well known decoders may be in complemented form and may be provided
in uncomplemented form by processing with well known inverters such
as S/N 7404 inverter circuits.

        Operation of C-counter 616 and decoder 622 may provide

25   a sequence of control signals starting with the $\overline{C0}$ control signal
and sequencing through the $\overline{C3}$ control signal or may provide
other sequences of control signals as C-counter 616 is incremented
through a binary count, wherein each binary count state may be
decoded with decoder 622. For the mechanization shown in Fig 6D,

30   it will be assumed that the first output signal $\overline{C0}$ is provided to
Z-counter 613 to command loading of Z-counter 613, followed by
the next output signal $\overline{C1}$ provided to clock input CK of Z-counter 613
to clock Z-counter 613 for updating output signal sample Z_K stored

therein in response to the update signal from gates 626 and 627, followed by the next output signal $\overline{C2}$ provided to Z-RAM 614 for writing the $\overline{Z_K}$ signal from Z-counter 613 into Z-RAM 614, and followed by the next output signal $\overline{C3}$ provided to clock input CK of

5 counters 617-619 to clock counters 617-619 for the next output sample Z_K update operation. Well known RAM circuits such as Z-RAM 614 may require only a single mode control signal such as a read or a write signal, where the C2-signal going to the one-state may command a write-mode and the $\overline{C2}$-signal going to the zero-state

10 may command a read-mode such as with the S/N 74200 RAM integrated circuit. Alternately, some memories may require separate read and write signals, where the $\overline{C2}$ control signal may be used as a write command signal W and an additional $\overline{CN}$ control signal may be used as a read command signal R as shown for Z-RAM 614. Therefore,

15 sequencing through the $\overline{C0}$-$\overline{C3}$ control states may control a sequence of operations of (1) loading Z-counter 613 from Z-RAM 614 under control of control signal $\overline{C0}$; (2) updating the sample loaded into Z-counter 613 under control of clock control signal $\overline{C1}$; (3) storing the contents of Z-counter 613 into Z-RAM 614

20 under control of write control signal $\overline{C2}$; and (4) updating J-counter 617, L-counter 618, and K-counter 619 by clocking with control signal $\overline{C3}$ to advance to the next address state for addressing the next pilot signal sample P_J and the next output signal sample Z_K for the next set of sequential control operations.

25   The sequence of operations of loading output signal sample Z_K into Z-counter 613; updating output signal sample Z_K in Z-counter 613; storing updated output sample Z_K in Z-RAM 614; and updating the pilot signal and output signal memory addresses with J-counter 617 and K-counter 619 respectively provides a

30 preferred sequence of operations for a preferred embodiment shown in Fig 6D. As discussed above, use of the S/N 74200 RAM makes the read operation implicit in the absence of the write command $\overline{C2}$ wherein accessing of Z-RAM 614 may be achieved automatically by the next update sample address from K-counter 619 in the absence

35 of the write control signal $\overline{C2}$.

Output signals $\overline{C0}$-$\overline{C3}$ from decoder 622 may be used for clock signals and may have transitionary conditions due to the changes of more than one flip-flop at a time in C-counter 616 thereby causing transitionary states to appear on output

5 signals $\overline{C0}$-$\overline{CN}$ from decoder 622. Therefore, decoder 622 may be gated with clock signal C to provide a time delay for transitionary conditions to stablize prior to enabling output signals $\overline{C0}$-$\overline{CN}$ from decoder 622. In an embodiment where decoder 622 is implemented with an S/N 7442A circuit; least significant output signals QA

10 and QB of C-counter 616 may be connected to the A and B least significant input terminals of decoder 622 and clock signal C may be connected to the most significant input terminal of decoder 622. In this arrangement, clock signal C may clock C-counter 616 with a positive transition to the one-state and may

15 enable signals $\overline{C1}$-$\overline{CN}$ when clock signal C makes a negative transition to a zero-state which may be about one-half clock period after C-counter 616 has changed state. Therefore, the gating of decoder 622 with clock signal C precludes race conditions which could be caused by transitions of C-counter 616.

20   J-counter 617 may be connected as a down-counter by connecting the down-up signal input DU to a positive voltage. J-counter 617 may be loaded with the Jo-parameter from L-counter 618, initially under control of the sync pulse generated output signal OUT from one-shot 651 and subsequently from the last address Km

25 of K-counter 619; both signals being NORed together with NOR-gate 621. J-counter 617 is clocked with clock signal $\overline{C3}$ from decoder 622 to decrement through the J-address parameters starting with the Jo-address to sequentially access pilot signal samples P_J from P-ROM 625. Output signal lines QA, etc from J-counter 617

30 containing the J-address are communicated to P-ROM 625 as the P-ROM address. Similarly, output lines QA, etc from L-counter 618 may be communicated to inputs A, etc of J-counter 617 for preloading the Jo first pilot signal sample address which in a preferred

embodiment may be the same as the contents of L-counter 618.
J-counter 617 is permitted to count-down from the preloaded
address Jo through zero, where a zero-address may generate an
output signal such as from min-max output MM or ripple clock

5   output RC to enable input G of L-counter 618. These min-max
or ripple clock outputs may be used to increment L-counter 618
as indicative of completion of the correlation operation for the
last prior trace signal sample, to identify the next trace signal
sample to be processed, and to provide the next Jo signal to

10   J-counter 617. J-counter 617 and L-counter 618 are shown
connected with ripple clock output RC of J-counter 617 being input
to enable input G of L-counter 618 for incrementing L-counter 618
with the zero-state of J-counter 617. J-counter 617 may be
disabled by min-max output signal Lm of L-counter 618 connected to

15   enable input G of J-counter 617 as shown in Fig 6D. As an
alternate, J-counter 617 may be disabled by min-max output
signal Jm of J-counter 617 connected to enable input G of
J-counter 617 (not shown). As discussed in detail herein, decoder 62£
disables updating of output signal samples Z_K in response to

20   negative J-numbers thereby making such negative J-numbers "don't
care" numbers. J-counter 617 may count through a zero-state to a
least significant negative-state which is an all one-state.
Therefore, J-counter 617 may generate two ripple count RC output
pulses for the all zero-state and the all one-state to L-counter 618,

25   thereby generating two clock pulses for each countdown operation
of J-counter 617. This double pulse condition may be compensated
for with a divide-by-two circuit in L-counter 618, implemented
with the first counter stage identified with a QA output signal,
wherein the least-significant-bit after the divide-by-two A-bit

30   would be the B-bit related to the QB output from L-counter 618 as
shown in Fig 6D. As an alternate, a divide-by-two toggle flip-
flop (not shown) may be connected between the RC-output of
J-counter 617 and the G-input of L-counter 618. Other alternate
arrangements may be implemented in consideration of this condition.

L-counter 618 may be connected as an up-counter by connecting input control signal DU to ground to command an up-count operation. L-counter 618 is initially cleared by loading zeros in response to output signal $\overline{OUT}$ from one-shot 651

5   and then permitted to count outputs from J-counter 617 to enable input G as being indicative of completion of processing of another trace signal sample T_L. Therefore, L-counter 618 counts trace signal samples T_L wherein the completion of processing of a trace signal sample is identified by the signal to enable input G

10 enabling the $\overline{C3}$ clock to increment L-counter 618. The output of L-counter 618 shown as output signals QB, etc may be used as the Jo input to J-counter 617. Further, the min-max output Lm of L-counter 618 may be used to disable J-counter 617 by applying a one-state signal to enable input G of J-counter 617 to disable

15 counter operation in response to the Lm signal, which is indicative of completion of processing of a last trace sample T_{Lm} for a particular correlation.

K-counter 619 may be initially preloaded in response to output signal OUT from one-shot 651 by loading a zero-state or an

20 LSB one-state. K-counter 619 is then permitted to sequence through a group of output signal sample addresses K for each trace signal sample T_L under control of clock signal $\overline{C3}$. K-counter 619 may be connected as an up-counter as controlled by down-up control signal DU being connected to ground. When K-counter 619 increments

25 to a maximum address, the maximum output signal Km is generated as indicative of completion of processing of all output signal samples Z_K corresponding to a particular trace signal sample T_L. Maximum output signal Km may be used to initiate processing for a new trace signal sample T_L by clocking flip-flop 624 to sample the

30 trace input sample T_L and by generating a load command to J-counter 617 and K-counter 619 through flip-flop 639 and NOR-gate 621 to preload the Jo address from L-counter 618 into J-counter 617 and to preload a start address into K-counter 619

to initiate processing of a next trace signal sample T_L.
Correlation of a new trace signal is initiated by loading
counters 616-619 in response to an output signal OUT from
one-shot SOS as being indicative of the start of a new trace
5 signal for correlation and for synchronizing counters 616-619
with the new trace signal.

It is desired that the Km signal be generated in response
to the largest K-address but operation of K-counter 619, implemented
with an S/N 74191 integrated circuit, will also generate the Km-
10 output signal in response to an all zero-state. Generation of
the min output in response to an all zero-state may be pre-empted
by preloading K-counter 619 to a non-zero state. Therefore,
K-counter 619 may be preloaded to an LSB or unity-state by connecting
the A-input to a positive voltage and connecting the B-input and
15 other more significant inputs to ground. As discussed herein, the
max-min output of K-counter 619 may be used to preload J-counter 617
and K-counter 618 for subsequent iterations. For this embodiment,
the output signal sample addresses K may be stored in locations
ranging from Z-RAM address K=1 to Z-RAM address K=Km such as by
20 having an address that is one least-significant-bit greater than
the subscript number of the address parameter K. For example,
numbering output sample address K to range from 1 through 13 instead
of from 0 through 12 as shown in Table III would be consistent
with the mechanization of K-counter 619 shown in Fig 6D.

25 A one-bit time delay may be provided for the NXT signal
with flip-flop 639 to reduce a potential race condition between
clocking of L-counter 618 in response to ripple clock output RC
from J-counter 617 and the related loading of J-counter 617 and
K-counter 619 in response to the NXT signal from NOR-gate 621.
30 Feedback signal Km to NOR-gate 621, indicative of completion of
output sample updates in response to a particular trace signal
sample, may be input to D flip-flop 639 under control of clock
signal C and may be output to NOR-gate 621 one C-clock pulse period

thereafter. The clock signal to flip-flop 639 may be free running input clock C as shown, or may be one of the control clock signals $\overline{C0}$-$\overline{C3}$, or may be any of these control clocks inverted to provide the proper phase relationships between the clocking of

5 counters 617-619 and loading of counters 617 and 619 under control of the NXT signal.

The arrangement shown in Fig 6D may provide a trace signal T_L from an external source such as geophone transducer and may provide a pilot signal P_J from P-ROM 625. Input trace signal

10 sample T_L may be processed with squaring amplifier 623 such as a μA710 comparitor for generating a single-bit squarewave output in response to an analog input signal. Alternately, amplifier 623 may be a Schmidt trigger such as an S/N 7414 integrated circuit or other type of input circuit. An input flip-flop 624 may be

15 used to sample the input signal from squaring amplifier 623 so that the trace signal to gate 626 is held constant for a particular trace sample period. In an alternate embodiment, the output signal of squaring amplifier 623 may be provided directly to gate 626, wherein a trace signal that is changing during the computational

20 period may be preferred to an arrangement where a device such as flip-flop 624 samples and stores a trace signal for the trace sample period.

P-ROM 625 may be accessed with the J-address signals from J-counter 617 to define sequential samples P_J of the pilot signal

25 to be processed for each trace signal sample T_L. P-ROM 625 may be an S/N 74187 ROM circuit or other well known ROM circuit. Memory enable inputs ME may be connected to ground to select the ROM or may be controlled with J-address signals from J-counter 617 for cascading ROM circuits, as described in The

30 TTL Data Book referenced hereinafter on pages 410-416 therein. Address inputs A, etc may be excited with the J-address from J-counter 617 for selecting each pilot signal sample P_J in sequence. An S/N 74187 ROM circuit may be used to implement ROM 625 having

256-words by 4-bits. Output words Y1-Y4 may be used as a single parallel output word, or may be increased in length by paralleling ROM circuits, or for the arrangement illustrated in Fig 6D may provide a single-bit signal from one of the signal outputs shown

5   as the Y1 output signal for input to gate 626. Similarly, Y2 and Y3 output signals may provide pilot signal samples for other correlator channels when separate pilot signals for each of a plurality of correlator channels is desired, as discussed in detail hereinafter with reference to Fig 6E.

10   Output signal Y4 from P-ROM 625 may be used as a disable signal 652 for J-addresses less than zero or greater than Jmax, shown as blank locations in Table III. Alternately, disable signal 652 may be generated with decoder logic to detect negative J-addresses from J-counter 617 and to detect J-addresses greater

15   than Jmax from J-counter 617 for disabling gate 627 with disable signal 652. Decoder 628 may be implemented as a well known decoder such as using combinational logic for generating an output signal 652 in response to J-addresses, wherein J-addresses between a range of Jo and Jmax may enable gate 627 and J-addresses outside

20   of that range may disable gate 627 with disable signal 652. Decoder 628 may be defined for the example set forth in Table III, wherein the range of acceptable J-addresses is from J=0 to J=3. Assuming that J-counter 617 is a seven-bit counter, then a J-address with the five MSBs being zero-states defines acceptable

25   J-addresses and with the five MSBs having at least a single one-state defines unacceptable J-addresses outside the range of J=0 to J=3. For this example, decoder 628 may be a NOR-gate such as an S/N 74260 five-input NOR-gate for NORing together the five-MSBs of the J-address. Consistent well known NOR-gate operation, output

30   signal 652 from NOR-gate decoder 628 is in the zero-state if one or more of the five MSBs of the J-address is in the one-state for disabling NAND-gate 627 and output signal 652 from NOR-gate decoder 628 is in the one-state if all of the five MSBs of the J-address are in the zero-state for enabling NAND-gate 627.

Exclusive-OR circuit 626 compares a trace signal sample T_L with a pilot signal sample P_J to generate an output signal related to a comparison therebetween. The output signal from gate 626 will be in the one-state if both input signals are in the

5   one-state or if both input signals are in the zero-state indicating a comparison condition and the output signal of gate 626 will be in the zero-state if one of the input signals is in the one-state and the other of the input signals is in the zero-state indicating a non-comparison condition.

10   The output signal of an exclusive-OR gate is related to a non-comparison condition, where the output signal is in the one-state when the input signals are in different states (the one-state and the zero-state) and where the output signal is in the zero-state when the input signals are in the same states (the

15   one-states or the zero-states). For convenience of description, a complement exclusive-OR gate 626 is shown in Fig 6D for generating a product signal, where the output signal is in the one-state when the input signals are in the same state and where the output signal is in the zero-state when the input signals are in different

20   states. The complement exclusive-OR symbol 626 is shown in Fig 6D, wherein a small circle is shown on the output as being indicative of a inversion of the exclusive-OR signal consistant with well known prior art symbology. A complement exclusive-OR gate is known as a coincidence gate, wherein these gates are

25   discussed in detail in the textbook by Chu referenced hereinafter at pages 109-115 therein. These gates may be synthesized with conventional gate logic as shown in Chu or may be implemented with an S/N 7486 exclusive-OR gate (described in The TTL Data Book on pages 209-213 therein) followed by an S/N 7404 inverter gate

30   for a complement exclusive-OR circuit mechanization. NAND-gate 627

may be used to control updating of the Z_K sample with Z-counter 613 under control of the output signal from gate 626 when enabled with signals 644 and 652. Disable signal 652 enables updating for a range of J-addresses between J=0 and J=Jm and disables updating for

5 J-addresses outside of this range. Gate 627 is shown as a NAND-gate to invert the enabled product signal from gate 626 to compensate for the complement G-input logic of Z-counter 613 shown by the small circle on the G-input to Z-counter 613. Enabled update signal from gate 626 may be used to control Z-counter 613 for updating an

10 output signal sample Z_K. Z-counter 613 may be connected for an up-count mode by connecting the down-up mode control DU to ground; wherein a non-comparison or zero-state output signal from gate 626 will be inverted with NAND-gate 627 to disable incrementing of Z-counter 613 and a comparison or one-state output signal from

15 gate 627 will be inverted with NAND-gate 627 to enable incrementing of Z-counter 613 by controlling enable input G. In an alternate embodiment, Z-counter 613 may be connected for a down-count mode by connecting the down-up mode control DU to a positive voltage as shown for J-counter 617; wherein a non-comparison or zero-state

20 of the output signal from gate 626 will disable decrementing of Z-counter 613 and a comparison or one-state of the output signal from gate 626 will enable decrementing of Z-counter 613 by controlling enable input G. In still another embodiment, enable input G of Z-counter 613 may be connected to ground for continuously

enabling Z-counter 613 and the output of gate 627 may be connected
to down-up input control DU for incrementing in response to a
one-state from gate 626 and for decrementing in response to a
zero-state from gate 626. In yet another embodiment an AND-gate

5   may be used in place of NAND-gate 627 for incrementing in response
to a zero-state from gate 626 and for decrementing in response to
a one-state from gate 626. Therefore, various embodiments permit
incrementing and not incrementing, decrementing and not decrementing,
or incrementing and decrementing Z-counter 613 in response to

10   comparison between a trace signal sample T_L and a pilot signal
sample P_J to gate 626.

      Z-counter 613 may be loaded with output signal samples Z_K
from Z-ROM 614 for updating each sample. Updated output signal
samples Z_K from Z-counter 613 may be stored back into Z-ROM 614

15   after updating. The $\overline{CO}$ control signal from decoder 622 controls
loading of Z-counter 613 with output signal sample Z_K addressed by
output address K of K-counter. Output signal sample Z_K is
available on output lines Z_K of Z-RAM 614 at the $\overline{CO}$ control signal
time because the $\overline{C2}$ control signal is in the one-state at the $\overline{CO}$

20   control signal time, thereby causing the addressed Z-RAM parameter
to be available to Z-counter 613 at the $\overline{CO}$ time. The next control
signal $\overline{C1}$ clocks Z-counter 613 to update the output signal sample Z_K
in response to the output of gate 626, making the updated output
signal sample Z_K available to Z-ROM 614 as the $\overline{Z_K}$ signal from

25   Z-counter 613 for storing under control of write control signal $\overline{C2}$
following update control signal $\overline{C1}$ to Z-counter 613. Sequential
loading, updating and storing operations controlled by sequential
control signals $\overline{CO}$, $\overline{C1}$, and $\overline{C2}$ and the subsequent updating of the
K-address parameter by clocking K-counter 619 with the $\overline{C3}$ clock

30   signal provides a sequence of repetitive operations for accessing,
updating, storing, accessing, updating, storing, etc for Z-RAM 614
and Z-counter 613.

Z-counter 613 is loaded with output signal sample Z_K from Z-RAM 614 input to the A, etc inputs of Z-counter 613 for loading thereof. Output signals QA, etc from Z-counter 613 are recirculated to Z-RAM 614 through NAND-gates 630 as inverted

5 output signal samples $Z_{\overline{K}}$ for storing in Z-RAM 614 under control of read/write mode control signal $\overline{C2}$ after updating of the Z_K sample with Z-counter 613 under control of update control clock signal $\overline{C1}$. Clear enable signal $\overline{CLR}$ is provided to NAND-gates 630 in response to a clear command from clear switch CLR, wherein output signal

10 samples Z_K to Z-RAM 614 are recirculated in response to a one-state of clear signal $\overline{CLR}$ and are not recirculated in response to a zero-state of clear signal $\overline{CLR}$ which forces all Z_K inputs to Z-RAM 614 to the one-state as indicative of a zero-set or cleared complement number.

15 Read and write control for Z-RAM 614 is provided with write control clock signal $\overline{C2}$ to OR-gate 629 for controlling write input W for Z-RAM 614. Write clock $\overline{C2}$ for Z-RAM 614 is enabled with $\overline{COM}$ signal 636, indicative of the total number of composites not being completed, and with output signal Lm from

20 L-counter 618, indicative of a correlation operation being in process.

Z-RAM 614 may be accessed with a K-address from K-counter 619 to Z-RAM inputs A, etc with the memory enable signal ME in the zero-state for selecting Z-RAM 614. Alternately,

25 cascading of RAM circuits may use the ME signal input as an address input as described in The TTL Data Book on pages 463-465 for an S/N 74200 RAM circuit. Similarly, control signal $\overline{C2}$ may select writing of the Z_K-parameter into Z-RAM 614 when the C2 write enable signal is in the zero-state shown by the $\overline{C2}$

30 designation and may provide for outputting stored Z_K-samples in a read mode when the $\overline{C2}$ signal is in the one-state. In alternate memory embodiments, an RAM may be implemented with a write clock to write input line W and a read clock to read input line R such as shown for write clock $\overline{C2}$ and read clock $\overline{CN}$.

Z-RAM 614 may be a single-bit by 256-word S/N 74200
RAM circuit wherein four S/N 74200 circuits may be connected in
parallel for a four-bit Z_K word used with a single four-bit
Z-counter circuit 613, or eight-RAM circuits S/N 74200 may be
5   connected in parallel for an eight-bit Z_K word used with a pair of
cascaded four-bit Z-counter circuits 613 to implement an eight-bit
Z-counter, or larger numbers of Z-RAM circuits may be connected
in parallel as discussed in The TTL Data Book on pages 463-465
therein and larger numbers of counter circuits may be cascaded as
10   discussed in The TTL Data Book on pages 417-436 therein.

An adaptive compositing and correlating arrangement will now be discussed.

As a plurality of correlated signals are composited together, the output signal samples related to correlation peaks

5   increase in amplitude at a significantly greater rate than the noise signal peaks and other undesirable signal components. The number of composites to provide a desired quality output signal may be related to the amount of noise, the signal-to-noise ratio, and the degree of correlation between signals. For the

10   conditions of good correlation and low noise, the correlation signal peaks will build-up rapidly for a relatively few composites. For the conditions of poor correlation and high noise, the correlation signal peaks will build up slowly even for a larger number of composites. Similarly, the signal-to-noise ratio may be improved

15   as a function of the number of samples correlated and composited together, where this function may be a square-root function of the number of correlation and composite summations for a particular output sample. For a low signal-to-noise ratio or a high noise condition, a larger number of correlation and composite operations

20   may be required to compensate for the poor signal-to-noise ratio. For a high signal-to-noise ratio or a low noise condition, a smaller number of correlation and composite operations may be required to enhance the signal-to-noise ratio to a desired level.

A figure-of-merit indicative of the quality of output

25   signal samples may be related to the amplitude of the output signal sample peaks. If correlation and compositing were permitted to continue until the correlated signal sample peaks are built-up to a large magnitude, then a good quality output signal may be provided. One approach would be to detect when an output signal

30   sample exceeds a prescribed amplitude as indicative of a good quality correlated output signal. Because of the possibility of noise bursts occasionally providing an erroneous peak, it may be desired to obtain a plurality of output signal samples having

large magnitudes as indicative of a good quality correlated output
signal. An adaptive correlation arrangement will now be discussed
using compositor control 632 to adaptively control compositor
operations until a good quality correlated output signal is

5 obtained, as indicated by obtaining a prescribed number of correlated
output signal samples that have exceeded a prescribed magnitude as
being indicative of a good quality correlated output signal.

An embodiment will now be discussed with reference to
Fig 6D for an adaptive compositor control based upon a programmable

10 quantity of correlated output signal samples exceeding a selected
sample magnitude. In one embodiment, the selected signal
magnitude may be programmable such as with a thumbwheel switch
arrangement as discussed for the programmable compositor
control 632 with reference to Fig 6F hereinafter. Compositor

15 control 632 may be a programmable compositor control as discussed
with reference to Fig 6F hereinafter and may be used to generate
output signal COM 636 for enabling sync pulse to AND-gate 630 under
control of input signal Lm from L-counter 618 as discussed above.
In an alternate embodiment, an adaptive arrangement may be

20 provided by controlling compositor control 632 with adaptive
control signal 642 from a detector such as NAND-gate 643.
NAND-gate 643 may monitor output signal samples Z_K associated with
Z-counter 613 and Z-RAM 614 to detect when an output signal
sample Z_K has been updated to a predetermined or selected magnitude

25 Z_{KS}. For convenience of illustration, NAND-gate 643 is shown
monitoring signal lines Z_K as being indicative of a selected
magnitude output signal sample Z_{KS}. Inverters may be provided in
sample lines Z_K such as inverter 646 to define the selected
magnitude Z_{KS} of signals Z_K detected with NAND-gate 643. When

30 NAND-gate 643 detects the selected magnitude Z_{KS} of signal Z_K,
output signal 642 goes low for that sample time; thereby clocking
counter 635 in composite control 632. Composite control 632 may
receive a clock signal CK from gate 643 as signal 642 for an
adaptive control embodiment or may receive a clock signal from

35 L-counter 618 output signal Lm, which was described above for a
non-adaptive embodiment, as selected by compositor select switch 650.

-172-

As output samples Z_K are detected having amplitudes equal to the selected magnitude Z_{KS}, output signal 642 from NAND-gate 643 decrements Q-counter 635 from the programmed-state toward the zero-state. After the programmed quantity of selected

5 magnitude signals are detected with NAND-gate 643, Q-counter 635 is decremented to zero by a programmed quantity of selected magnitude samples and generates output signal 636 to disable further compositing operations; where the adaptive condition of a programmed quantity of output signal samples having achieved a

10 selected amplitude Z_{KS} is indicative of a desired output signal quality.

As discussed herein, one figure-of-merit or determination of output signal quality is based upon the quantity of output signal samples that exceed a selected sample magnitude Z_{KS}. An

15 algorithm has been selected wherein Q-counter 635 is decremented in response to an output signal sample Z_K reaching a selected magnitude Z_{KS}, wherein output signal samples that have exceeded the selected magnitude are not counted because they have a different code than the selected magnitude code detected with NAND-

20 gate 643; wherein codes larger than the selected magnitude and codes smaller than the selected magnitude are not detected by NAND-gate 643. Therefore, only as an output signal sample Z_K traverses through the selected magnitude Z_{KS} does NAND-gate 643 generate output signal 642 to decrement Q-counter 635. One

25 contingency exists wherein an output signal sample may be incremented to a selected signal magnitude Z_{KS} but several update iterations may pass without that output signal sample being incremented past the selected signal magnitude Z_{KS}. Therefore, in the adaptive compositing embodiment discussed with reference to Fig 6D, an

30 output signal sample remaining at the selected output signal selected magnitude Z_{KS} may improperly continue to decrement Q-counter 635. It is desired that an output signal sample be permitted to decrement Q-counter 635 only once as the output

-173-

signal sample magnitude Z_K traverses the selected signal
magnitude Z_{KS}. Therefore, the selected signal magnitude Z_{KS}
is gated with update signal UPD from gate 627 through an inverter
and with update control signal $\overline{C1}$ through an inverter. Therefore,

5 the selected signal magnitude Z_{KS} is gated to increment Q-counter 635
only when that particular output signal Z_K is incremented past
the selected signal magnitude Z_{KS} as being indicative of the
particular output signal sample Z_K being at the selected
magnitude Z_{KS}. This is controlled by being gated with update

10 command signal UPD which is indicative of a pending update past the
selected signal magnitude and further gated with control signal $\overline{C1}$
which is also used to clock Z-counter 613 to increment the
particular output signal sample Z_K past the selected output signal
sample magnitude Z_{KS}. Therefore, NAND-gate 643 generates output

15 signal 642 to decrement Q-counter 635 only when an output signal
sample Z_K is at the selected magnitude Z_{KS} and is being incremented
to the next magnitude therefrom.

Output signal COM 636 from compositor control 632 may
be used to excite an announciator such as a lamp or a buzzer

20 to alert an operator to the completion of compositing condition
and may be used as an input to an external device such as a
supervisory computer to alert the external device to the completion
of compositing condition. This condition may be used to initiate
recording of correlated and composited output signal samples Z_K

25 in Z-RAM 614 or may be used to control other devices and operations.

In view of the above, a plurality of pulses are generated
as signal 642 with gate 643 wherein each output pulse 642 may be
related to a different output signal sample Z_K traversing selected
output signal sample magnitude Z_{KS} and wherein the quantity of

30 samples exceeding the selected signal magnitude Z_{KS} may be indicative
of the quality of the output sample information.

An overflow limiting arrangement will now be discussed.

An arrangement has been discussed above for providing a number of composites-after-correlation to build-up output signal sample peaks in an adaptive manner to a large value. It is possible that a correlated output signal sample may build up to a maximum value and then be incremented beyond the maximum value to an overflow condition. As is well known in the art, when counter arrangements such as Z-counter 613 are incremented past the maximum value of an all one-state, the counter will overflow by making a transition to the minimum value of an all zero-state; consistent with the well known modulo counter logic which implies a loss of overflow information beyond the maximum value. In a correlation operation, amplitude of a sample provides a figure-of-merit of the various correlation comparisons, wherein a large magnitude output signal sample is indicative of good correlation and a small magnitude output signal sample is indicative of poor correlation. In accordance with this overflow limiter feature of the present invention, if a peak signal reaches the largest magnitude permitted by a correlator, the peak magnitude may be limited or saturated to preserve the maximum magnitude and overflows may be precluded with saturation or limiting logic. Such limiting may not significantly degrade information contained in the saturated signal sample particularly when compared to the gross error caused by an overflow condition.

In accordance with the saturation limiting concept discussed above, a digital saturating or digital limiting arrangement will now be discussed with reference to Fig 6D. Signal 644 may be a limiting signal generated by a detector such as NAND-gate 645 in response to a limiting magnitude Z_{KL} of output signal sample Z_K. If the output signal sample Z_K has a limiting magnitude such as a maximum magnitude having an all one-state, this maximum limiting signal magnitude Z_{KL} may be detected with NAND-gate 645 which will generate a zero-state output signal 644 in response to the limiting magnitude sample Z_{KL}. Limiting detection signal 644 may be used to disable NAND-gate 627, thereby disabling updating of Z-counter 613 for

a particular sample having a limiting magnitude Z_{KL}. Therefore, output signal samples loaded from Z-RAM 614 into Z-counter 613 will be updated by incrementing towards a limiting magnitude such as a magnitude of an all one-state. NAND-gate 645 detects

5 the limiting magnitude and generates signal 644 to disable NAND-gate 627 in response to a limiting magnitude sample in Z-counter 613, thereby disabling updating of Z-counter 613 with signal 644 when Z-counter 613 contains an output signal sample Z_K having a maximum magnitude Z_{KL}. Therefore, output signal

10 samples Z_K may be incremented toward the maximum magnitude Z_{KL} but will not be incremented past the maximum magnitude as controlled by NAND-gate 645 and signal 644. This arrangement may be termed a digital saturation or digital limiting control circuit to saturate the digital magnitude at or to limit the digital magnitude

15 to a prescribed maximum value without permitting overflows or other gross error conditions. Although a maximum signal magnitude of an all one-state has been discussed for simplicity, NAND-gate 645 may detect any signal sample magnitude determined with an input code of inverted and non-inverted bits of output signal sample Z_K

20 related to the desired maximum output signal sample magnitude.

In a preferred embodiment, limit detector 645 may be used in conjunction with adaptive compositor control 643 wherein digital limiter 645 may detect an output signal sample magnitude Z_{KL} greater than the threshold output signal sample magnitude Z_{KS} detected

25 with adaptive compositor control 643, wherein Z_{KL} may be greater than Z_{KS}. Therefore, output signal sample magnitudes may be incremented to the adaptive threshold magnitude Z_{KS} and detected by adaptive control detector 643 before being limited by limitor threshold detector 645 at limiting magnitude Z_{KL}.

For simplicity of discussion, adaptive detector 643
and limiter 645 have been discussed for detection of selected
magnitude and limited magnitude signals for an incremental
update arrangement. Detectors 643 and 645 may be used to detect
5   adaptive magnitude Z_{KS} and limiter magnitude Z_{KL} for incremental
update, decremental update, or incremental-decremental update
arrangements; wherein the Z_K signal magnitudes detected with
detectors 643 and 645 may be selected for the particular update
embodiment.

In a preferred embodiment, it may be desirable for
K-counter 619 to continuously access Z-RAM 614 so that output
signals Z_0-Z_{Km} from Z-RAM 614 may be continually available in
sequence to external devices such as for refreshing a CRT or for
5 recording on a magnetic tape. This output capability may be
controlled in response to a signal indicative of completion of
correlator and compositor operations such as output signal Lm from
L-counter 618, which is indicative of the completion of correlation
of a trace signal, or output signal 636 of compositor control 632,
10 which is indicative of completion of compositing-after-correlation
operations. In a preferred embodiment, output signal 636 from
compositor control 632 may be provided to external equipment as
indicative of completion of compositing and correlation operations
and may be used to enable output signal samples Z_K from Z-RAM 614
15 to external devices. This may be accomplished by permitting
K-counter 619 to continue to sequence through the K-addresses
after correlation and compositing operations have been completed
as shown by K-counter 619 having an input enable signal G
connected to ground for continuous enabling of K-counter 619
20 operations. Further, output signals from K-counter 619 such as
output K-addresses, maximum output signal Km, and/or the CRT sync
signal may be provided to external equipment for synchronization
and identification of the Z_K samples from Z-RAM 614. This output
mode of operation causes K-counter 619 to sequence through to
25 maximum address Kmax indicated by output signal Km which preloads
K-counter 619 through flip-flop 639 and NOR-gate 621 with load
signal NXT to again start sequencing through the set of addresses.
Z-RAM 614 may continue to generate output signals Z_K in response
to K-addresses from K-counter 619 for monitoring by external
30 equipment.

To preserve the contents of Z-RAM 614 during the output mode operation, write signal $\overline{C2}$ may be disabled by compositor control signal $\overline{COM}$ to OR-gate 629. Therefore, K-counter 619 may continue to sequence through output signal K-addresses for accessing

5   output signal samples Z_K from Z-RAM 614, wherein compositor signal $\overline{COM}$ disables the write signal for Z-RAM 614 after compositing operations have been completed to preserve the output signal samples without modification.

Sequencing of K-counter 619 through the set of K-addresses

10 may be continuously provided during the output mode. Initiation of a clear operation with clear switch CLR generating clear signal $\overline{CLR}$ for initiating of a new set of composite-after-correlation operations is performed by controlling compositor control 632 to enable the sync signal after clearing of the compositor

15 control 632 for a new set of composites. This will cause output signals from one-shot 651 to generate preload signal NXT through NOR-gate 621 to cause preloading of K-counter 619 to the first address state independent of whether K-counter 619 had been in the middle of a count associated with the output mode discussed above.

20 Therefore, there is no need to synchronize compositor logic and clear logic with operations of K-counter 619, wherein generation of load signal NXT in response to compositor control signals or clear control signals through one-shot 651 may automatically force K-counter 619 into synchronization, thereby discontinuing

25 output mode operations without causing detremental effects in the correlator logic. It may be necessary for output devices to monitor output K-addresses from K-counter 619 to insure that a complete set of output information has been obtained or in an alternat embodiment to monitor maximum output signal Km from K-counter 619

30 to determine if a complete set of output information has been obtained. In another alternate embodiment it may be necessary for output devices to monitor maximum output signal Km in conjunction with CRT sync signal NXT to determine if maximum output signal Km

has initiated CRT sync signal NXT as being indicative of completion of an output mode iteration or to determine if minimum output address Km did not initiate CRT signal sync NXT as indicative of early termination of the output mode cycle in response to a clear

5   command from clear switch CLR preloading K-counter 619 to force synchronization with clear mode operations.

The arrangement shown in Fig 6D is illustrated in simplified form for simplicity of discussion and for compatibility with discussions related to Table III and Fig 5. For example, a

10   plurality of counters are shown such as C-counter 616, J-counter 617, L-counter 618, K-counter 619, and Z-counter 613 which are shown as S/N 74191 type counters. These counters may be implemented as single four-bit counter circuits or may be cascaded to provide the desired number of states using well known techniques discussed in

15   The TTL Data Book on pages 417-436. The TTL Data Book further provides a detailed logical diagram on the counter circuit such as for illustrating the ripple clock and max-min output signal logic shown on pages 417-436 therein. Although the max-min and ripple clock logic for the S/N 74191 counter circuit may be used to

20   exemplify the arrangement shown in Fig 6D, external logic may be used to provide a max-min and ripple clock output signal for any number of counter stages whether the number of stages are factorable by four relative to the four-stages per S/N 74191 circuit permitting use of the ripple clock and max-min logic of the

25   integrated circuit or whether the number of stages are not factorable by four and therefore may be implementable with discrete logic circuits. Further, Z-RAM 614 may be a single-bit RAM such as the S/N 74200 RAM, wherein a plurality of individual S/N 74200 RAM integrated circuits may be connected in parallel for providing

30   a parallel whole word output Z_K as discussed on pages 463-470 of The TTL Data Book. Therefore, Z-counter 613 and Z-RAM 614 may be expanded to have a large number of bits per word by cascading Z-counter circuits S/N 74191 and by connecting in parallel

RAM circuits S/N 74200 as described on pages 417-436 and pages 463-470 respectively in The TTL Data Book. Similarly, P-ROM 625 may be a one-bit by 256-bit ROM or may be a 4-bit by 256-bit ROM such as implemented with integrated circuit S/N 74187.

5   For the S/N 74187 4-bit by 256-word ROM circuit, one-bit such as the Y1-bit may be selected for the single-bit P_J output signal, wherein other bits such as the Y2-bit and Y3-bit may not be necessary and may not be used. Further, ROM and RAM circuits may be cascaded to provide a greater number of words, may be connected

10   in parallel to provide a greater number of bits, or may be connected in parallel and cascaded to provide a greater number of bits together with a greater number of words than available with individual ROM and RAM integrated circuits. Connecting of ROM and RAM circuits in cascade and in parallel is well known in the

15   art such as discussed on pages 410-416 and 463-470 of The TTL Data Book and as discussed elsewhere in prior art literature.

In the above discussions relative to Fig 6D; counters 613, 616, 618, and 619 have been described as operating in an up-counter mode and counter 617 has been described as operating in a down-

20   counter mode consistent with the examples provided with reference to Table III and Figs 5A and 5B above. This consistency is provided for simplicity of discussion and is not a necessary requirement of the implementation. For example, embodiments may be provided for J-counter 617 implemented either as a down-counter

25   or as an up-counter; where pilot signal samples may be stored in P-ROM 625 having time sequential samples progressing from a lower address to a higher address for J-counter 617 operating in a down-counter mode or pilot signal samples may be stored in P-ROM 625 having time sequential samples progressing from a

30   higher address to a lower address for J-counter 617 operating in an up-counter mode. Similarly, C-counter 616 has been discussed for operation in an up-counter mode but alternate embodiments may be provided for C-counter 616 operating in an up-counter mode, a down-counter mode, or any counter mode wherein sequential

35   signals C0-C3 are selected in a sequence of operations independent of the direction of count of C-counter 616. Similarly,

K-counter 619 may be implemented as either an up-counter or a
down-counter. K-counter 619 generates addresses K for accessing
Z-RAM 614 where the count direction and count code of K-counter 619
is not a fixed constraint, but K-counter 619 should be initialized

5   to the same state and should count in the same sequence of codes
for accessing the same memory locations from Z-RAM 614; wherein it
is not important which storage location in Z-RAM 614 corresponds
with a particular Z output sample as long as that Z_K output sample
is consistently stored in the same location and otherwise kept track

10 of for updating the appropriate output sample Z_K with the related
computational solution from gate 626. Similarly, L-counter 618
may count output samples as an up-counter or as a down-counter,
and L-counter 618 may be implemented consistent with the
supplying of the Jo-parameter to preload J-counter 617. The primary

15 purpose of L-counter 618 is for determining the end of the trace
signal by counting trace signal samples T_L and for generating the
Lm output signal indicative of the last trace signal sample.
Another purpose of L-counter 618 is for generating the Jo-parameter
for preloading of J-counter 617. Similarly, Z-counter 613 is

20 used to incrementally update Z_K parameters from Z-RAM 614, wherein
updating may be provided as incrementing and not-incrementing in
response to a one-state and a zero-state respectively from
gate 626 or incrementing and not-incrementing in response to zero-
state and a one-state from gate 626 respectively. Alternately,

25 the output of gate 627 may be input to the down-up signal terminal
DU of Z-counter 613 for decrementing and incrementing in response
to a zero-state and a one-state respectively output from gate 626 or
for incrementing and decrementing in response to a one-state and a
zero-state respectively from gate 626. The mechanization of

30 incrementing and not-incrementing or decrementing and not
decrementing of Z-counter 613 in response to the output of gate 626
will determine whether the output signal magnitude will increase
in a positive direction or increase in a negative direction for
good correlations.

Resistors may be used which are not shown in Fig 6D

for simplicity but are described in the product literature and are

well known in the art. For example, pull-up resistors may be

used for open-collecter output circuits, wherein an open-collector

5   output signal line may be connected to a positive voltage source

with a resistor such as connecting to a +5-volt source with a

5K-ohm resistor. Open collector outputs using pull-up resistors

may need individual pull-up resistors for each output signal line

unless they are being wire-ORed together, in which case they may

10   be connected to the same pull-up resistor. Similarly, unused

inputs may be left open or may be connected to a positive supply

directly or with a pull-up resistor such as connecting to a +5-volt

supply with a 1K-ohm pull-up resistor. A plurality of unused

inputs may all be connected to the same pull-up resistor.

The arrangement shown in Fig 6D has been presented
in simplified form to better exemplify the features of the
present invention. A significant increase in speed may be
achieved by implementing additional techniques in the arrangement
5 shown in Fig 6D as discussed below.

Operation of the arrangement shown in Fig 6D may be
increased in speed by overlapping operations such as controlled
by control signals $\overline{C0}$-$\overline{C3}$. Such overlapping operations may be
performed by providing parallel or redundant devices. For
10 example, a plurality of Z-counter and Z-RAM devices may be
provided such as for accessing a Z_K word from a first Z-RAM for
loading a first Z-counter while storing an updated Z_K word
from a second Z-counter into a second Z-RAM. This implementation
may include a second K-counter, wherein two sequential adjacent
15 K-addresses may be stored in the two counters or may include
a K-register used in conjunction with a K-counter wherein the
K-counter may store the latest Z-RAM address such as the access
address and a K-register (not shown) may store the Z-RAM store
address of the last updated word, where the store address might
20 be one address less than the access address.

Improvement in speed with the arrangement shown in
Fig 6D may also be obtained by providing an arrangement for
determining the first Z-output sample to be updated such as
with a K0 counter for preloading the K-counter with the value
25 of the address of the first output sample to be updated, which
might be implemented similar to the arrangement discussed above
for the preloading of the J-counter with the address Jo of
the first pilot signal sample P_{Jo}. With reference to Table III,
the first output sample to be updated for any trace signal
30 sample may be determined by a simple counter arrangement which
may be incremented for each new trace signal sample processed.
The first group of trace signal samples, which are the first
four trace signal samples in the example shown in Table III,

are used to update the output signal samplee Z_K starting with the first output signal sample Z_0. Subsequent trace signal samples, such as trace signal sample T_4-T_{15} for the example shown in Table III, do not update the first output signal

5   sample Z_0 but updated output signal samples other than Z_0. For the example shown in Table III, trace signal sample T_4 has a first updated output signal sample Z_1, trace signal sample T_5 has a first updated output signal sample Z_2, etc wherein the last trace signal sample T_{15} has a first updated output signal

10   sample Z_{12} which is the last output signal sample. Therefore, many output signal samples are not updated by each trace signal sample shown as blank locations in the upper right hand portion of Table III and therefore may be skipped in the computation by preloading the address of the first output signal

15   sample Ko into K-counter 619 from a first updated output signal sample counter identified as the Ko-counter (not shown) which is incremented as the trace signal is sampled with the $\overline{NXT}$ signal.

     Additional speed may be obtained by skipping update computations associated with subsequent output signal samples

20   that should not be updated such as indicated by the blank spaces in the lower left-hand corner of Table III. For example, output signal samples will be updated as the pilot signal sample address-J is decremented through J=0, wherein the P_0 pilot signal sample associated with the J=0 address may be

25   the last pilot signal sample used to update output signal samples Z_K in response to any particular trace signal sample T_L. This consideration may be shown with the P_0 pilot signal sample being the last pilot signal sample in each column of Table III and being followed vertically downward by blank spaces in

30   Table III indicative of subsequent output signal samples not being updated. Therefore, detection of the P_0 pilot signal sample such as by detection of the J-counter 617 going through a zero-state related to J=0 may be used to detect updating of the

last output signal sample in response to a particular trace signal sample. Termination of updating for that particular trace signal sample may be achieved by using the max-min mm output of J-counter 617 to initiate processing of the next

5 trace signal sample by replacing the Km signal to NOR-gate 621 with the Jm signal to NOR-gate 621 to enable preloading of J-counter 617 with the Jo-parameter from L-counter 618 and to enable preloading of K-counter 619 for the start of the next set of output signal sample updates in response to the next trace

10 signal sample T_L. Therefore, the time required for the counters in control logic 615 to increment through unnecessary operations, such as shown in Table III as the blanks in the lower left-hand corner, may be reduced thereby reducing the time for performing the correlation operations.

15   In an alternate embodiment, the sequence may be terminated when J-counter 617 decrements to the zero-state as being indicative of the last necessary computation. The zero-state of J-counter 617 may be detected with decoder 628 or with min-max signal Jm to control loading of J-counter 617

20 with the Jo-parameter and loading of K-counter 619 to the initial state for the next updating of the output samples. Similarly, K-counter 619 may be preloaded with the address of the first output signal sample to be updated, wherein the first output signal sample to be updated may be related to the trace signal

25 sample being processed. For example, the T_3 trace signal sample starts with updating of the Z_5 output signal sample (Table III); wherein the first output signal sample to be updated may be related to the address of the trace signal sample by the equation K=L-3 for the example shown in Table III. For simplicity

30 of discussion, arrangement shown in Fig 6D merely disables updating of output signal samples with decoder 628 and NAND-gate 627 for non-updating iterations related to blank spaces of Table III. Those of ordinary skill in the art will be able to identify the circuit shown in Fig 6D to incorporate these optimization

features from the teachings of the present invention.

Additional time may be saved by providing a sample buffer memory for trace signal samples T_L so that trace signal samples may be received and stored at an average sample

5 rate and may be provided to the correlation logic at the desired computational rate. Such an arrangement may be valuable to compensate for peak computational loads and for minimum computational loads associated with the above described time reducing control operations. This consideration will now be

10 described with reference to Table III, wherein certain trace signal samples may have a reduced computational load. For example, trace signal sample T_0 updates only a single output signal sample Z_0, trace signal sample T_1 updates only two output signal samples Z_0 and Z_1, etc. Also, many trace signal samples

15 T_4-T_{12} update a total of four output signal samples where the above optimization arrangements may have unequal times between processing trace signal samples depending upon the location in the sequence of trace signal samples being processed. Therefore, a buffer memory for buffering trace signal samples T_L

20 may permit trace signal samples to be sampled at fixed time intervals such as an average time interval and may permit accessing of the buffered trace signal samples from the buffer memory at the required computational rate, where computational time may be longer than the average sample period for longer

25 computational requirements and may be shorter than the average sample period for shorter computational requirements. Such a buffer memory may be implemented for loading trace signal samples under control of an incrementing next input sample counter and for accessing samples under control of an incrementing next

30 output sample counter wherein the next input sample counter may be incremented at the average sampling rate and the next output sample counter may be incremented in response to completion of each correlation operation such as under control of load

signal $\overline{NXT}$ from NOR-gate 621 as indicative of the need to sample the next trace signal sample. A well known first-in-first-out (FIFO) memory may be used to provide this trace signal buffer memory operation.

5   Additional improvements in speed may be obtained by using the output of gate 626 to determine whether the related output signal sample Z_K is to be updated such as by incrementing in one embodiment or by decrementing in an alternate embodiment. If the output signal sample Z_K is to be updated, it may be

10   accessed from Z-RAM 614 for updating with Z-counter 613. If output signal sample Z_K is not to be updated such as with a not-increment or not-decrement command from gate 626, it may not be necessary to access the output signal sample Z_K from the Z-RAM 614. Therefore, the $\overline{C0}$-$\overline{C2}$ control signal

15   sequence may be eliminated for a non-update condition controlled by gate 626, which may reset C-counter 616 and may clock counters 617-619 such as with the $\overline{C3}$ clock signal or an equivalent clock signal but may not perform Z-RAM and Z-counter operations related to the non-update condition. In a system

20   having a low signal-to-noise ratio or a high noise content, an input trace signal sample T_L may have a duty-cycle of approximately 50% which may be slightly weighted or biased by the signal contained therein. Assuming a 50% duty-cycle of increment and non-increment commands from gate 626 for simplicity of discussion,

25   only one-half of the update command iterations will command updating of output signal samples Z_K with increment and non-increment or decrement and non-decrement algorithms. Therefore, implementation of conditional access update, and store operations for Z-RAM 614 may result in a saving of almost 50% of the time

30   required for updating operations.

As discussed above for operation 527 (Fig 5A) and decoder 628 (Fig 6D) a test of the J-parameter or other related test may be used to determine which updates may be unnecessary or undesirable, wherein such unnecessary updates may be related to the blank spaces shown in Table III above and may be termed blank updates. Detection and elimination of such blank updates may be necessary to preclude erroneous updates of output signal samples Z_K. The operations associated with blank updates such as memory accesses and computations may be skipped or eliminated to increase time available for other operations, to increase speed, and other such considerations.

A brief description of the blank update consideration will now be provided with reference to Table III. The number of memory access and multiplication operations for a correlation computation may depend on the mechanization. Embodiments may be provided wherein the number of operations are related to either the product of the number of trace signal samples and the number of pilot signal samples or to the product of the number of trace signal samples and the number of output signal samples. For the example shown in Table III, there are sixteen trace signal samples and four pilot signal samples which would be related to 64-computational operations for a first embodiment and there are sixteen trace signal samples and thirteen output signal samples which would be related to 208-computational operations for a second embodiment. In a preferred embodiment, the blank update operations may be eliminated where the required number of operations are related to the product of the number of pilot signal samples and the number of output signal samples; where Table III shows four pilot signal samples and thirteen output signal samples for a total of 52-update operations.

relationship between the number of pilot signal samples and the
number of trace signal samples as shown in equation (2),
equation (5), equation (6), and equation (7).

$$N_U = N_P \cdot N_Z \qquad \text{equation (5)}$$

$$N_U = N_P(N_T - N_P + 1) \qquad \text{equation (6)}$$

$$N_U = N_P \cdot N_T - N_P^2 + N_P \qquad \text{equation (7)}$$

$$N_U = N_T \cdot N_Z \qquad \text{equation (8)}$$

$$N_U = N_T^2 - N_T \cdot N_P + N_T \qquad \text{equation (9)}$$

10 Equation (2) shows the relationship between the number of trace
signal samples (N_T), the number of pilot signal samples (N_P),
and the number of output signal samples (N_Z). As discussed
above for a preferred embodiment, the number of updates (N_U)
may be equal to the product of the number of pilot signal

15 samples (N_P) and the number of output signal samples (N_Z)
as shown in equation (5) above. The value for the number of
output signal samples (N_Z) from equation (2) may be substituted
into equation (5) yielding equation (6), which may be simplified
by multiplying through to generate equation (7). With

20 reference to equation (7), the number of updates (N_U) varies
as an exponential function of the number of pilot signal
samples (N_P) and is related to the number of trace signal
samples (N_T). For the example shown in Table III having
sixteen trace signal samples (N_T) and four pilot signal

25 samples (N_P), a total of 52-update computations (N_U) are required.
For a geophysical embodiment having 32,000 trace signal
samples (N_T) and 24,000 pilot signal samples (N_P), a total of
approximately 192-million update computations (N_U) are required.

  If update computations associated with the blank

30 positions in Table III were implemented even though they were
not used to update the output signal samples, then the
computational load would be significantly greater. The total
number of update locations in Table III including blank update
locations and actual update locations is equal to the product

of the number of trace signal samples (N_T) and the number of output signal samples (N_Z) as shown in equation (8). Substituting equation (2) into equation (8) yields the number of updates (N_U) in terms of the number of pilot signal

5   samples (N_P) and the number of trace signal samples (N_T) as shown in equation (9). Substituting the value of $N_T=16$ and $N_P=4$ for the example shown in Table III into equation (9) yields 208 update computations which is approximately four-times the number of update computations required for an embodiment

10   excluding computations associated with blank locations in Table III. Similarly, for the geophysical embodiment wherein $N_T=32,000$ and $N_P=24,000$; the number of updates is equal to approximately 256-million update computations which is approximately 25% more than the 192-million update computations

15   for the above example excluding the blank update computations.

In view of the above examples and with reference to equation (7) and equation (9), several considerations relating to the number of update computations and the skipping of blank update computations become apparent. First, the number of

20   update computations becomes very large as the number of pilot signal samples (N_P) and the number of trace signal samples (N_T) becomes large. Second, the reduction of update computations by skipping blank computations such as shown by the blank spaces in Table III has a reduction in significance as the

25   number of pilot signal samples (N_P) approaches the number of trace signal samples (N_T) and has an increase in significance as the number of pilot signal samples (N_P) is made less than the number of trace signal samples (N_T). Third, determination of the blank update computations is necessary to preclude improperly

30   updating of output signal samples, thereby involving a

programming or logical circuit implementation to detect the

unnecessary update computations, where such an implementation

may also be used to skip the blank update computations.

Therefore, an alternate embodiment of the present invention may

5   include an arrangement for detecting blank update computations,

exemplified by the blank spaces in Table III; may include an

arrangement for disabling updating of output signal samples

in response to blank update computations; and may include an

arrangement for disabling operations associated with blank

10 update computations such as memory accessing and store operations

and output signal update operations.

The arrangement discussed with reference to Fig 6
and in particular Fig 6D has been discussed for correlation
operations. Further, it has been discussed above that compositing-
after-correlation is implicit in the summation of single-bit
5 correlation products with corresponding output samples to build-up
significance of the output samples either through correlation of
additional samples of a single trace signal or by compositing of
additional samples of additional trace signals. The compositing
operation associated with the correlator of the present invention
10 may be better understood by illustrating how the arrangement
shown in Fig 6D can provide a compositing operation independent
of the correlation operation. In a compositor embodiment, there
is no need to implement a pilot signal memory nor pilot signal
control operations; wherein J-counter 617, L-counter 618,
15 P-ROM 625, decoder 628 and exclusive-OR gate 626 may be eliminated.
The trace signal T_L may be provided directly to gate 627 to control
the incrementing and not-incrementing or decrementing and not-
decrementing of Z-counter 613 in response to one-states and zero-
states respectively of trace signal T_L.

K-counter 619 keeps track of the addresses of composited trace signal samples. Overflow signal Km of K-counter 619 may be connected to K-counter enable input G to disable operation of K-counter 619 after the K-counter has sequenced to the Km maximum

5 address, thereby locking-up K-counter 619 through enable signal G.

Receipt of a sync pulse to AND-gate 638 when enabled by signal 636 from compositor control 632 generates output pulse $\overline{OUT}$ for clearing C-counter 616 and generates output pulse OUT

10 for preloading K-counter 619 to initiate another composite operation. As K-counter 619 increments from the initial address to the maximum address Km, input trace samples T_L may be conditionally added to or not added to the samples stored in Z-RAM 614 by incrementing or not-incrementing the corresponding

15 output signal samples Z_K loaded into Z-counter 613. When the last trace sample T_L is used to update the last composited signal sample in Z-RAM 614, identified by the last address Km from K-counter 619, the Km signal from K-counter 619 may again lock-up K-counter 619 pending arrival of the next input sync pulse

20 which is indicative of the start of the next trace signal. Composite control 632 may operate similar to that described for the composite-after-correlation arrangement discussed above with reference to Fig 6D. Therefore, a programmable quantity of trace signals may be composited together as discussed for composite

25 control 632 above.

Another difference with a compositor arrangement compared to a composite-after-correlation arrangement is that K-counter 619 has a number of Z-RAM addresses corresponding to the number of trace signal samples T_L, wherein the address Km

30 may correspond to the address of the last trace signal sample and

wherein the number of output signal samples $Z_K(N_Z)$ may be equal to the number of trace signal samples (N_T) for compositing. This is in contrast to the compositing-after-correlation embodiment discussed with reference to Fig 6D above; wherein the number of

5 Z-RAM addresses is equal to the number of output signal samples (N_Z) which is equal to the difference between the number of trace signal samples (N_T) and the number of pilot signal samples (N_P) discussed with reference to equation (2) above. Therefore, the number of correlation output signal samples (N_Z) is less than

10 the number of composited output signal samples for a simple compositing arrangement without correlation, assuming that the number of trace signal samples is the same for the compositing-only embodiment and for the correlation or compositing-after-correlation embodiment.

Description Of Fig 6E

The correlator arrangement of the present invention may
be implemented as a plurality of correlator channels having
portions of logic being dedicated to a particular channel and
5 other portions of logic being shared between a plurality of
channels. One embodiment of a multi-channel correlator arrange-
ment is shown in Fig 6E having computational logic dedicated to
each of a plurality of channels and having control logic 615
being shared between all of the channels. A multi-channel
10 correlator arrangement such as shown in Fig 6E may be implemented
by using a plurality of single-channel correlators, wherein such
single-channel correlator arrangements are discussed with
reference to Figs 5B, 6A, and 6D above. Alternately, a multi-
channel correlator arrangement may be implemented such as with
15 the time-shared arrangement discussed with reference to Fig 5A
above.

The arrangement shown in Fig 6E will now be discussed
in detail. A plurality of correlator channels may be con-
figured to process each of a plurality of trace signals wherein
20 each trace signal may be processed first with a squaring
amplifier 623 for squaring a trace signal and then with a
sample flip-flop 624 for sampling and storing the trace signal
sample in response to the next command signal NXT. P-store 610
may be implemented with a P-ROM 625 for generating pilot signal
25 samples in response to pilot signal sample addresses J generated
by control logic 615. Multiplication or comparison of a trace
signal sample T_L and a pilot signal sample P_J may be performed
with exclusive-OR network 626 to generate a single-bit compare
signal to NAND-gate 627 for enabling or disabling with disable
30 signal D for updating a related Z_K output signal sample. Each
channel may have a Z-RAM 614 for storing output signal samples
Z_K and a Z-counter 613 for updating an accessed output signal
sample Z_K. The output signal sample $\overline{Z_K}$ is selected with

K-addresses from K-counter 619 in control logic 615 and is
loaded into Z-counter 613 for updating under control of an
update signal from NAND-gate 627. After updating, the updated
output signal sample Z_K is stored back into Z-RAM 614. There-

5 fore, each trace signal correlator channel may be similar to
the single channel correlator discussed in detail with reference
to Fig 6D above.

For a multi-channel correlator arrangement, control
logic 615 may be common to a plurality of correlator channels

10 and may be shared between this plurality of correlator channels.
For example, the control signals from control logic 615 such as
clock signals C from C-counter 616, pilot signal sample
addresses J from J-counter 617, trace signal sample addresses
L from L-counter 618, and output signal sample addresses K

15 from K-counter 619 may be shared between a plurality of
correlator channels, wherein the control signals may be common
to each channel and wherein the correlation operations of all
channels may be synchronized together with control logic 615.
Alternately, synchronization of each of a plurality of correlator

20 channels may be provided with different sync signals for each
of the channels having different time synchronization or being
asynchronous therebetween. Such an arrangement requires
operation of each correlator channel to operate asynchronously
with respect to each other correlator channel. Therefore,

25 control logic 615 may be duplicated for each of a plurality of
asynchronously operating correlator channels. As still another
alternate, portions of control logic 615 such as logic
associated with C-counter 616 may be shared between each of a
plurality of correlator channels and other portions of control

30 logic 615 such as logic of J-counter 617, L-counter 618, and
K-counter 619 may be dedicated to each of the correlator channels
and may be duplicated for each correlator channel. Therefore,
various combinations of dedicated control logic and shared control
logic may be provided in conjunction with a plurality of

35 correlator channels.

Each of the plurality of channels shown in Fig 6E is shown having an input trace signal T_{LO}-T_{LN} and a pilot signal P_{JO}-P_{JN}. Various alternate embodiments may be provided with combinations of trace signals and pilot signals. For example,

5   the trace signal to each of a plurality of channels may be different from the trace signals to the other channels or the trace signal to each of a plurality of channels may be the same as the trace signals to the other channels. Further, the pilot signal to each of a plurality of channels may be different from

10   the pilot signals to the other channels or the pilot signal to each of a plurality of channels may be the same as the pilot signal to the other channels. These alternatives will be described in greater detail below.

In a first multi-channel correlator embodiment, the

15   trace signals to each of a plurality of channels may be different from the trace signals to other channels and the pilot signals to each of the plurality of channels may be different from the pilot signals to other channels. Therefore, each of the plurality of channels may have a different trace signal and a different

20   pilot signal than the other channels. In such an arrangement, trace signals T_{LO}-T_{LN} and pilot signals P_{JO}-P_{JN} may be all different therebetween.

In another multi-channel correlator embodiment, the trace signals to each of a plurality of channels may be the

25   same as the trace signals to other channels and the pilot signals to each of the plurality of channels may be the same as the pilot signals to other channels. Therefore, each of the plurality of channels may have the same trace signal and the same pilot signal. In such an arrangement, trace signals T_{LO}-T_{LN} may be

30   the same and pilot signals P_{JO}-P_{JN} may be the same, wherein trace signals and pilot signals may be represented without channel designations as T_L and P_J respectively.

In still another multi-channel correlator embodiment, the trace signals to each of a plurality of channels may be different from the trace signals to other channels and the pilot signals to each of the plurality of channels may be the

5   same as the pilot signals to other channels. Therefore, each of the plurality of channels may have different trace signals and may have the same pilot signal. In such an arrangement, trace signals T_{LO}-T_{LN} may be all different therebetween and pilot signals P_{JO}-P_{JN} may be the same therebetween; wherein pilot

10 signals may be represented without channel designations as P_J. In this embodiment having a different trace signal and the same pilot signal for each channel, a plurality of different trace signals may be "searched" to find a common signature signal therein.

15   In yet another multi-channel correlator embodiment, the trace signals to each of a plurality of channels may be the same as the trace signals to other channels and the pilot signals to each of the plurality of channels may be different from the pilot signals to other channels. Therefore, each of the plurality of

20 channels may have the same trace signal and may have different pilot signals. In such an arrangement, trace signals T_{LO}-T_{LN} may be all the same therebetween and pilot signals P_{JO}-P_{JN} may be different therebetween; wherein trace signals may be represented without channel designations as T_L. In this

25 embodiment having a different pilot signal and the same trace signal for each channel, the same trace signal may be "searched" with a plurality of different pilot signals to find different signature signals multiplexed in the trace signal.

A pilot signal common to a plurality of channels may be obtained from a single P-store 610 such as P-ROM 625, wherein a single P-ROM output such as pilot signal P_{JO} may be fanned-out to each of a plurality of channels such as by being input

5 to gate 626 of channel N in place of pilot signal P_{JN}. Alternately, a separate P-store 610 such as P-ROM 625 may be provided for each channel as shown for Fig 6E wherein the same pilot signal may be stored in each P-ROM 625.

A trace signal common to a plurality of channels may

10 be obtained by inputting the same trace signal to each of a plurality of correlator channels wherein a single trace signal such as signal T_{LO} may also be input to channel N in place of trace signal T_{LN}.

Output signal sample processor logic comprising Z-RAM 614

15 and Z-counter 613 may be provided separately for each correlator channel as shown in Fig 6E for separate output signal sample processing. Alternately, output signal sample processor logic 613 and 614 may be common to a plurality of channels such as for compositing correlated signals from a plurality of channels

20 theretogether. In such an arrangement, the update control signal $\overline{CI}$ to clock Z-counter 613 (Fig 6D) may be provided as a plurality of clock signals being clock signals $\overline{CI_0}$-$\overline{CI_N}$ related to correlation channels 0-N respectively. The plurality of clock signals may clock Z-counter 613 to update an output signal

25 sample in response to each of a sequence of update signals for a particular output signal sample, wherein each of the correlator channels 0-N may be selected in sequence by each of the corresponding clock signals $\overline{CI_0}$-$\overline{CI_N}$ respectively to apply the update control signal from gates 627 for each channel in

30 sequence to update the signal sample from Z-counter 613. This arrangement is particularly useful when synchronization of input trace signals is the same so that all of the input trace signal samples have correspondence therebetween and have

correspondence to the same output signal sample accessed from
Z-RAM 614 and available in Z-counter 613. This arrangement
provides compositing-after-correlation between a plurality of
correlation channels.

5   In an alternate embodiment, a plurality of trace signals
T_{LO}-T_{LN} may have different synchronizations therebetween and
different sets of control logic 615 for each correlator channel
having a different synchronization characteristic, wherein it
may be desirable to composite the correlated signals from each
10   of a plurality of non-synchronous or asynchronous correlator
channels theretogether. In such an arrangement, each channel
may be sequenced to access an appropriate sample from Z-RAM 614
for updating in Z-counter 613 and for storing back into Z-RAM
614 before a next correlator channel is permitted to access
15   Z-RAM 614 for updating a different Z-output signal sample. In
this arrangement, each correlator channel may access Z-RAM 614
in it's proper time, update the accessed sample in Z-counter 613,
and load the related sample back into Z-RAM 614 before the
sequensor sequences to the next channel for updating of a
20   different output signal sample. This arrangement is similar to
the time-shared multi-channel arrangement discussed with reference
to Fig 5A, wherein the sequensor may sequence through a plurality
of trace signals for a particular signal sample interval for
updating of an output signal sample accessed for a
25   particular channel, then being stored back into
Z-store 614 prior to sequencing to the next correlator channel.
In a hardware embodiment, this arrangement may be implemented
by expanding C-counter 616 shown in Fig 6D to sequence through
a plurality of clock states $\overline{C0}$-$\overline{C3}$ for each correlator channel
30   in sequence. For a three channel system, C-counter 616 may
sequence through clock signals $\overline{C0_0}$-$\overline{C3_0}$ for channel 0, followed
by clock signals $\overline{C0_1}$-$\overline{C3_1}$ for channel 1, followed by clock signals

$\overline{CO_2}$-$\overline{C3_2}$ for channel 2, and then followed by clock signals

$\overline{CO_0}$-$\overline{C3_0}$ for again processing channel 0, etc. The related signals

may be ORed together such as $\overline{CO_0}+\overline{CO_1}+\overline{CO_2}$ for generating the

$\overline{CO}$ signal into Z-counter 613; $\overline{C1_0}+\overline{C1_1}+\overline{C1_2}$ for generating the $\overline{C1}$

5   clock signal into Z-counter 613; $\overline{C2_0}+\overline{C2_1}+\overline{C2_2}$ for generating the

write enable signal $\overline{C2}$ into Z-RAM 614 through NAND-gate 629;

and $\overline{C3_0}+\overline{C3_1}+\overline{C3_2}$ for generating the counter clock signal $\overline{C3}$.

Alternately, the $C3_0$-$C3_2$ clock signals to J-counter 617, L-counter

618, and K-counter 619 may be provided to separate counters for

10   each channel for this non-synchronous embodiment.

In view of the above, various combinations of commonality

and separation may be provided between a plurality of correlator

channels with combinations of the same trace signal or different

trace signals to the plurality of correlator channels, the same

15   pilot signal or different pilot signals to the plurality of

correlator channels, and the same output signal processing logic

or different output signal processing logic for the plurality

of correlator channels.

The arrangement shown in Fig 6E is intended to be

20   representative of a plurality of correlator channels ranging

from channel-0 to channel-N. For an embodiment having two

correlator channels identified as channel-0 and channel-1, then

N=1. Similarly, for an embodiment having 10-channels defined as

channels 0-9, then N=9. Similarly, other pluralities of

25   correlator channels may be provided without departing from the

descriptions provided herein. The vertical arrows shown in

Fig 6E are intended to represent additional correlator channels

between channel-0 and channel-N which are not shown because

they may be identical to the two channels, channel-0 and

30   channel-N, shown in Fig 6E.

<u>Description Of Fig 6F</u>

Compositor control arrangement 632 provides for controlling a programmable number of composite operations after correlation for the correlation arrangement discussed with

5   reference to Fig 6D above. A programmable Q-counter 635 may be preloaded with a digital number such as from thumbwheel switches 333 or from other programmable sources to define the number of correlation operations that are to be composited together. Q-counter 635 is shown connected as a down-counter

10   to count-down from the preloaded number under control of the clock signal CK which may be the Lm signal derived from L-counter 618, wherein the Lm signal is indicative of completion of a correlation operation. Therefore, Q-counter 635 may count-down from a programmed quantity of correlation operations being

15   decremented at the completion of each correlation operation and underflowing when the number has been counted-down to zero to disable further correlations.

A programmable input device such as thumbwheel switches 633 may be provided to Q-counter 635 in parallel signal form.

20   Thumbwheel switches 633 may be hexidecimal thumbwheel switches or BCD thumbwheel switches which are well known in the art such as Digiswitch thumbwheel switches manufactured by the Digitran Company of Pasadena, California. Thumbwheel switches 633 usually provide complement outputs which are inverted with

25   inverters 634 to provide uncomplemented signals to Q-counter 635. Q-counter 635 may be an S/N 74190 counter which is a BCD counter used in conjunction with BCD thumbwheel switches or may be an S/N 74191 binary counter for use with hexidecimal thumbwheel switches.

Clearing of Z-RAM 614 has been discussed with
reference to Fig 6D above, wherein Z-RAM 614 is cleared with
gates 630 under control of clear signal $\overline{CLR}$ from clear switch CLR
as being indicative of the completion of a prior compositing

5   and correlation operation and the intended initiation of the
next compositing-after-correlation operation. Therefore, the
$\overline{CLR}$ signal is connected to the load input LD of Q-counter 635
for loading Q-counter 635 from thumbwheel switches 633. Q-counter
635 is connected for a down-count with the up-down input UD

10 connected to a positive voltage. Clock input CK to Q-counter
635 may be connected to the Lm signal line from L-counter 618,
where the Lm signal is indicative of the last trace sample for
a correlation. Therefore, the Lm signal would clock Q-counter
635 to decrement the initially preloaded number in response to

15 the completion of each successive correlation and compositing
operation. Alternately, clock input CK to Q-counter 635 may
be connected to the adaptive control signal 642 (Fig 6D), where
the adaptive control signal 642 is indicative of an output
signal sample Z_K reaching a selected magnitude Z_{KS} for

20 decrementing Q-counter 635 as discussed with reference to
Fig 6D above.

When Q-counter 635 is decremented to zero, the min-max
output signal mm goes high which disables subsequent counting
of Q-counter 635 by being directly connected to the enable

25 input G and the output signal mm generates disable signal 636
with inverter 637 to disable subsequent sync pulses, as
discussed with reference to Fig 6D above. Q-counter 635
remains disabled until preloaded with the $\overline{CLR}$ signal as
discussed above.

30   Compositor control arrangement 632 discussed with
reference to Fig 6F permits a sequential group of compositing
operations to be performed after correlation and then maintains
the composited information in Z-RAM 614 until cleared such as
with the clear switch CLR to initiate another composite-after-

35 correlation operation.

For simplicity of discussion; Q-counter 635 has been
discussed as a single four-bit counter circuit S/N 74191 and
thumbwheel switch 633 has been discussed as a single four-bit
switch. Alternately, Q-counter 635 and input source 633 may
5   be cascaded such as in four-bit blocks to increase control
beyond the maximum of 15 composites-after-correlation permissible
with a single four-bit arrangement. Such cascading of counters
and thumbwheel switches is well known in the art, where the
cascading of the S/N 74191 circuits is described in The TTL
10   Data Book referenced hereinafter. Further, thumbwheel switches
are merely exemplary of one form of programming Q-counter 635,
wherein thumbwheel switches 633 may be replaced by a digital
register that may be loaded from a digital computer or other
digital device or may be any prior art arrangement for
15   preloading counter 635 with the desired number of composites.

Description Of Fig 6G

A synchronous one-shot circuit SOS (Fig 6G) is provided to generate a synchronous output pulse OUT having a prescribed pulse width and being synchronized with a clock

5   signal CK in response to a transition of an input signal IN. Further, the SOS circuit may provide a latching function that permits error free generation of the output pulse independent of whether the input signal is shorter than the output pulse or longer than the output pulse. Further, the SOS circuit may

10 be used to provide switch debounce and other such operations associated with input signals.

Latch circuit L is constructed with a pair of cross-coupled NAND-gates such as with S/N 74279 circuits. A low input to the top gate generates a high output LQ and a low

15 input to the bottom gate generates a low output $\overline{LQ}$. The memory function associated with latch L provides for storing the high output signal LQ or the low output signal $\overline{LQ}$ when the input signals go high. For example, switch S may be a manual switch with one pole connected to the $\overline{IN}$ line and the other pole

20 connected to the $\overline{RESET}$ line. Switch S being positioned to the $\overline{IN}$ position will ground the $\overline{IN}$ line to set latch L to the LQ-state. The condition of the moving element of switch S bouncing on a terminal may apply alternate high and low conditions to the $\overline{IN}$ input of latch L, but the memory associated

25 with latch L will maintain the latched position LQ independent of the switch bounce on the $\overline{IN}$ terminal. Latch L will not be reset until the moving element of switch S is positioned to the $\overline{RESET}$ input, thereby applying a ground signal to the reset input of latch L and causing latch L to assume the $\overline{LQ}$

30 state independent of switch bounce at the $\overline{RESET}$ terminal. Similarly, a short pulse on an input line $\overline{IN}$ will set latch L, where latch L will remain set until it is reset with the $\overline{RESET}$ signal or with the generation of an output pulse through

gate G3, as will be discussed hereafter. For convenience, both an $\overline{\text{IN}}$ signal line and IN signal line are provided wherein the IN signal line is inverted with gate G1 which may be wire-ORed with the $\overline{\text{IN}}$ signal line as an input to latch L.

5   The state of latch L is shifted through flip-flops F1 and F2 in sequential shift register fashion under control of clock signal CK. Initially with latch L being zero-set, flip-flops F1 and F2 had been reset due to the asynchronous clear signal to clear inputs CR, which will be discussed hereafter, 10 or by shifting the input zero-state through flip-flops F1 and F2 under control of shift clock CK. Therefore, it will be assumed that flip-flops F1 and F2 are initially in the zero-set state. When latch L is one-set, latch output signal LQ goes high thereby making the input to flip-flop F1 high, but 15 flip-flop F1 will remain in the latched zero-state and flip-flop F2 will remain in the latched zero-state. On the occurrence of a transition of clock signal CK, flip-flops F1 and F2 will set to the input signal states, wherein flip-flop F1 will be set to the one-state of input signal LQ and flip-flop F2 will 20 be set to the zero-state of input signal F1Q. Flip-flop F1 being set to the one-state causes the input of flip-flop F2 to go to the one-state, wherein the next transition of clock signal CK will therefore set flip-flop F2 to the one-state. Therefore, the two clock pulses following the latch L being set 25 to the one-state will progressively set flip-flop F1 to the one-state and then set flip-flop F2 to the one-state. The transitionary condition of flip-flop F1 having been set to the one-state and flip-flop F2 not as yet being set to the one-state is detected by gate G3 having as inputs the F1Q signal and 30 $\overline{\text{F2Q}}$ signal to generate an output signal in response thereto. This transitionary condition of F1Q·$\overline{\text{F2Q}}$ lasts for precisely one clock period from the time that flip-flop F1 is clocked to the one-state and until the time that flip-flop F2 is clocked to the one-state.

Flip-flops F1 and F2 will remain in the one-state until latch L is reset. If latch L is reset with the $\overline{\text{RESET}}$ input signal, the zero-state of latch signal LQ will be shifted through flip-flops F1 and F2 under control of

5 sequential clock signals CK to sequentially zero-set flip-flops F1 and F2. Alternately, if the reset of latch L is generated with NAND-gate G2, the reset signal may be used to reset latch L and to simultaneously reset flip-flops F1 and F2 through asynchronous clear inputs CR. NAND-gate G2 detects the

10 occurrence of two conditions which are the input signal IN becoming low and the output of flip-flop F2 becoming high. The input signal IN becoming low (corresponding to the input signal $\overline{\text{IN}}$ becoming high) is indicative of the input signal that had set latch L being completed. Feedback signal F2Q is indicative

15 of the completion of output signal OUT from gate G3 because output signal OUT is generated during the transitionary condition of flip-flop F1 being one-set and flip-flop F2 being zero-set; wherein this transitionary condition is completed when flip-flop F2 becomes one-set thereby disabling gate G3

20 with the $\overline{\text{F2Q}}$ signal.

Gate G2 prevents improper conditions from occurring such as the condition where the input signal IN has a short duration and is completed before output pulse OUT is generated and the condition that the input signal IN has a long duration

25 where output pulse OUT is generated before input signal IN is completed. Gate G2 insures that latch L will not be reset until both, input signal IN has been completed and has gone low and output pulse OUT has been generated as indicated by the F2Q signal going high. Therefore, a short input pulse IN

30 will be disabled from prematurely resetting latch L with the feedback signal F2Q and an early output pulse OUT will be disabled from prematurely resetting latch L with a long input pulse IN.

Operation of synchronous one-shot SOS is based upon
an input signal responsive sequence of transitions by flip-flops
F1 and F2 which is detected by AND-gate G3 wherein the output
of AND-gate G3 is a one-clock period wide pulse occurring at

5   the transition of input signal IN from a zero-state to a one-
state. This is accomplished by providing a one-clock pulse
period delay with flip-flop F2 and monitoring for the transi-
tion condition that flip-flop F2 input signal F1Q is high
when flip-flop F2 output signal F2Q is low as indicative of

10   a change in the input signal F1Q to the high state during the.
last immediately prior clock period. For example, input signal
IN may be low for a period of time prior to making a transition
to the one-state. Therefore, flip-flops F1 and F2 being con-
tinuously clocked with clock signal CK are continuously set

15   to this zero-state of input signal IN. When a clock pulse sets
flip-flop F1 to the one-state thereby setting output signal F1Q
to the one-state in response to a first clock pulse, the state
of flip-flop F2 remains zero-set because the input signal F1Q
is in the zero-state when the clock pulse CK occurs; wherein

20   the input signal F1Q makes a transition to the one-state after
the clock pulse CK has clocked flip-flop F1. Therefore, for
that clock pulse period, the input to flip-flop F2 is high,
the Q output of flip-flop F2 is low, and the $\overline{Q}$ output of flip-
flop F2 is therefore high; consistent with the operation of

25   such D flip-flops. AND-gate G3 detects this condition of a
high input signal F1Q and a high output signal F2Q of flip-flop
F2 as being indicative of a transition of the input signal IN,
where AND-gate G3 generates an output signal OUT in response
thereto. The next immediate clock pulse CK sets flip-flop F2

30   to the high-state of the input signal F1Q, thereby causing the
$\overline{Q}$ output signal of flip-flop F2 to go to the low-state resulting
in disabling of AND-gate G3 and causing the output of AND-gate G3
to go to the zero-state. Therefore, the output of gate G3 is

one-set for one clock period occurring at the transition of
the input signal IN from the zero-state to the one-state.

Operation of asynchronous one-shot SOS will now be
discussed with reference to the following table

ROW	IN	LQ	CK	F1	F2	OUT
1	0	0	0	0	0	0
2	0	0	1	0	0	0
3	0	0	0	0	0	0
4	1	1	0	0	0	0
5	1	1	1	1	0	1
6	1	1	0	1	0	1
7	1	1	1	1	1	0
8	1	1	0	1	1	0
9	1	1	1	1	1	0
10	0	0	0	0	0	0

As an initial condition, synchronous one-shot SOS is
assumed to be in the zero-state as shown in the above table
which is consistent with a zero-state input signal IN which
asynchronously zero-sets latch L and where the zero-state of latch L
is synchronously shifted into flip-flops F1 and F2. Sequential
occurrence and drop-out of clock signal CK shown in rows 2
and 3 merely preserves the steady state zero-set conditions.

When the input signal IN goes to the one-state, latch L
will be one-set but synchronous flip-flops F1 and F2 will not
change state until the clock signal transition occurs as shown
in rows 4 and 5. When the clock signal CK makes a transition
to the one-state, flip-flop F1 will be clocked to the one-state
due to the one-state of the input signal LQ and flip-flop F2
will be clocked to again assume the zero-state due to the zero-
state of the input signal F1Q occurring immediately prior to
and during the occurrence of the clock pulse transition as
shown in row 5. Clock signal CK will again go to the zero-
state as shown in row 6 without changing the states of the

synchronous elements and will again make a transition to the one-state as shown in row 7 to again clock flip-flops F1 and F2. Because input signal LQ to flip-flop F1 has remained in the one-state, flip-flop F1 will be clocked to preserve the

5 one-state and because input signal F1Q to flip-flop F2 is now in the one-state, flip-flop F2 will be clocked to the one-state as shown in row 7.

Clock pulse CK will continue to go to the one-state and then to the zero-state as shown in rows 8 and 9 without

10 changing the state of the SOS circuits until the input signal IN goes low as shown in row 10. When the input signal IN goes low and flip-flop F2 is in the one-state, input signals $\overline{IN}$ and F2Q to gate G2 cause the output of gate G2 to go to the zero-state which will reset latch L and will reset flip-flops F1 and F2

15 with an asynchronous clear signal to clear inputs CR, resulting in the zero-state shown in row 10.

In an alternate sequence of operation, if the input signal IN that went to the one-state in row 4 were to go to the zero-state in row 5; operation would proceed as illustrated

20 independent of the state of input signal IN except that latch L and flip-flops F1 and F2 would be zero-set immediately after flip-flop F2 went to the one-state in row 7 instead of delaying through rows 7-10 until input signal IN went low as discussed above.

25 Output signal OUT is generated by AND-gate G3 in response to flip-flop F1 being one-set and flip-flop F2 being zero-set as shown in rows 5 and 6. As flip-flop F2 going to the one-state (row 7) terminates output pulse OUT, it enables AND-gate G2 to reset latch L and to reset flip-flops F1 and F2 when input

30 signal IN goes low, wherein flip-flop F2 being one-set indicates the completion of the output signal OUT.

<u>Description Of Fig 6H</u>

An output display arrangement will now be discussed
with reference to Fig 6H. An output CRT device such as models 601 and 602
manufactured by Tektronix of Beaverton, Oregon may be excited

5 with digital information from the correlator arrangement shown
in Fig 6D. The CRT accepts an X-axis analog signal and a
Y-axis analog signal for controlling the electron beam in the
X-axis and the Y-axis respectively. In one embodiment of the
present invention, a Z-digital-to-analog converter Z-DAC 646

10 may be used to excite the Y-axis input with an analog signal
related to the output signal sample magnitude Z_K and a K-digital-
to-analog converter K-DAC 647 may be used to excite the X-axis
input with an analog signal related to the output signal sample
address K. As K-counter 619 increments through the addresses

15 of the output signal samples Z_K, the addresses K are used to
excite K-DAC 647 to sweep the electron beam across the CRT
along the X-axis as the addresses K from K-counter 619 are
incremented toward increasing magnitudes. Similarly, as the
output signal samples Z_K are accessed from Z-RAM 614 in response

20 to addresses K from K-counter 619, the output signal sample
magnitude Z_K is used to excite Z-DAC 646 to control the Y-axis
amplitude of the CRT trace related to the magnitude of the
particular Z_K sample.

A CRT may be automatically synchronized with the

25 correlator of the present invention, wherein the K-addresses
from K-counter 619 defines the X-axis displacement of the
electron beam with K-DAC 647 and also accesses the related
output signal samples Z_K from Z-RAM 614 to define the Y-axis
displacement of the electron beam with Z-DAC 646. Because each

30 K-address defines a particular X-axis position on the CRT and
a particular output signal sample Z_K from Z-RAM 614, the same
output signal sample Z_K always corresponds to a particular
X-axis location on the CRT. As the output signal K from

Description Of Fig 6H

An output display arrangement will now be discussed
with reference to Fig 6H. An output CRT device such as model ____
manufactured by Tektronix of Beaverton, Oregon may be excited
5 with digital information from the correlator arrangement shown
in Fig 6D. The CRT accepts an X-axis analog signal and a
Y-axis analog signal for controlling the electron beam in the
X-axis and the Y-axis respectively. In one embodiment of the
present invention, a Z-digital-to-analog converter Z-DAC 646
10 may be used to excite the Y-axis input with an analog signal
related to the output signal sample magnitude Z_K and a K-digital-
to-analog converter K-DAC 647 may be used to excite the X-axis
input with an analog signal related to the output signal sample
address K. As K-counter 619 increments through the addresses
15 of the output signal samples Z_K, the addresses K are used to
excite K-DAC 647 to sweep the electron beam across the CRT
along the X-axis as the addresses K from K-counter 619 are
incremented toward increasing magnitudes. Similarly, as the
output signal samples Z_K are accessed from Z-RAM 614 in response
20 to addresses K from K-counter 619, the output signal sample
magnitude Z_K is used to excite Z-DAC 646 to control the Y-axis
amplitude of the CRT trace related to the magnitude of the
particular Z_K sample.

A CRT may be automatically synchronized with the
25 correlator of the present invention, wherein the K-addresses
from K-counter 619 defines the X-axis displacement of the
electron beam with K-DAC 647 and also accesses the related
output signal samples Z_K from Z-RAM 614 to define the Y-axis
displacement of the electron beam with Z-DAC 646. Because each
30 K-address defines a particular X-axis position on the CRT and
a particular output signal sample Z_K from Z-RAM 614, the same
output signal sample Z_K always corresponds to a particular
X-axis location on the CRT. As the output signal K from

K-counter 619 sweeps the electron beam across the CRT and as this output signal K from K-counter 619 also addresses the output signal samples Z_K from Z-RAM 614, the progressive updating of the output signal samples Z_K and the build-up of

5 the magnitude of the output signal samples is traced on the CRT as the magnitudes progress upward in the Y-axis for successive X-axis sweeps.

After the correlation and compositing operations have been completed such as controlled by compositor control 632 with

10 signal 636, K-counter 619 may free run continually accessing Z-RAM 614 without updating the data stored therein to provide for continuous refreshing of the CRT. This refreshing is accomplished by K-counter 619 continually counting in a sequence of K-addresses for accessing Z-RAM 614. The K-address outputs

15 of K-counter 619 and the output signal samples from Z-RAM Z_K continuously excite K-DAC 647 and Z-DAC 646 respectively to successively refresh the output signal sample displayed on the CRT.

In an alternate embodiment of a CRT display, a storage

20 CRT such as the model 602 storage CRT manufactured by Tektronix of Beaverton, Oregon may be used to display correlated and composited information, shown as CRT 649 in Fig 6H. Excitation of storage CRT may be the same as excitation of a refreshable CRT as discussed above with reference to Fig 6H. In an embodiment

25 where K-counter 619 is locked-up with output signal Lm from L-counter 618, refreshing for a refreshable CRT may not be provided. During correlation, output address K of K-counter 619 may be used for exciting the X-axis of the CRT through K-DAC 647 and output signal samples Z_K may be used for exciting the Y-axis of

30 the CRT through Z-DAC 646 to display the Y-amplitude of the output signal samples as the output signal samples Z_K are updated for each iteration of K-counter 619. When compositing and

correlation operations are completed, as controlled with
composite control 632 generating completion signal 636,
K-counter 619 may be locked-up, and may therefore discontinue
sweeps of CRT 649. A history of updates may be provided on

5 storage CRT 649 as the output signal samples Z_K are progressively
updated until the maximum update magnitudes, where the progressive
updates are preserved on the storage CRT as the output signal
samples are updated.

In a manual adaptively controlled embodiment, an

10 arrangement may be provided for an operator to discontinue
compositing operations such as by manually generating signal 636
to disable AND-gate 638 to disable sync signals from initiating
additional compositing-after correlation operations. In this
embodiment, an operator may monitor a CRT display, as discussed

15 above for CRT 649, to monitor the amplitudes of correlation
output peak signals. When the operator has determined that a
sufficient number of composites has been completed by viewing
the CRT display, the operator may discontinue compositing
operations such as disabling sync signal to gate 638 as described

20 above.

Description Of Figs 7A-7C

In accordance with another feature of the present invention, a signature correlation modem will be provided for a communication system to enhance communication operations. A

5 communication system 700 is shown in Fig 7A comprising an arrangement for communicating between digital device 710 and digital device 713 with signals 722 or 742 over a data link such as a telephone line. For simplicity of discussion, signal lines and the signals communicated thereon may each be referred

10 to with the same reference number.

Prior art communication systems may use a modulator and demodulator (modem) arrangement to modulate a carrier signal with digital data for communication from a transmitting digital device and for demodulating the transmitted signal at a receiving

15 digital device. Modulation is provided for ease of communication, wherein digital pulses may be used to modulate an audio frequency carrier for transmission over an audio frequency telephone data link and digital pulses may be used to modulate a radio frequency (RF) carrier for transmission over an RF data link. Digital

20 devices 710 and 713 may be digital computers, Teletypewriters, data entry systems, and other well known devices for communicating data. In prior art systems; modems 711 and 712 may be any well known prior art modems but, in accordance with the present invention, modems 711 and 712 may be chirp generator and correlator

25 modems.

Well known prior art modems may provide frequency modulation wherein a digital data one-state may generate a lower frequency audio signal and a digital data zero-state may generate a higher frequency audio signal. The audio signal may

30 be transmitted on a data link to a prior art demodulator in a receiving modem which demodulates the high and low frequency transmitted signals to reconstruct the digital one-bits and zero-bits for subsequent use by a digital receiving device.

Prior art modems must have an adequate noise immunity to reduce errors to an acceptable level, but prior art modems are very sensitive to the amount of noise or the signal-to-noise ratio, characteristics of the data link, noise bursts, and other

5   transmission phenomenon that degrades transmitted signals. Further, data rates are limited by the transmission characteristics such as noise because the shorter data-bits associated with higher data rate signals either require higher frequency carriers or a reduced number of cycles of a lower frequency carrier; wherein

10   signal degradation is related to carrier frequency and to the number of cycles of the carrier. For example, degradation of telephone line transmissions is increased as the transmitting frequency is increased. Further, the fewer the number of carrier signal cycles per transmitted digital data-bit, the smaller the

15   amount of signal averaging or filtering that is possible and the lower the noise immunity of the system. In prior art systems, the limitation of having a transmitted carrier with a period no longer than the pulse width of the transmitted digital data pulse imposes a severe constraint which limits data rates and increases

20   error rates.

Prior art modems are manufactured in quantity by many different companies. For example, the Data Communication Products department of the General Electric Company in Lynchburg, Virginia manufactures a range of modems defined as modem models TDM

25   and the Diginet series modems. Modems and modem error rates are discussed in Datamation in an article published in October 1974 Evaluating Modems by Ritchie and in an article Reducing Telephone Network Errors by Norman published in October 1971; wherein these articles are incorporated herein by reference. Digital devices

30   may communicate information in parallel digital form and data links may communicate information in serial digital form such as in the well known Teletypewriter serial data format. Commercial devices are available for providing communication

between a digital system operating with parallel digital words
and a modem and data link operating with serial digital words,
where the serial digital words may have a particular format with
a start-bit, a pair of stop-bits, and a plurality of data-bits

5   including a parity data-bit. This well known word format is
described in an applications note by General Instrument Corp of
Hicksville, New York entitled Using The UAR/T In Data Communications
by Paul R. Ahrens which is incorporated herein by reference.
Further, description of the operation of the General Instrument

10   Corp UAR/T Universal Synchronizer Receiver/Transmitter AY-5-1012
is provided in data sheets distributed by General Instrument Corp
which are incorporated herein by reference. Other universal
asynchronous receiver/transmitter devices are available such as
from Standard Microsystems Corp of Hauppauge, New York model

15   COM2502 which is described in a preliminary data sheet dated
June 1972 and from Motorola Semiconductor Products Inc of
Phoenix, Arizona models MC2257L and MC2259L which are described
in Electronic Products Magazine published on February 21, 1972
on page 56 therein; wherein these descriptions are incorporated

20   herein by reference. In view of the above, communication of
digital data is well known in the art but prior art modems do
not use correlation techniques and therefore have limited
communications capability in the presence of noise and data link
disturbances.

25   In accordance with one feature of the present invention,
a correlator arrangement is provided for enhancing noise immunity
by enhancing signal-to-noise ratio through correlation. As will
be shown below, short digital pulses may be used to modulate a
lengthy chirp signal; wherein a modulated chirp signal may be

30   significantly longer than the modulating digital pulse and wherein
a correlator may be used in the receiving system to demodulate
the chirp signal for improving the signal-to-noise ratio and for
compressing the long chirp signal to a short pulse having a time

resolution at least as good as the width of the modulating digital pulse.

In accordance with another feature of the present invention, an arrangement is provided for generating a plurality
5 of chirp signals which may be continuous without spacings therebetween or may be superimposed or overlapping therebetween. In a communication embodiment, it may be necessary to generate a plurality of chirp signals for modulation by a plurality of digital data-bits, wherein the digital data-bits may have close
10 spacing therebetween and therefore the relatively long chirp signals may overlap therebetween, as will be discussed with reference to Fig 7 hereinafter. Other embodiments such as a geophysical embodiment, a radar embodiment, and a sonar embodiment may also use such continuous or overlapping chirp signals. In
15 accordance with this feature of the present invention, a multi-chirp signal generating device is provided for generating a plurality of chirp signals that are continuous or overlapping therebetween. These continuous or overlapping chirp signals may be synchronized, wherein the plurality of chirp signals may
20 begin at the same time as discussed above for a geophysical embodiment, may be staggered in a periodic fashion as discussed hereinafter for a communication embodiment, may be overlapping in random fashion, or may be overlapping in other arrangements. This overlapping chirp feature of the present invention provides
25 for overlapping different chirp signals, wherein the overlapping chirp signals may have poor correlation therebetween and therefore may be readily separatable through correlation with different pilot signals.

Chirp signals are discussed herein to exemplify the
30 features of the present invention. Although a chirp signal may sometimes be used to identify a linear frequency sweep signal, the term chirp signal is herein intended to mean a generalized signal form and is not intended to be limited to a linearly swept frequency.

-218-

A more detailed description of the embodiment shown in
Fig 7A will now be provided.

System 700 comprises   digital device 710 such as a
Teletypewriter for generating digital data signals 714 and 734 to
5   modem 711 which modulates chirp signals with the digital signals
from digital device 710 for transmission on   data link 722 and 742
such as a telephone line to receiving modem 712. A correlation
demodulator in modem 712 compresses modulated chirp signals into
signal peaks or short pulses for output to receiving digital
10   device 713 which may be a Teletypewriter. Teletypewriters are
well known digital typewriters which generate digital signals in
serial form for transmission over a data link and which receive
such digital signals in serial form to record an output message
with a typewriter or a tape punch in response to the received
15   digital signals. Well known digital typewriters may be used
such as the Teletypewriter model ASR-33 manufactured by the
Teletype Corporation of Skokie, Illinois. Other digital devices
may be used as sources 710 and as destinations 713 of digital
data. For example, digital computer source 710 may transmit
20   digital data 714 and 734 onto telephone line 722 and 742 through
modem 711 and digital computer receiver 713 may receive digital
data 726 and 746 from a telephone line 722 and 742 through
receiving modem 712. Further, other data links may be used such
as a microwave data link, a radio data link, and other well known
25   data links.

Operation of the chirp-correlator modem feature of the
present invention will now be discussed with reference to the
signals shown in Figs 7B and 7C.

Digital data may be received from a prior art data
30   generator such as a Teletypewriter in the form shown as signals
714 and 734 (Figs 7B and 7C) having a zero-level start-bit and
a pair of one-level stop-bits with a sequence of digital data-
bits contained therebetween. Similarly, digital data may be

provided from the receiver modem in the form shown as signals 726

and 746 (Figs 7B and 7C) having a start-bit, two stop-bits, and a

plurality of data-bits consistent with modulating signals 714

and 734. Data signal 714 may be provided to a modulator in a

5 modem for modulation of chirp pilot signals.

In order to obtain improvements such as enhanced noise

immunity, reduced bandwidth, and increased data rates; digital

data-bits of signals 714 and 734 are used to modulate signals

such as chirp signals 715-721 and 735-741 respectively. If

10 each transition of signals 714 and 734 initiates a chirp signal and

if chirp signals are superimposed or multiplexed onto a transmission

line, a correlator in a receiving modem can be used to demodulate

the chirp carrier signals by correlating the multiplexed chirp

signals with a chirp operator or pilot signal to reconstruct the

15 digital modulating signals such as transition signals and to

reconstruct the digital word in response to the reconstructed

transition signals.

The vertical line schematic notation discussed above

will be used to exemplify the data communication embodiment with

20 reference to Figs 7B and 7C. Chirp signals 715-721 may be

initiated at a transition of digital signal 714. For example,

chirp signal 715 starts at the transition to the start-bit of

signal 714, chirp signal 716 starts at the transition from the

start-bit to the following logical one-bit, and chirp

25 signals 716-721 correspond to the subsequent transitions of

signal 714 from one-bits to zero-bits or from zero-bits to

one-bits. For this embodiment, the two-sets of adjacent one-states,

which are the two adjacent one-states in the middle of signal 714

and the two adjacent stop-bits at the end of signal 714, are

30 shown without a transition inbetween adjacent one-states and

therefore are shown without a chirp signal being started inbetween

adjacent one-states. Adjacent one-states or adjacent zero-states

will not provide a transition and therefore will not initiate an

intermediate chirp signal. This is a characteristic associated
with a non-return-to-zero (NRZ) signal. Well known techniques
can be used to convert a non-return to zero (NRZ) signal to a
return-to-zero (RZ) signal and an RZ signal to a NRZ signal.

5   Further, other conversion techniques permit generation of
chirp signals in response to positive transitions, negative
transitions, absences of transitions such as with adjacent NRZ
bits that are the same (ones or zeros) or in response to other
characteristics of a signal. Generation of chirp signals 715-721

10   is shown in Fig 7B in response to both positive and negative
transitions of an NRZ signal and generation of up-chirp signals
and down-chirp signals are shown in Fig 7C in response to negative
and positive transitions respectively of an NRZ signal.

Signal 722 represents the summation, or multiplexing,

15   or mixing of chirp signals 715-721 associated with transitions
of signal 714 onto a single transmission line, wherein the
frequency related vertical lines associated with signals 715-721
are shown projected vertically downward onto multiplexed signal 722
to illustrate schematically the effects of multiplexing chirp

20   signals 715-721. Signal 722 provides a complex waveform, wherein
it is not readily obvious where the various chirp signals start
or end nor the specific digital representation of this multiplexed
chirp signal. Multiplexed signal 722 is shown as a set of
multiplexed chirp signals without noise or distortions. When

25   such a signal is transmitted over a data link, ambiguities such
as noise, signal dropouts, distortions and other perturbing

characteristics may be introduced; wherein subsequent correlation may be used to reconstruct the original signal even in the presence of such perturbations. For simplicity of discussion, such perturbations are not shown in the signals of Figs 7B and 7C.

5 For the present example, digital signal 714 may be assumed to be generated by a Teletypewriter digital device 710 and chirp signals 715-721 may be assumed to be generated by chirp modulator 750 in response to digital signal 714. Multiplexed chirp signal 722 is transmitted from chirp modulator 750 to a correlation demodulator 751

10 in receiving modem 712 such as over a telephone data link 722. Correlator in receiving modem 712 correlates multiplexed chirp signal 722 with pilot signal 723, wherein pilot signal 723 may be a duplicate of each individual chirp signal 715-721.

Correlation of multiplexed signal 722 with chirp pilot

15 signal 723 may generate a correlation output signal 724. Correlation output signal 724 provides a correlation output peak signal in each phase or time related bit position having good quality correlation between operator signal 723 and multiplexed signal 722. Therefore, correlation output signal 724 provides a

20 correlation peak related to the start of each multiplexed chirp signal 715-721 related to each digital transition associated with digital signal 714. Output signal 724 may be processed by digital circuitry to reconstruct signal 714 as signal 726. In one embodiment, each correlation output peak of signal 724 is

25 converted to a digital pulse such as with a digital peak detector circuit to generate digital pulses shown in signal 725 corresponding to correlation peaks in signal 724 which in turn correspond to transitions of digital bits in signal 714. Processing of digital pulses 725 may be performed by clocking a trigger flip-flop to

30 reconstruct digital signal 714 as output signal 726, wherein each clock pulse to a trigger flip-flop may cause the trigger flip-flop to change state and wherein each clock pulse in signal 725 may cause a transition of a trigger flip-flop state to generate signal 726 to reconstruct original digital signal 714.

Prior art systems often use modulator-demodulator (modem) devices for modulating a fixed frequency carrier signal with digital signals for transmission to a remote location. In accordance with the teachings of the present invention, the

5   chirp signature generator may be considered to be a novel form of a modulator and a correlator may be considered to be a novel form of a demodulator.

In prior art systems, each digital bit modulates a constant frequency carrier signal; wherein the one-bits may

10   modulate a one-kilohertz carrier signal and the zero-bits may modulate a two-kilohertz carrier signal. The duration of time of such prior art modulated signals is related to the bit period. For example, a Teletypewriter may operate at a 110-baud data rate having a period of approximately 9-milliseconds per bit representing

15   only 9-cycles of a one-kilohertz modulated carrier signal and 18-cycles of a two-kilohertz modulated carrier signal.

In accordance with the data communication feature of the present invention, a correlator may be used to compress a long signal such as a long chirp signal into a short peak signal,

20   wherein the chirp signal may overlap many bit-time periods and may be compressed with a correlator demodulator into a short peak signal having a time resolution less than one-bit time period. For example, modulated chirp signals 715-721 (Fig 7B) are shown having a duration of 8-bit time periods and being

25   compressed into correlation output pulses shown in signal 724 having a duration of approximately 1/4-bit time period; thereby providing chirp signal compression by a factor of approximately 32. Similarly, longer chirp signals may be provided for greater signal enhancement and detection which may permit compression to

30   a correspondingly narrow pulse. Signal enhancement may be related to the number of samples or number of cycles associated with a transmitted signal, wherein the relatively short period and small number of carrier cycles associated with data-bits transmitted

with prior art modems will not permit signal enhancement to the degree achievable with the relatively long chirp signal period and large number of cycles associated with data-bits transmitted with the modem of the present invention.

5   An alternate communication embodiment will now be discussed with reference to Fig 7C, wherein a one-to-zero transition of signal 734 (identical to signal 714 above) initiates up-chirp signal 735 and a zero-to-one transition of signal 734 initiates down-chirp signal 736. As discussed with reference to

10   Fig 7B above, a plurality of chirp signals may be generated for digital bits 1, 2, 3, 4, 6, 7, and 9 as signals 735-741 respectively. Chirp signals related to digital bits 1, 3, 6, and 9 representing one-to-zero transitions are shown as up-chirp signals 735, 737, 739, and 741. Chirp signals related to digital

15   bits 2, 4, and 7 representing zero-to-one transitions are shown as down-chirp signals 736, 738, and 740. Chirp signals 735-741 are multiplexed together to form MUXED signal 742 for transmission over a data link; wherein MUXED signal 742 is formed by superimposing chirp signals 735-741, as discussed for generating signal 722 of

20   Fig 7B above.

Multiplexed signal 742 may be communicated over a data link to a receiving modem, where it is demodulated with each of two pilot signals, pilot 1 signal 743A being an up-chirp signal and pilot 2 signal 743B being a down-chirp signal corresponding to

25   modulated up-chirp and down-chirp signals 735-741. Correlation of MUXED signal 742 with pilot 1 signal 743A generates CORR 1 signal 744A having correlation output peaks representing the sequence of up-chirp signals in MUXED signal 742 and, similarly, correlation of MUXED signal 742 with pilot 2 signal 743B generates

30   CORR 1 signal 744B having correlation output peaks representing the sequence of down-chirp signals in MUXED signal 742. Therefore, one-to-zero transitions and zero-to-one transitions may be individually multiplexed onto a single data link as up-chirp signals

and as down-chirp signals respectively and may be demultiplexed
or separated out by correlation with related up-chirp and down-
chirp pilot signals 743A and 744B respectively to generate
correlation output peaks related to the one-to-zero transitions
5   and zero-to-one transitions respectively of data signal 734.
As discussed with reference to Fig 7B above, CORR 1 signal 744B
and CORR 2 signal 744B may each be converted to digital clock
pulses, wherein CORR 1 signal 744A and CORR 2 signal 744B may be
converted to clock signals 745A and 745B respectively representing
10 the zero-setting and the one-setting respectively of the modulating
digital data signal 734 to generate reconstructed data signal 746.
The hardware embodiment used to generate these signals will be
discussed in detail with reference to Figs 7D-7I hereinafter.

      The embodiment discussed with reference to Fig 7C above
15 illustrates the generation of a plurality of different chirp
signals such as up-chirp and down-chirp signals. The degree of
separation of the different chirp signals that are multiplexed
together is related to the degree of correlation between the
different modulated chirp signals or the different pilot signals.
20 Up-chirp pilot signal 743A and down-chirp pilot signal 743B do
not correlate therebetween and therefore permit good separation
by correlation of up-chirp and down-chirp signals that are
multiplexed together. Many other pilot signals may be provided
that do not correlate well or correlate poorly therebetween and
25 therefore provide good separation of signals related thereto.
Therefore, the discussion relative to Fig 7C provides a more
general teaching, which is the separation of a plurality of
different signals multiplexed together by modulating with different
signature signals to be separated; wherein the different modulated
30 signals may provide poor correlation therebetween for separation
of modulated signals therebetween. The arrangement discussed
with reference to Fig 7B provides separation between chirp signals
that are multiplexed together having a separable time relationship

therebetween. The arrangement discussed with reference to
Fig 7C provides separation between chirp signals that are
multiplexed together because of both, a time relationship therebetwee
and a signature relationship therebetween. Therefore, in accordance

5 with another feature of the present invention, a plurality of
signals having different signatures may be modulated to permit
separation therebetween. For example, in a geophysical exploration
embodiment, a plurality of chirp signals may be superimposed
together such as by mixing different chirp signals prior to

10 exciting a VIBROSEIS generator or by generating a different chirp
signal with each of a plurality of VIBROSEIS generators to ensonify
subsurface structures with a plurality of chirp signals simultaneousl
or overlapping therebetween. For another example, in a digital
communication embodiment a plurality of sets of data may be

15 used to modulated different signature signals, may be superimposed
therebetween, and may be transmitted substantially simultaneously
or in overlapping fashion over a data link for increasing effective
data rates. Separation of the different signature signals may be
provided with a plurality of correlators, where each correlator

20 may correlate multiplexed signal 742 with a different signature
pilot signal. Therefore, each correlator may separate out
signals having a signature related to the signature of the pilot
signal of that correlator and may not separate out other modulated
signals having signatures different than the signature of the pilot

25 signal of that correlator. In accordance with this feature of
the present invention, a significant improvement over prior art
systems may be achieved. For example, prior art systems provide
for multiplexing different carrier or subcarrier frequencies
together such as by transmission of different radio signals on

30 different carrier frequencies; while the system of the present
invention provides for transmitting the same frequencies having
differences in signal signatures to provide separation therebetween.
Therefore, in accordance with the present invention many different
modulated signals may be superimposed or multiplexed on a single

35 frequency band.

The communication embodiment of the present invention will now be discussed in more detail.

Prior art communication technology utilizes various constant subcarrier frequencies to be modulated with different

5 information so that each constant subcarrier and information modulated thereon may be separated with filters tuned to the related subcarrier frequency. Therefore, it is important in prior art systems that the subcarrier frequencies have a constant frequency for separation with filters. Further, each subcarrier

10 frequency requires a certain bandwidth, wherein a plurality of subcarrier frequencies require a bandwidth related to the sum of bandwidths of each subcarrier frequency, modulation sidebands, and the number of different subcarrier frequencies.

In accordance with the present invention, a variable

15 frequency signal such as a chirp signal is provided that can be separated from other signals in response to a signal signature, wherein separation or demodulation may be performed with a correlator device in contrast to the constant frequency tuned filters of the prior art. Therefore, this feature of the present

20 invention provides for modulation of correlatable signals having signatures that permit separation with a correlator, wherein the modulated signals may be chirp signals. Signals having different signatures such as an up-chirp signal and a down-chirp signal may be separated with correlation techniques.

25 An arrangement will now be described for using variable frequency correlatable signals to perform the operations which are performed in the prior art with constant frequency carrier signals; wherein this feature of the present invention provides significant advantages over the prior art systems. For simplicity, chirp

30 signals will be provided in the present discussion but any other signal form that satisfies these teachings of the present invention may be used in place of chirp signals.

Each of a plurality of signals may be used to modulate
a chirp generator, as discussed for a digital signal embodiment
with reference to Figs 7B and 7C herein. If a first data signal
modulates an up-chirp signal and a second data signal modulates

5 a down-chirp signal, then the modulating signals may be transmitted
together and separated with a correlator in contrast to prior art
arrangements for modulating each of a plurality of different
fixed frequency carrier signals with a data signal and separating
each modulating signal with a tuned filter arrangement. Because of

10 the similarity of functions, a chirp modulated with a data signal
may be termed a carrier signal or a subcarrier signal and a
plurality of chirp subcarrier signals separable therebetween
through correlation may be used as a multiple subcarrier
communication arrangement. A multiple chirp subcarrier arrangement

15 may be implemented in accordance with the arrangement discussed
with reference to Figs 7D-7F. A different signal or data
channel may be input to a different modulation channel similar
to modulation channel comprising counter 753, decoder 755, and
a plurality of chirp generators 757-758. If the chirp generators

20 associated with each counter 753 and decoder 755 have the same
subcarrier chirp, then the data-bits associated with that signal
modulate the subcarrier chirp signal. Similarly if a second data
signal modulates chirp subcarrier signals with a second modulator
channel comprising counters 754 and decoder 756 and related chirp

25 generators having the same chirp characteristic therebetween but
having different chirp characteristic than the first channel,
the second signal will modulate a different chirp subcarrier
signal. The two signals modulating different chirp subcarriers
may be multiplexed together on the same data link as discussed

30 with reference to Figs 7B and 7C above and may be separated
therebetween with a correlation demodulator such as described
with reference to Fig 7F, wherein each of a plurality of
correlators 766 and 769 provide correlation with reference to a

different chirp subcarrier signal for separation of each of a plurality of chirp signals. This chirp subcarrier modulating arrangement can be better understood by a discussion with reference to Fig 7C. Fig 7C has been used to illustrate modulation of an

5   up-chirp signal in response to a negative transition signal and a down-chirp signal in response to a positive transition signal. Alternately, an up-chirp signal may be modulated with a first data signal and a down-chirp signal may be modulated with a different second data signal; wherein the modulation of a single chirp

10   signal with a data signal has been discussed above with reference to Fig 7B. Therefore, assuming that the up-chirp modulated signals multiplexed into signal 742 are related to a first data signal and the down-chirp modulated signals multiplexed into signal 742 are related to a second data signal; then correlation in a demodulator

15   with pilot signal 743A will separate out the first data signal modulating the up-chirp subcarrier and with pilot signal 743B will separate out the second data signal modulating the down-chirp subcarrier. Therefore, the first data signal may be shown as correlation signal 744A and the second data signal may be shown

20   as correlation signal 744B corresponding to correlation of the multiplexed signal 742 with up-chirp pilot signal 743A and with down-chirp pilot signal 743B respectively. Correlation signal 744A and correlation signal 744B may each be used to reconstruct the different modulating data signals as discussed with reference to

25   Figs 7B and 7F wherein correlation signal 724 is used to reconstruct data signal 726 for each subcarrier chirp signal and may be used to communicate different portions of a single data signal such as discussed for the communication of positive and negative transitions of a single data signal 734 with reference to Fig 7C

30   or can be used to transmit a plurality of different data signals as discussed immediately above.

Output signals from the signature modem arrangement of the present invention may be very long continuous signals. Therefore, particular advantages may be achieved by using the

35   correlate on-the-fly and output on-the-fly features of the present invention in combination with the signature modem feature of the present invention.

Description Of Fig 7D

A detailed hardware embodiment will now be discussed
in accordance with the communication system 700 discussed with
reference to Fig 7A above and the examples discussed with
5   reference to the waveforms shown in Figs 7B and 7C above.
Modems 711 and 712 each include a modulator 750 and a demodulator 751
wherein a modulator in accordance with the present invention
will be discussed hereafter with reference to Figs 7D and 7E
and a demodulator in accordance with the present invention will
10 be discussed hereinafter with reference to Fig 7F.

One embodiment of modulator 750 is shown in Fig 7D for
providing a plurality of chirp signals in response to transitions
of digital signals 714 and 734 generated by a digital device 710.
A serial digital signal 714 is received by counters 753 and 754,
15 wherein counters 753 and 754 may be any well known digital counter
and in a preferred embodiment may be S/N 7490 four-bit decade
counter circuits. Counter 753 may be incremented by positive
transitions of signals 714 and 734 such as transitions from a
zero-state to a one-state and counter 754 may be incremented by
20 negative transitions of signals 714 and 734 such as transitions
from a one-state to a zero-state. Counter 754 is shown with
inverted input signals wherein transitions of input signals 714
and 734 are inverted by inverter 752, which may be an S/N 7404
inverter circuit, to clock counter 754 with negative transitions
25 of signals 714 and 734 such as transitions from a one-state to
a zero-state. Therefore, counters 753 and 754 may count different
transitions, wherein counter 753 may count non-inverted or positive
transitions and counter 754 may count inverted or negative
transitions of signals 714 and 734.

30 Decoders 755 and 756 decode the count states of
counters 753 and 754 respectively, wherein a sequence of transitions
of input signals 714 and 734 will sequence through a plurality
of counter states to sequence through a plurality of
output states for decoders 755 and 756. Decoders 755 and 756 may

be S/N 7442A BCD-to-decimal decoders for decoding BCD outputs

of counters 753 and 754 to select an output signal on one of ten

lines for each decoder. Each output line from decoders 755

and 756 is connected to a different chirp generator 757-758,

5   wherein selecting of a decoder output line in response to a

transition of signals 714 and 734 is used to initiate a chirp

signal from a chirp generator 757-758.

For the embodiment shown in Fig 7D, chirp generators 757-75

may generate identical signature chirp signals or may generate

10   different signature chirp signals. In the embodiment discussed

with reference to Fig 7B, each chirp signal signature is the same

for data-bits having either a positive or a negative transition

as shown in waveforms 715-721. Therefore chirp generators 757-758

may generate identical chirp signals when selected by decoders 755

15   and 756. In the embodiment discussed with reference to Fig 7C,

each positive transition from a zero-state to a one-state of

waveforms 714 and 734 initiates a down-chirp signal such as

BIT 2 signal 736 and each negative transition from a one-state to

a zero-state of waveforms 714 and 734 initiates an up-chirp

20   signal such as BIT 1 signal 735. As discussed above, counter 753 may

be responsive to zero-to-one level transitions and therefore may

control a plurality of ten chirp generators including chirp

generator 757 for generating down-chirp signals related to the

zero-to-one transitions of signals 714 and 734 and counter 754 may

25   be responsive to one-to-zero level transitions and therefore may

control a plurality of ten chirp generators including chirp

generator 758 for generating up-chirp signals related to one-to-

zero transitions of signals 714 and 734. Therefore, steering of

the input positive and negative transitions to counters 753 and

30   754 respectively permits control of down-chirp signals with

positive transitions and up-chirp signals with negative transitions

respectively; or conversely.

Chirp signals from chirp generators 757-758 may be
summed together with operational amplifier 759 including input
summing resistors and a feedback resistor and further representing
line drive capability to drive the data link with signals 722

5   and 742. Operational amplifier 759 is typical of well known
prior art operational amplifiers such as the μA709 and μA741
operational amplifiers manufactured by Fairchild Semiconductor
of Sunnyvale, California. The summing of signals with operational
amplifiers as shown for amplifier 759 is well known in the art,

10 as discussed in the reference to Korn and to Levine provided
hereinafter.

The communication arrangement set forth in Fig 7D
can be further exemplified with the signals set forth in Fig 3D,
which will now be used to exemplify a multiple pilot or multiple

15 carrier communication arrangement with reference to the arrangement
set forth in Fig 7D. A first modulated carrier signal may be an
up-chirp signal 336 and a second modulated carrier signal may be
a down-chirp signal 337. Signals 336 and 337 may be multiplexed
together to form a multiple carrier signal or may be controlled

20 separately to maintain discrete and separate carrier signals.
For simplicity of discussion, modulated carrier signals 336
and 337 are shown as equal length chirp signals having the same
sweep frequency range where signal 336 is an up-chirp signal and
signal 337 is a down-chirp signal. Modulated carrier signals

25 may be similar chirps having up-chirp and down-chirp sweeps as
shown in Fig 3D or may be other modulated carrier signals such
as exponential chirp signals or signals having particular
signature characteristics for demodulation with a correlator
device. Further, modulated carrier signals 336 and 337 are shown

30 having equal length and starting at the same time for simplicity
of discussion. In alternate embodiments, modulated carrier
signals 336 and 337 may have different envelope lengths, different
signature characteristics, different sweep frequency ranges,
different starting times, and other such characteristics without

35 departing of the teachings of the present invention.

With reference to Figs 3D and 7D, a first channel may receive a first data signal with counter 753 and a second channel may receive a second data signal with counter 754 for distribution to first channel chirp generators 757, etc and

5   second channel chirp generators 758, etc. The first channel chirp generators may generate up-chirp signals such as signal 336 and the second channel chirp generators may generate down-chirp signals such as signal 337. If the same digital data were entered into both channels of Fig 7D, similar up-chirp and down-chirp

10   signals would be generated at corresponding times as shown in Fig 3D. For example, a first data-bit input to the first channel may be represented by up-chirp signal 338 and a first data-bit input to the second channel may be represented by down-chirp signal 339. Similarly, a second data-bit or transition entered

15   into the first channel may be represented by up-chirp signal 340 and a second data-bit entered into the second channel may be represented by down-chirp signal 341. Data-bit signals 338-341 may be multiplexed together such as with operational amplifier 759, as discussed above with reference to Fig 7D, to provide multiplexed

20   signal 342 representing the sum of signals 338-341. After communication, separation of the up-chirp carrier signals and the down-chirp carrier signals may be performed with a plurality of correlators as shown in Fig 7F, wherein a first correlator 766 may correlate the multiplexed signal 342 with an up-chirp

25   pilot signal 336 to generate output signal-1 343 and a second correlator 769 may correlate the multiplexed signal 342 with a down-chirp pilot signal 337 to generate output signal-2 334. Output signal-1 343 and output signal-2 344 are similar because they represent the same digital signal input to each channel for

30   this particular simplified example. Output signal-1 343 and output signal-2 344 may each be peak detected with peak detectors 767 and 770 respectively and used to reconstruct the digital input signals such as with output trigger flip-flop 768

as described above. Ability to modulate each of a plurality

of different chirp carrier signals permits a plurality of different

chirp signals to be multiplexed together for transmission,

wherein each type of chirp signal may represent a different

5　carrier signal for modulation with a different data signal for

communication. At the receiver, each carrier signal may be

separated out and demodulated with a correlator having a pilot

signal corresponding to the carrier chirp signal for separation

and demodulation.

10　　　　In view of the above, a plurality of digital signals

can be used to modulate different chirp carrier signals or other

signals for separation or demodulation through correlation;

wherein the modulation of different chirp signals may be defined

as carrier modulation because each carrier channel represented

15　by a different type of chirp signal can be separated from each

other carrier channel such as with a correlation demodulator in

a receiver.

　　　　In a data communication example discussed above with

reference to Figs 3D and 7D, a plurality of carrier modulated

20　frequency sweeps may be provided, wherein each carrier may have

an identical frequency band or a similar frequency band and wherein

modulated chirp signals 336 and 337 may have similar frequency ranges.

The difference between these chirp carrier signals that permits

separation therebetween may be in the way the same frequency band

25　is utilized to accomodate a plurality of different signature

signals such as with an up-chirp signature or with a down-chirp

signature; wherein the up-chirp and down-chirp signals may be

swept through the same frequency band but in different directions.

Therefore, difference of carrier signatures may be provided

30　having the same or similar or overlapping band or range of

frequencies yet still be separable therebetween because of the

different characteristic signature of each chirp signal independent

of the common frequency band. This can be contrasted to prior

art systems wherein a plurality of carrier frequencies are provided and wherein each carrier frequency has substantially a constant frequency and has a different frequency than other carrier frequencies. Because the prior art must use a different frequency

5 band for each carrier or subcarrier, the bandwidth required for a plurality of carrier channels is related to the sum of the bandwidths of each of the plurality of channels. In the system of the present invention, a plurality of channels may be modulated with signals having different correlation signatures but having

10 the same band or overlapping bands of frequencies. Therefore, in accordance with this feature of the present invention, a plurality of modulation carrier signals may be provided without increasing the bandwidth requirements over a single modulation carrier.

In view of the above, additional correlation carriers

15 can be added to a communication system without requiring an increase in bandwidth as with prior art systems.

A further improvement in data communication may be obtained from an increase in data rates permissable with a correlator modem arrangement. In prior art systems; as the data

20 rate increases, the time interval for transmitting a data-bit decreases and therefore noise immunity is reduced because of the smaller interval of transmitted carrier signal per data-bit. For example, a higher data rate provides a shorter data-bit period and therefore, assuming that data rates are increased but

25 modulating frequencies are maintained constant, a reduced number of carrier cycles are provided for each transmitted data-bit. The reduced time interval for each data-bit for higher data rates reduces the ability to improve the signal-to-noise ratio because of this reduced number of cycles or related effects;

30 wherein signal-to-noise ratio and related error rates are major factors in determining data rates of a data link. In the system of the present invention, a chirp carrier modulation envelope is not limited to a related data-bit period. For example, Fig 7B

shows a start-bit for communicated signal 714, wherein the start-bit initiates generation of an up-chirp signal 715, and wherein up-chirp signal 715 is in no way limited in duration by the width of the start-bit of data signal 714. Therefore, even if

5   data rates of signal 714 are increased causing a reduced data-bit time interval, the duration of the chirp signal envelopes may be preserved. Further, a long chirp period may be tolerated because the correlation operation "compresses" a chirp signal into a "pulse" as shown with correlation signal 724, wherein

10 the time resolution of reconstructed digital data 714 may be related to the resolution of the peaks of correlator output signal 724 and wherein peaks of correlator output signal 724 may have a sharpness and related resolution that are a function of the quality of the correlation such as with the type of signatures,

15 the number of octaves traversed by the chirp signals, and the length of the chirp signal. Therefore, it can be seen that higher data rates are possible without reducing the modulation chirp envelope duration and by preserving a high signal-to-noise ratio inherent in a correlation embodiment with a long chirp

20 signature; wherein data rates may be increased without the same impact of constraints imposed upon prior art communications systems.

In view of the above, the system of the present invention can provide a significant increase in the amount of

25 data that can be communicated on a data link due to the ability to multiplex a plurality of different carrier signals without significantly increasing bandwidth requirements and because data rates may be increased due to the high noise immunity associated with the chirp communication embodiment of the present invention.

30   Yet another communication feature of the present invention provides for simultaneous communication of information in a plurality of directions or to a plurality of destinations, wherein each destination may demodulate or separate out the

-236-

appropriate information through correlation. This feature will now be described with reference to Figs 3D and 7A for a data communications embodiment providing duplex communication over a data link. Full-duplex communication involves transmission

5   of information simultaneously in both directions with the receiving and the transmitting of information simultaneously. For example, digital device 710 may be generating data signals 714 and 734 to modulator 750 in originating modem 711 and may be simultaneously receiving data signals 726 and 746 from

10 demodulator 751 in originating modem 711. Transmitted information from modulator 750 may be multiplexed onto data link 722 and 742 simultaneously with the receiving of information impressed on data link 722 and 742 by answering modem 712.

The prior art provides full-duplex communication by

15 transmitting on a first frequency and receiving on a second frequency. For example, acoustic modem DC-3100 manufactured by Novation Inc of Tarzana, California originates with digital signals for transmission on 1270 Hz and 1070 Hz for mark-bits and space-bits respectively and answers with digital signals for

20 transmission on frequencies of 2225 Hz and 2025 Hz for mark-bits and space-bits respectively. Because originate and answer information is provided on different frequency bands, filters in the modem may be used to receive an answer on one frequency band while simultaneously transmitting information on a second

25 frequency band, which is known as full-duplex operation.

In accordance with the present invention, digital information may be used to modulate chirp signals, as discussed with reference to Figs 7B and 7C, wherein an originating modem may transmit a first modulated signal having a first signature

30 and may receive a second modulated signal having a second signature; wherein the answering modem may receive the first signature modulated signal and may transmit the second signature modulated signal; and wherein the first and second signature modulated signals may have different signatures and may therefore be

35 separable therebetween. For example, a first modulated signal may be an up-chirp signal and a second modulated signal may be a down-chirp signal for providing separation therebetween through correlation.   -237-

The full-duplex communication arrangement of the present invention will now be discussed with reference to Fig 3D. Up-chirp signal 336 may be selected for the modulation carrier of originating modem 711 and may be selected for the pilot signal

5 of the correlator demodulator of answering modem 712. Further, down-chirp signal 337 may be selected for the pilot signal of the correlator demodulator of originating modem 711 and may be selected for the modulation carrier of answering modem 712. Originating modem 711 may generate a sequence of up-chirp signals 338 and

10 340 to answering modem 712 and may receive a plurality of down-chirp signals 339 and 341 from answering modem 712. Answering modem 712 may receive a sequence of up-chirp signals 338 and 340 from originating modem 711 and may generate a sequence of down-chirp signals 339 and 341 to originating modem 711. All of

15 the bidirectional full-duplex chirp signals, including up-chirp signals 338 and 340 and down-chirp signals 339 and 341 may be superimposed or multiplexed on common data link 722 and 742 as shown for MUX signal 342. Originating modem 711 may demodulate MUX signal 342 with a correlator using a down-chirp pilot signal 337

20 to obtain correlation output signal 344 related to the digital data transmitted from answering modem 712. Similarly, answering modem 712 may demodulate MUX signal 342 with a correlator using an up-chirp pilot signal 336 to obtain correlation output signal 343 related to digital data transmitted from originating modem 711.

25 Signal 343 and signal 344 may be used to reconstruct digital data transmitted from originating modem 711 and from answering modem 712 respectively as received and demodulated in answering modem 712 and in originating modem 711 respectively; as discussed above for the embodiment set forth in Figs 7D-7F relative to the

30 signals shown in Figs 7B and 7C.

The signals shown in Fig 3D show pairs of up-chirp
and down-chirp signals starting at substantially the same time
for the purpose of simplicity of illustration. In an actual
application, originating modem 711 may generate up-chirp modulated
5   signals 338 and 340 at times related to input of digital data and
related to the code of digital data received from digital device 710.
Similarly, answering modem 712 may generate down-chirp signals 339
and 341 at times related to input of digital data and related to
the code of digital data from digital device 713 which may be
10   asynchronous with reference to the digital data from digital
device 711. Therefore, chirp signals superimposed on the data link
may have different time or phase relationships between up-chirp
signals transmitted from originating modem 711, between down-
chirp signals transmitted from answering modem 712, and between
15   up-chirp and down-chirp signals therebetween. The effect of the
different phasing and interspacing of modulated carrier signals
on the data link would be to change the form of MUX signal 342
and further to change the correlation output signals 343 and 344
related to the particular time sequence of up-chirp signals and
20   down-chirp signals respectively that are to be illustrated; which
can now be constructed by one skilled in the art from the teachings
of the present invention such as with the same methods discussed
for Figs 3A-3D and Figs 7B and 7C above.

A full-duplex communication arrangement will now be
25   discussed with reference to Fig 7C. Fig 7C has previously been
described for an embodiment generating up-chirp signals in response
to negative transitions of data signal 734 and down-chirp signals
in response to positive transitions of data signal 734. For
discussion of the present duplex communication arrangement;
30   up-chirp signals 735, 737, 739, and 741 may be generated by
originating modem 711 in response to digital signal transitions
similar to that discussed with reference to Fig 7B above
and down-chirp signals 736, 738, and 740 may be generated by

answering modem 712 in response to digital data signal transitions
similar to that discussed with reference to

Fig 7B above. Multiplexing of up-chirp signals from originating
modem 711 and down-chirp signals from answering modem 712 on

5 a single transmission line may be illustrated with MUXED signal 742.
Separation of the up-chirp signals transmitted by originating
modem 711 from MUXED signal 742 may be accomplished in answering
modem 712 by demodulation with a correlator using an up-chirp
pilot signal 743A to generate correlation output signal 744A.

10 Similarly, separation of the down-chirp signals transmitted by
answering modem 712 from MUXED signal 742 may be accomplished in
originating modem 711 by demodulation with a correlator using a
down-chirp pilot signal 743B to generate correlation output
signal 744B. Correlation output signal 744A may be used to

15 reconstruct digital information transmitted from answering modem 712
and correlation output signal 744B may be used to reconstruct
digital information transmitted from originating modem 711
using the arrangement discussed with reference to Fig 7F above.

A simple illustration of a full-duplex communication

20 arrangement is shown in Fig 7A where digital device 710 may
generate digital signal 714 to modulator 750 (shown in more detail
in Fig 7D) for generating output chirp signals to data link 722
and 742 and demodulator 751 (shown in more detail in Fig 7F).
may be connected to the same data link 722 and 742 for receiving

25 transmitted chirp signals that are multiplexed on the data link
for demodulation and subsequent communication to digital device 710
as signals 726 and 746 from demodulator 751 to digital device 710.
Therefore, although modulator 750 and demodulator 751 have been
individually discussed for either transmitting signature modulated

30 signals or receiving signature modulated signals, it is herein
intended that modulator 750 and demodulator 751 be operable
simultaneously to both, transmit modulated signature signals and
receive modulated signature signals in a full-duplex mode of
operation.

Prior art modems transmit modulated carrier signals on a data link in response to received digital data and generate digital data in response to received modulated carrier signals from a data link as is well known in the art. In these prior art

5 modems, communication may be in either simplex, half-duplex, full-duplex, or other modes of operation well known in the art such as for the referenced modem manufactured by Novation Inc. Therefore, substitution of the signature modulator shown in Fig 7D and 7E for generating output signature modulated carrier signals

10 in response to received digital data and the signature demodulator shown in Fig 7F for receiving signature modulated carrier signals and generating output digital data in response thereto may be used to replace corresponding modulator and demodulator elements in well known prior art modems. Therefore, various well known

15 arrangements such as coupling to a data link 722 and 742, coupling to digital devices 710 and 713, and other such arrangements are well known in the art and therefore need not be disclosed in further detail herein.

The above discussion is provided in simplified form to

20 illustrate communication features of the present invention for simultaneously transmitting and receiving signature modulated information having correlatable signals with different signatures for receiving and for transmitting of digital data. For simplicity of discussion, signals shown in Figs 3D, 7B, and 7C have been

25 used to exemplify this inventive feature because these figures provide for multiplexing together of chirp signals having different signatures and for separation of such multiplexed chirp signals having different signatures through correlation. Other examples may be provided to further illustrate such a simultaneous

30 transmission and receiving arrangement, but Figs 3D, 7B, and 7C provide sufficient illustration of the teachings involved therewith to permit one of ordinary skill in the art to practice this inventive feature. For example, different phase relationships between the up-chirp signals, the down-chirp signals, and

35 between the up-chirp and

the down-chirp signals may be provided to illustrate a more random occurence of the chirp signals and a more random occurance of phase relationships therebetween. Regardless of the time phase relationships between digital data bits, chirp signals may be

5   represented for transmitted data and for received data having the desired phase relationships; could be multiplexed together as discussed with reference to Figs 3D, 7B, and 7C above; and the different sequences of chirp signals could be separated out therebetween for reconstruction of a transmitted digital signal;

10 wherein the different phase relationships will be readily understood and the related signal diagrams can be readily constructed by one of ordinary skill in the art from the teachings of the present invention.

Description Of Figs 7E and 7F

A chirp generator 758 is shown in more detail in Fig 7E where the $\overline{EN}$ signal from decoder 756 is received by latch 760, which may be a S/N 74279 latch, to initiate a chirp

5 signal. Latch 760 is used to store the decoder output signal $\overline{EN}$ for selecting chirp generator 758, wherein sequential transitions of signals 714 and 734 may increment counters 753 and 754 passed the selecting decoder output signal $\overline{EN}$ from decoder 756 before the selected chirp signal has been completed. This is particularly

10 true for high data rates in conjunction with long chirp signals, wherein the chirp signal may not be completed by the time a new chirp signal must be generated in response to a new data signal transition. Therefore, each chirp generator may have a memory contained therein such as with latch 760 to store a selecting

15 command until the chirp signal has been completed. In an embodiment wherein the signal $\overline{EN}$ may be longer than the period of the generated chirp signal, a synchronous one-shot SOS may be used as will be discussed in detail with reference to Fig 7G above. The showing of latch 760 with and without synchronous

20 one-shot SOS in Fig 7G and in Fig 7E respectively is provided to illustrate both alternatives, wherein synchronous one-shot SOS may be used or may not be used as required by the particular application.

Latch 760 enables an integrator 761 through input

25 resistor R_I and feedback capacitor C_I to generate a ramp output signal to a voltage controlled oscillator (VCO) 762. Such analog integrators are well known in the art and are described in the books by Korn and by Levine referenced hereinafter. Integrator 761 may include a $\mu A709$ or $\mu A741$ operational amplifier in well known

30 integrator circuit configurations. Further, VCO 762 may be any well known VCO or voltage-to-frequency converter many of which are commercially available and well known in the art as discussed elsewhere herein. A precise ramp may be generated by integrating

a reference voltage REF wherein latch 760 may control an analog switch to the reference voltage REF for input of the precise reference voltage to integrator 761 using well known prior art reference signal switching arrangements. Integrator 761 generates

5 a ramp to VCO 762, wherein VCO 762 generates an output signal having a frequency related to the instantaneous voltage of the input ramp. Therefore, the frequency of output signal 763 may vary linearly as a function of the linear ramp input to VCO 762.

A Schmidt trigger (ST) 774 may be used to detect a ramp

10 voltage amplitude related to the end of the chirp signal for resetting latch 760 with reset signal 764 and for discharging capacitor C_I of integrator 761 through reset resistor R_R. Threshold detectors such as Schmidt triggers and well known in the art such as S/N 7414 circuits.

15 Other arrangements for generating chirps are well known in the art and may be used herein. Further, integrator 761 may be replaced by other function generators to generate exponential chirp signals, up-chirp signals, down-chirp signals, and to generate virtually any frequency sweep function using well known analog

20 function generation techniques as an input signal to a VCO. Further, various up-chirp and down-chirp signals may be generated by using inverters to invert the analog sweep signal. For example, placement of an analog inverter such as a μA709 operational amplifier inbetween integrator 761 and VCO 762 may convert a

25 down-ramp from integrator 761 to an up-ramp by inversion to change a down-chirp signal from VCO 762 to an up-chirp signal, and conversely. Therefore, the difference between up-chirp generators and down-chirp generators may be merely a sign reversal associated with an analog signal input to VCO 762 or alternately may be with

30 the internal circuitry of VCO 762.

Demodulator 751 may be a correlation demodulator for demodulating chirp signals received over data link 722 and 742. One form of demodulator 751 in accordance with the present invention is shown in Fig 7F. Signals 722 and 742 may be received
5   from a data link with line receiver 775 and may be "squared-up" with squaring circuit 765 such as a μA710 circuit. The squared-up signal from circuit 765 may be processed by a correlator 766 which may be the improved correlator arrangement of the present invention or may be any well known correlator arrangement for
10   generating correlated output signals 724, as described with reference to Fig 7B above. Correlated signal 724 may be processed with a digital peak detector 767 to generate a squarewave clock signal 725 to clock trigger flip-flop (T) 768 to generate output data signal 726 in accordance with the signals shown in Fig 7B.
15   For the arrangement discussed with reference to Fig 7C, a second correlator 769 may be provided; wherein correlator 766 may perform correlation using an up-chirp pilot signal 743A and correlator 769 may perform correlation using a down-chirp pilot signal 743B (Fig 7C). Therefore, correlator output signals 744A and 744B (Fig 7F) may
20   correspond to correlator output signals 744A and 744B respectively discussed with reference to Fig 7C; wherein the output of correlator 766 may correspond to the transitions from a one-state to a zero-state related to an up-chirp signal and the output of correlator 769 may correspond to the transitions from a zero-state
25   to a one-state related to a down-chirp signal. Peak detectors 767 and 770 may detect the correlator output signal peaks to generate clock signals 745A and 745B, as will be discussed hereinafter. Clock signals 745A and 745B may be inverted with inverter circuits 771 to set latch 772 and to reset latch 772 respectively
30   in response to a positive signal transition and a negative signal transition respectively to generate data signal 746.

Correlators 766 and 769 may be the improved correlator embodiments of the present invention or may be any prior art correlator arrangement or any equivalents thereof. Peak detectors 767 and 770 may be well known digital detectors and

5   comparitors for detecting a threshold magnitude of a digital word. A preferred embodiment of a digital peak detector 645 was discussed with reference to Fig 6D above.

Additional circuitry may be provided to insure that the correlation output signals 724, 744A, and 744B are properly related to data

10   signal transitions such as by checking periods between correlation output peaks, checking parity, and by checking other signal characteristics. Inverters 771 may be S/N 7404 inverter circuits, latch 772 may be an S/N 74279 latch circuit, and T flip-flop 768 may be an S/N 7473 JK flip-flop with the J and K input signals

15   left open or connected to a one-state for providing toggling operation in response to clock pulses.

Discussion Of Figs 7G and 7H

One embodiment of chirp generators 757 and 758 has been discussed with reference to Fig 7E above. Now alternate embodiments of chirp generators 757 and 758 (Fig 7D) will be

5 discussed with reference to Figs 7G and 7H. The arrangements shown in Figs 7G and 7H are programmable digital rate generators for generating output digital pulse rates that are controllable. The chirp generator embodiment of Fig 7G uses a Texas Instruments rate generator S/N 7497 for a programmable chirp generator

10 and the chirp generator embodiment of Fig 7H uses a Digital Differential Analyzer (DDA) for a programmable chirp generator.

Output signal $\overline{EN}$ from decoder 756 is processed with chirp generators 757-758 to generate output chirp signals 763 and 773. Output signal $\overline{EN}$ from decoder 756 may be processed directly with

15 latch 760 (Fig 7E) or may be processed with a synchronous one-shot 781 (Fig 7G) before setting latch 760. Synchronous one-shot 781 may generate a one-clock pulse period output pulse $\overline{OUT}$ in response to a positive transition of input signal EN to set latch 760 and to preload counter 786. One embodiment of synchronous one-shot

20 781 is described in detail with reference to Fig 6G above.

The single pulse output of SOS 781 is initiated with selection of the particular chirp generator 758 with decoder output signal $\overline{EN}$ and is used to initialize rate generator 701 for generating a chirp signal. This initialization occurs by setting

25 latch 760 with SOS output signal $\overline{OUT}$ and by presetting counters 786 with SOS output signal $\overline{OUT}$.

For an embodiment using counters 786 having a clear control such as S/N 74163 type counters, output signal $\overline{OUT}$ from SOS 781 may be input to the clear control input of each counter

30 as clear signal CR. For an embodiment using S/N 74190 type up-down counters for counters 786, clear signal CR may be input to the load control input and a particular initial state may be wired to be preloaded in response to the load signal CR from SOS 781,

wherein preloading and clearing of S/N 74190 type counters has
been discussed in detail with reference to Fig 6D above. For
the S/N 74190 type counter embodiment, preloadable input lines
may be all zeros to clear counters 786 in response to load input

5   signal CR as discussed above for C-counter 616 with reference to
Fig 6D. Alternately for the S/N 74190 type counter embodiment,
preloadable input lines may be connected to a preferred combination
of one-bits and zero-bits to load non-zero-states as discussed
above for K-counter 619 and J-counter 617 with reference to

10 Fig 6D. In a preferred embodiment, output signal UD from up-down
switch 788 may be connected to the preloadable signal lines;
where load control signal CR from SOS 781 may load a zero-state in
response to up-down switch 788 being in the up-position for
commanding an up-count with a low UD signal and may load a one-state

15 in response to up-down switch 788 being in the down-position for
commanding a down-count with a high UD signal.

        The setting of latch 760 with SOS output signal $\overline{OUT}$
enables clock pulses CK to be applied to rate multiplier 784
with gate 783 as the dt input to rate multiplier 784. Rate

20 multiplier 784 generates output clock pulses 789 having a pulse
rate proportional to the rate of the dt clock pulses and proportional
to the input signals B-F from counters 786. Toggle flip-flop 785
is used to generate a symmetrical squarewave output signal dz
in response to output pulses 789, where output pulses 789 may

25 not be symmetrical. Flip-flop 785 changes state for each rate
multiplier output pulse 789 to generate a squarewave output
signal dz having a frequency that is half of the frequency of
signal 789 and having a symmetrical signal related to the spacing
between output pulses 789 from rate multiplier 784.

30   A plurality of counters 786 may be used to control the
rate of output pulses 789 from rate multiplier 784, wherein the
pulse rate of output pulses 789 is proportional to the input
signals A-F of rate multiplier 784 from counters 786. For

simplicity, it will be assumed that input signal dt represents a constant clock signal. Therefore, output signal 789 of rate multiplier 784 may have a frequency proportional to the state of counters 786. If counters 786 have a constant number stored

5 therein, then output signal 789 may have a constant frequency. If counters 786 have a number stored therein that is changing, then output signal 789 may have a frequency changing at a rate proportional to the change in the number stored in counters 786.

The number stored in counters 786 may be changed at a

10 rate determined by the frequency of clock signal dy 790 which may be selected from different sources with switch 787. If switch 787 is positioned to select the constant dt signal, the constant dy clock signal 790 to counter 786 may cause counters 786 to count at a constant rate. If switch 787 is positioned to select the dz

15 clock signal, the dy clock signal 790 to counters 786 may cause counters 786 to count at a rate determined by the rate of change of output signal dz which is directly proportional to the state of counters 786 and therefore related to the input clock signal dy 790 of counters 786. Therefore, selection of output

20 signal dz 798 for counter clock signal dy 790 may provide an exponential changing output signal frequency.

Counters 786 may be connected so that the least significant seven stages provide a divide-by-128 count so that the most significant stages of counters 786 controlling rate

25 multiplier 784 are changing at only 1/128 the rate of clock signal 790 to provide a relatively slowly changing chirp signal compared to the frequency of clock signal 790. The least significant bit A input to rate multiplier 784 may be open or one-set to insure that a minimum output pulse rate will be generated even

30 when counters 786 are zero-set such as when cleared at the start of the chirp operation with clear signal CR from SOS.

Switch 788 may be positioned to select whether clock
signal dy 790 to counters 786 generates an up-count related to an
up-chirp signal or generates a down-count related to a down-chirp
signal. Flip-flop 748 may be used to sample output signal UD

5   from switch 788 in response to output signal OUT to make the
circuit insensitive to changes in the position of switch 788
during operation. Flip-flop 748 may be clocked with initializing
signal $\overline{OUT}$ from the SOS to store the state of switch 788 for the
duration of the initialized operation. A preferred embodiment

10   will now be discussed wherein the state of up-down switch 788 is
preloaded into counters 788 in response to clear signal CR wherein
a zero-state is loaded into counters 786 for an up-count related
to a low UD signal and a one-state is loaded into counters 786
for a down-count related to a high UD signal. In an up-count mode,

15   counters 786 may be incremented from the preloaded zero-state to
a maximum count state such as a one-state which may be detected
with up-count detector 794 to terminate the up-chirp signal.
Similarly, in a down-count mode, counters 786 may be decremented
from the preloaded one-state to a minimum count state such as a

20   zero-state which may be detected with down-count detector 793 to
terminate the down-chirp signal. Because the output pulse rate
or chirp signal frequency is proportional to the number in
counters 786; a zero-state may provide a minimum chirp signal
frequency, a one-state may provide a maximum chirp signal

25   frequency, an up-count from a zero-state to a one-state may provide
a chirp signal ranging from a minimum to a maximum frequency, and
a down-count from a one-state to a zero-state may provide a
chirp signal from a maximum to a minimum frequency. For an up-chirp
signal, the highest frequency representing the end of the up-chirp

30   signal is related to a high number such as a one-state of the
five most-significant-bits of counters 786 for commanding a
maximum output frequency signal 789 from rate multiplier 784.
Because an up-chirp signal is selected with switch 788 and

flip-flop 748 controlling the UD signal to be low, the low UD
signal enables AND-gate 794 through inverter 795 and disables AND-
gate 793. The input signals to enabled AND-gate 794 may represent
a maximum state of the most significant bits (MSBs) of counters 786

5   to detect the end of an up-chirp signal for resetting latch 760
through NOR-gate 796. For a down-chirp signal, the lowest
frequency representing the end of the down-chirp signal is
related to a low number such as a zero number in counters 786
for commanding a minimum output frequency from rate multiplier 784.

10 Because a down-chirp signal is selected with switch 788 and
flip-flop 748 controlling the UD signal to be high, the high
UD signal disables AND-gate 794 through inverter 795 and enables
AND-gate 793. The input signals to enabled AND-gate 793 may
represent a minimum state of the MSBs of counters 786 to detect

15 the end of a down-chirp signal for resetting latch 760 through
NOR-gate 796. Termination of the up-chirp signal through
AND-gate 794 and termination of the down-chirp signal through
AND-gate 793 is accomplished by NORing together the terminating
signals from AND-gates 793 and 794 with NOR-gate 796 to reset

20 latch 760 for disabling AND-gate 783 to disable generation of
clock pulses dt. Disabling of clock pulses dt from clocking rate
multiplier 784 causes output signal dz to remain at a fixed
level.

        In a preferred embodiment, the dz signal may be
25 inverted by inverter 797 to enable AND-gates 793 and 794 to
terminate the chirp signal by setting latch 760 only when output
signal dz is in the zero-state. In an alternate embodiment,
inverter 797 may be eliminated, wherein the uncomplimented dz
output signal may be used to enable AND-gates 793 and 794 to

30 terminate the chirp signal with the output signal dz in the one-
state. Output signal dz may be capacitively coupled onto a data
link with capacitor 798 in order to provide isolation and to
make the voltage on the data link relatively independent of
the digital state associated with rate multiplier output signal dz.

Components shown in Fig 7G are well known components. For example, switches 787 and 788 may be well known toggle switches such as SPDT toggle switches or may be electronic switches such as using FET switching transistors. Other components

5　shown in Fig 7G may be series 7400 integrated circuits such as manufactured by Texas Instruments. Well known logical arrangements permit other components to be used in place of those discussed herein. For example, latch 760 may be constructed with a pair of S/N 7400 NAND-gates, AND-gates 793 and 794 may be constructed

10　with an S/N 7430 NAND-gate followed by an S/N 7404 inverter. Further, rate multiplier 784 may be constructed with an S/N 7497 rate multiplier circuit or may be constructed with discrete logic to synthesize the logic contained on the S/N 7497 integrated circuit. Other logical modifications or substitutions for the

15　logic shown in Fig 7G may be provided by one of ordinary skill in the art from the teachings set forth herein. The Texas Instruments Inc book entitled the TTL Data Book referenced hereinafter sets forth detailed specifications, schematics, and applications notes for the series 7400 circuits and other well

20　known documents in the field provide further information on the use of these circuits so that one of ordinary skill in the art may apply those circuits to the configuration set forth in Fig 7G.

　　The operation of counters 786 will now be discussed

25　with reference to Tables X and XI. Counters 786 may be well known 4-bit up-down binary counters such as S/N 74190 type counters which synchronously count dy clock pulses to update the count number therein. Three counter circuits A1, A2, and A3 786 may be cascaded as shown in Fig 7G or may be cascaded in other well

known arrangements. The counting arrangement for counters 786
is shown in Tables X and XI. Three column groups are provided to show
counter sequences; wherein counter circuit A1 provides the least-
significant-bits (LSBs) in the left column group, counter circuit A2

5   provides the middle-bits in the middle column group, and counter A3
provides the most-significant-bits (MSBs) in the right column
group. The least-significant-bit (LSB) is shown in the left-bit
column of the left column group for counter A1 where the
significance of the data-bits increases towards the most-

10   significant-bit (MSB) in the right column of the right column
group for counter A3. For convenience of reference, all rows
in Tables X and IX are numbered sequentially. The MSB output from
counter A2 may be connected to the B input of rate generator 784
and all 4-bits output from counter A3 may be connected to the

15   C-F inputs of rate generator 784 in order of increasing significance
as shown for the corresponding columns in Tables X and XI.
Counters 786 have a total 12-bits for a modulo 4096 count, wherein
Tables X and XI skip many of the binary counts for simplicity of
presentation, as identified in the skip column with marks in

20   Table X rows 6 and 9 and Table XI rows 5 and 8. The count
states of counters A1, A2, and A3 follow well known binary
counting methods wherein the skipped counts will be readily
filled-in by one of ordinary skill in the logical design art.

         As an up-count example provided with reference to

25   Table X, counters 786 are initially preloaded with a zero-state
as shown in row 1. Counters 786 will count up from the zero-state
of row 1 incrementing through the one-state of row 2, the two-
state of row 3, the three-state of row 4, the four-state of row 5,
etc without affecting the output pulse rate dz of rate generator 784

30   because the count has not as yet progressed to changing the input
code B-F of rate generator 784 as shown in columns B-F of
Table X. A section of the binary count inbetween increment 4 (row 5)
and increment 127 (row 7) is shown skipped in row 6,

TABLE X UP-COUNT

ROW	COUNTER A1-LSBs	COUNTER A2 B	COUNTER A3-MSBs CDEF	SKIP	DESCRIPTION	COUNT
1	0000	0000	0000		PRELOAD	0
2	1000	0000	0000		INCR-1	+1
3	0100	0000	0000		INCR-2	+2
4	1100	0000	0000		INCR-3	+3
5	0010	0000	0000		INCR-4	+4
6				↕		
7	1111	1110	0000		INCR-127	+127
8	0000	0001	0000		INCR-128	+128
9				↕		
10	1111	1111	1110		INCR-4094	+4094
11	1111	1111	1111		INCR-4095	+4095

TABLE XI DOWN-COUNT

ROW	COUNTER A1-LSBs	COUNTER A2 B	COUNTER A3-MSBs CDEF	SKIP	DESCRIPTION	COUNT
1	1111	1111	1111		PRELOAD	-1
2	0111	1111	1111		DEC-1	-2
3	1011	1111	1111		DEC-2	-3
4	0011	1111	1111		DEC-3	-4
5				↕		
6	0000	0001	1111		DEC-127	-128
7	1111	1110	1111		DEC-128	-129
8				↕		
9	0100	0000	0000		DEC-4093	-4094
10	1000	0000	0000		DEC-4094	-4095
11	0000	0000	0000		DEC-4095	-4096

wherein the skipped counts merely represent well known progressing binary count codes. The increment from 127 to 128 shown in row 7 and row 8 respectively causes a first change in the input to rate multiplier 784 by changing the B-signal from a zero-state

5   to a one-state thereby causing the dz output rate 798 to increase, consistent with well known operation of rate multiplier 784. Similarly, as the counter clock pulses dy 790 continue to increment from count 128 (row 8) toward count 4095 (row 11), the output frequency of rate multiplier 784 increases until counters 786

10 achieve an all one-state (row 11) which is detected by AND-gate 794 to reset latch 760 through NOR-gate 796 thereby terminating the chirp signal at the maximum frequency condition.

Similarly for a down-count example provided with reference to Table XI, counters 786 are initially preloaded with

15 a one-state as shown in row 1. Counters 786 will count-down from the one-state of row 1 through the decrementing states of negative-two through negative-four (rows 2-4), through the skipped counter-states of negative-five through negative-127 (row 5), through the decrementing states of negative-128 (row 6) which is

20 then decremented to negative 129 (row 7) which first changes the input state to rate multiplier 784 by changing the least significant input signal B from a one-state to a zero-state thereby decreasing output pulse rate dz from rate generator 784. Similarly, the state of counter 786 continues to decrement with well known sequential

25 binary counts 130-4093 being skipped for simplicity (row 8). Negative-4094 (row 10) is then decremented to negative-4096 (row 11) which is the maximum negative count and which is related to the minimum frequency generated for the down-chirp signal. This maximum negative count (row 11) may be detected with

30 AND-gate 793 to reset latch 760 through NOR-gate 796 to end the down-chirp signal at this lowest frequency value.

Alternately, AND-gates 793 and 794 may terminate an
up-chirp or a down-chirp at any desired frequency which is
determined by the selected input lines from counters 786 to
AND-gates 793 and 794. AND-gates 793 and 794 may be built-up
5   by cascading two-input or four-input AND-gates to provide any
number of input lines. Further, inverter gates may be used to
enable AND-gates 793 and 794 for any zero-state counter conditions
shown in Tables X and XI. Similarly, gates 793 and 794 may be
arranged to monitor all bits of counters 786 which for this
10 simplified example represents 12-bits or may be connected to
monitor a limited number of bits from counters 786 such as the
five MSBs shown as columns B-F in Tables X and XI or may be
otherwise connected for terminating a chirp signal.

An alternate embodiment of a chirp generator is shown
15 in schematic form in Fig 7H in the form of a digital differential
analyser (DDA) integrator element. The DDA integrator is a well
known prior art digital integrating element having a Y-register
for adding up dy input pulses, an R-register for accumulating the
sum of the Y-register contents in response to dx input pulses and
20 a dz output signal representative of an incremental overflow of
the R-register in response to the summation of the contents of
the Y-register. DDA integrators are well known in the art and
are discussed in the textbook by Braun referenced hereinafter at
Chapter 8 therein. Also, DDA integrators are described in
25 Applicant's other issued patents such as Patent No 3,586,837 and
Patent No 3,564,536 which are incorporated herein by reference.
DDA integrator 792 may be used to generate a chirp signal dz
by updating the Y-register in response to either dt input pulses
or dz feedback pulses selected with switch 787 as the dy input
30 signal as discussed above for the embodiment set forth in Fig 7G.
The dy input pulses selected with switch 787 update the Y-register,
which is successively added to the R-register in response to the
dx input pulses where the dx input pulses may be equal to the dt

input pulses similar to the embodiment discussed with reference to Fig 7G. The output pulses dz have a pulse rate proportional to the dy input pulses selected with switch 787 and the update pulses dx. If the dx pulse rate is constant, selection of the dt

5   pulses with switch 787 provides linear update of the Y-register parameter causing a linear increase in the frequency of the dz signal and selection of the pulses with switch 787 provides an exponential update of the X-register parameter causing an exponential increase in the frequency of the dz signal similar

10 to the rationale discussed with reference to Fig 7G.

The counter and rate multiplier arrangement 786 and 784 discussed with reference to Fig 7G above may be considered to be a DDA integrator implemented as a rate multiplier, wherein counters 786 may be considered to be the Y-register of the DDA

15 integrator and the counter arrangement in rate multiplier 784 may be considered to be the R-register of the DDA integrator.

In view of the above, DDA integrators and related incremental processing devices may be used to generate chirp signals such as a linear chirp signal, an exponential chirp signal,

20 an up-chirp signal, and a down-chirp signal. Further, a virtually unlimited number of different types of functions may be generated with DDA integrators such as discussed in the textbook by Braun referenced hereinafter.

The embodiments discussed with reference to Figs 7G

25 and 7H above provide squarewave or pulse rate signals to synthesize a chirp signal. A chirp signal does not require any particular signal form but may be a squarewave signal, a sinewave signal, a sawtooth signal or other well known signal forms. Similarly, the pilot signal used for correlation of a received chirp signal

30 may take any of these signal forms. Still further, in the single-bit embodiment of the present invention, amplitude characteristics of a signal are less significant than are the amplitude characteristics in other embodiments having greater

amplitude resolution. Still further, transmission of a squarewave

such as on a data link provides a filtering effect, where the

high frequency Fourier components associated with the sharp edges

of a squarewave signal may be degraded more than the lower frequency

5   components, wherein the transmitted squarewave may be degraded

to merely a sinewave representing the fundamental frequency of

the squarewave which is the pulse repetition frequency of the

squarewave. Therefore, transmission of a squarewave on a data

link and the resultant degradation thereof may be considered to

10   be a squarewave to sinewave converter. Alternately, squarewaves

may be processed with filters to generate sinewaves, wherein

coupling capacitor 798 (Fig 7G) may be part of a low pass filter

to convert squarewave output dz from flip-flop 785 to a sinewave

signal form.

15   In view of the above, another feature of the present

invention provides for generating squarewave chirp signals for

the communication and ensonifying purposes discussed herein

wherein such communication and ensonifying chirp signals may

have the desired chirp characteristics and may be generated with

20   DDA, rate multiplier, or other digital function generators.

A multiple chirp generator arrangement will now be
discussed with reference to Fig 7I for generating a plurality
of chirp signals such as illustrated in Fig 7B. As discussed
for Fig 7B above, it is desirable to generate a plurality of
chirp signals 715-721 wherein each chirp signal is delayed in
time with respect to other chirp signals for identifying a
binary code of a digital word. An arrangement has been discussed
for generating the chirp signals shown in Fig 7B in response
to transitions of waveform 714 with reference to the chirp
generator of Figs 7E and 7G. An arrangement will now be
discussed with reference to Fig 7I for generating a plurality
of chirp signals such as chirp signals 715-721 in response to
the one-states of a digital signal such as data signal 714.
Further, an arrangement will be discussed for generating a
plurality of sequential chirp signals in response to a parallel
digital word with reference to Fig 7I in contrast to the serial
digital word responsive chirp signal arrangement discussed
with reference to Figs 7D, 7E, and 7G above.

The arrangement shown in Fig 7I produces a plurality
of chirp signals 762 and 773 for multiplexing onto a data link
with summing amplifier 750 as multiplexed signals 722 and 740
in response to a digital word stored in static register 728.
Digital device 710 may load a digital word into register 728 for
communication over a data link, wherein register 728 may store
the digital word and may provide the digital output signals
in parallel word form to enable AND-gates 729 in response to
each one-bit condition and to disable AND-gates 729 in
response to each zero-bit condition. Each gate 729 may
correspond to a digital signal from register 728 for enabling
the corresponding gate in response to a one-bit signal and
disabling the corresponding gate in response to a zero-bit
signal or conversely. A chirp generator 758 generates a chirp
signal which may be a digital chirp signal and which may be
a chirp generator such as discussed with reference to Figs 7E,
7G, or 7H above.

Chirp generator 758 may generate a digital chirp signal
to a shift register 727 clocked with clock signal CK. As
shift register 727 is clocked, the state of the chirp signal
from chirp generator 758 is sampled and shifted along register 727
5   from the register input D to the other end of the register in
the direction of the arrow (Fig 7I). The chirp signal samples
are presented to output lines 730-731 from shift register 727
as the chirp signal samples are shifted past the output
lines. The sampled chirp signal is first shifted past output
10 line 730 and subsequently past other output lines through the
last output line 731. If input clock signal CK is a constant
clock frequency and if shift register 727 has output lines
that are spaced an equal number of shift register bits apart,
the chirp signal from chirp generator 758 will be available
15 at shift register 727 output lines 730-731 with different
signal phase shifts due to the time delays between the infor-
mation shifting through register 727 becoming available to
the output lines in sequence at different times. The chirp
signal will become available to the left-most output lines
20 first and the right-most output lines last as it is shifted
through the shift register 727 from left to right wherein
the time delay between the chirp signal becoming **available at adjacent**
output lines is related to the number of shift register stages
between adjacent output lines and the frequency of the clock
25 signal CK. For example, if clock signal CK is a 1-MHz clock
signal and if output lines of register 727 have 32-shift stages
therebetween, the chirp signal will be presented to adjacent
output lines with a 32-microsecond delay or phase shift
between adjacent output lines as the chirp signal is shifted
30 through register 727. Therefore, each of the output lines 730-731
of register 727 provides a chirp signal that is shifted or
delayed by a prescribed amount which is **a 32-microsecond time**
delay or phase shift for each successive output line for the
above example.

The chirp signals from register 727 may be selected
or non-selected with AND-gates 729 in response to **digital**
bits from register 728 wherein a one-bit from register 728
will enable a related AND-gate 729 to multiplex a related

5   chirp signal onto data link 722 and 742 and a zero-bit from
register 728 will disable a related AND-gate 729 to disable
multiplexing of a related chirp signal onto **data link 722**
and 742. Alternately, inverters 733 will cause zero-bits from
register 728 to enable a corresponding AND-gate 729 as will be

10   discussed hereafter.

The arrangement shown in Fig 7I may include a plurality
of shift registers 727 and 732 with related chirp generators 753
and 757 respectively for multiplexing different chirp signals
onto data link 722 and 742. In one embodiment, chirp generator

15   753 may be an up-chirp generator wherein the one-bits of
register 728 **may be used to multiplex a time sequence of up-chirp**
signals onto the data link and chirp generator 757 may be a
down-chirp generator wherein the zero-bits of register 728
may be used to multiplex a time sequence of down-chirp signals

20   onto the data link. Multiplexing of signals onto the data
link in response to one-bits of register 728 may be provided by
having AND-gates 729 enabled by uncomplemented output signals
of register 728 and multiplexing of signals onto the data link
in response to zero-bits of register 728 may be provided by

25   having AND-gates 729 enabled by complemented output signals of
register 728. Complemented output signals may be generated
as $\overline{Q}$ output signals from register 728 or may be generated by
complementing the Q or uncomplemented **output** signals with
inverters 733 to generate **uncomplemented enabling control signals**

30   to gates 729 in response to zero-bits stored in register 728.
Alternately, a plurality of registers such as register 728
may be provided for modulating chirp signals and for multiplexing
a time sequence of modulated chirp signals onto the data link,
where each of the plurality of registers 728 may control output

chirp signals through AND-gates 729 from different shift
registers 727 and 732 for generating different types of
chirp signals in relation to each shift register. Alternately,
various combinations of data registers 728, chirp generators 757
5 and 753 generating chirp signals having different chirp
signatures therebetween, and shift registers 727 and 732 may
be arranged for generating modulated chirp signals onto a
data link for transmission of multiplexed chirp signals.

It is herein intended that any references to communicating
10 of signals on a data link be generally applicable for other
uses of multiple chirp signals including ensonifying subsurface
structures in a geophysical embodiment, ensonifying underwater
objects in a sonar embodiment, or otherwise providing multiplexed
signals for other applications of the present invention.

15 In a preferred embodiment, gates 729 controlling a
plurality of chirp signals having sequentially increasing time
delays such as with signals 715-721 (Fig 7B) may be enabled
with control signals from register 728 having sequentially
increasing significance respectively. As shown in Fig 7I, the
20 first chirp signal 730 may be controlled with AND-gate 729
that is enabled with the LSB of register 728 and the last chirp
signal 731 may be controlled with **AND-gate 729 that is enabled**
with the MSB of register 728; thereby multiplexing an LSB-first
MSB-last chirp signal sequence. Alternately, an MSB-first
25 LSB-last sequence may be provided.

Communication of information with modulated sequential
chirp carrier signals can be better understood with reference
to an example which will be discussed with reference to
Figs 7C and 7I. Data signal 724 has a plurality of zero-states
30 and a plurality of one-states where an embodiment has been
discussed for generating up-chirp signals in response to
negative transitions from the one-state to the zero-state and
for generating down-chirp signals in response to positive
transitions from the zero-state to the one-state. For

-262-

simplicity of discussion and to permit use of the signals
shown in Fig 7C to illustrate the operation of the chirp
generator shown in Fig 7I, it will now be assumed that digital
signal 734 is in the zero-state for data-bit 5 and stop-bit 8 as

5   shown with dotted lines 747 in Fig 7C.

For the chirp generator arrangement discussed with
reference to Fig 7I, the one-states of signal 734 may be used
to generate down-chirp signals starting at times related to
the spacing between a sequence of one-state data bits. For

10 example, the start-bit shown as a zero-state bit (Fig 7C)
disables the first AND-gate 729 and therefore disables the
first sequential chirp signal. The second-bit shown as a one-state
data-bit enables the second AND-gate 729 and therefore enables
the second sequential chirp signal, thereby permitting the

15 second sequential chirp signal to be multiplexed onto the data
link. Similarly, the third-bit shown as a zero-state data-bit
disables the third AND-gate 729 and therefore disables the
third sequential chirp signal. The fourth-bit shown as a
one-state data-bit enables the fourth AND-gate 729 and therefore

20 enables the fourth sequential chirp signal, thereby permitting
the fourth chirp signal to be multiplexed onto the data link.
The fifth-bit and sixth-bit shown as zero-state data-bits
disable the fifth and sixth AND-gates 729 and therefore disable
the fifth and sixth sequential chirp signals. The seventh-bit

25 shown as a one-state data-bit enables the seventh AND-gate 729
and therefore enables the seventh sequential chirp signal,
thereby permitting the seventh chirp signal to be multiplexed
onto the data link. The eighth-bit and ninth-bit shown as
zero-state bits disable the eighth and ninth AND-gates 729

30 and therefore disable the eighth and ninth sequential chirp
signals. Therefore, three chirp signals may be generated
in response to signal 734 stored in register 728 with the
arrangement discussed with reference to Fig 7I. The first
down-chirp signal 736 is generated in response to the first

one-bit which is the second-bit in signal 734; having a time
delay of one-bit time from the start of the transmission.
Similarly, the second and third down-chirp signals 738 and
740 are generated in response to the second one-bit and the
third one-bit in signal 734; having time delays of three-bit
times and six-bit times respectively from the start of trans-
mission. Down-chirp signals 736, 738, and 740 may be multiplexed
together as discussed with reference to Fig 7D above to form
a multiplexed signal such as multiplexed signal 742; wherein
the multiplexed signal may have other signals multiplexed
thereon such as up-chirp signals as shown with signal 742 and
such as noise signals which are not shown. Correlation of
multiplexed signal with down-chirp pilot signal 743B provides
output signal 744B having correlation peaks related to the
start of one-bits of waveform 734 which may be peak detected
to generate clock signal 745B and may be further processed to
generate data signal 746 in accordance with the teachings of the
present invention as discussed with reference to Fig 7J above.

    For the example presented above having a 32-micro-
second delay per bit, the time delays of the down-chirp signals
from the start of the transmission can be calculated; where
the first down-chirp **signal** 736 would start 32-microseconds
after the start of transmission corresponding to the first
one-bit of signal 734; followed by a second down-chirp
signal 738 having a three-bit time or 96-microsecond time
delay from the start of the transmission or a two-bit time
or 64-microsecond time delay from the start of the first down-
chirp signal related to the first one-bit of signal 734; followed
by a third down-chirp signal 740 related to having a six-bit
time or 192-microsecond time delay from the start of the
transmission or a two-bit time or a 64-microsecond time delay
from the start of the second down-chirp signal related to
the second **one-bit of signal** 734. **Therefore, arrangements**
shown in Fig 7I may communicate signal 734 (Fig 7C) in the
form of 3-down chirp signals that are sequential and overlapping

and that have a time sequential form related to the time
sequence of one-bits in order of increasing significance in
signal 724.

The chirp generator arrangement discussed with
5   reference to Fig 7D is an edge or transition responsive chirp
generator and the chirp generator arrangement discussed with
reference to Fig 7I is a state or level responsive chirp
generator. It is intended that these descriptions relative
to generating chirp signals in response to transitions of
10   digital signals and states of digital signals be the exemplary
of many other types of signal condition responsive chirp signals;
wherein those of ordinary skill in the logical design art will
now be able to provide chirp signals responsive to any signal
characteristic in accordance with the teachings of the present
15   invention.

Another example will now be provided to illustrate
operation of the arrangement set forth in Fig 7I. For this
example it is required that data is to be transmitted with a
32-microsecond period per data-bit which is approximately a
20   30KHz data rate and that five-cycles of the highest chirp
signal frequency be transmitted per data-bit period. Further,
well known sampling theory **requires** that the sampling rate be
twice the highest frequency **that is to be preserved. The requirement**
for five-cycles of the highest chirp frequency be transmitted
25   per data-bit period implies **five-cycles per a 32-microsecond**
period or approximately 6-microseconds per cycle or approximately
a **150-KHz** highest chirp signal frequency. The sampling
theory requirement of two-samples per cycle implies a maximum
sampling rate of twice the 150-KHz maximum frequency or a
30   300-KHz sampling rate. Because shift register 727 samples
the input chirp signal once per clock pulse, a clock pulse
frequency of 300-KHz is required. Because there must be one
shift register stage per sample and because there are ten-samples
per each of five-cycles per data-bit period; there must be ten
35   shift register stages inbetween each adjacent output line 700-701.

-265-

The operation of the multiple chirp generation arrangement (Fig 7I) will now be discussed with another example with reference to Fig 7C. Data signal 734 may be loaded into **register** 728 from **digital** device 710. Gates 729

5 may be enabled with the one-bits in register 728 as discussed above. Chirp **generator** 758 may generate a down-chirp signal such as shown in signal 736. The example shown in Fig 7C provides down-chirp signals 736, 738, and 740 starting at positive transitions from a zero-state to a one-state related

10 to the start of a one-bit. The chirp signal from generator 758 is shifted through register 727 where the output lines 730-731 to gates 729 which are enabled by one-bits cause down-chirp signal being shifted through register 727 to be multiplexed onto the data link. Therefore, signals 736, 738 and 740 will be

15 multiplexed onto the data link at times related to the sequence of occurrence of the one-bits in waveform 734. Because chirp signals 735-741 have been constructed for a transition responsive multiple chirp **generator**, adjacent one-bits 5 and 8 of signal 734 are shown changed to zero-bits with dashed lines 747

20 for this example.

In an alternate embodiment, the arrangement set forth in Fig 7I may use the $\overline{Q}$ or zero output signal lines from register 728 to enable gates 729, wherein zero-bits will enable gates 729 to cause time related chirp signals to be

25 **generated** and one-bits will disable gates 729 to prevent time related chirp signals from being generated. Considering the signals shown in Fig 7C and disregarding dashed lines 747; each zero-bit in signal 734 is shown initiating an up-chirp signal 735, 737, 739, and 741 and each one-bit in signal 734

30 is shown as **not-initiating** an up-chirp signal. Therefore, multiplexing of up-chirp signals in response to zero-bits of signal 734 defines the zero-states of signal 734 and therefore completely defines the code of signal 734. The up-chirp signals may be multiplexed together and communicated over the data link as signal MUXED 742,

wherein MUXED signal 742 may contain various combinations of
noise, down-chirp signals, and other information which may
not significantly interfere with the separation or demultiplexing
of the up-chirp signals from MUXED signal 742 through correlation
5 with up-chirp pilot signal 743A to generate correlation output
signal 744A related to the time sequence of zero-states in
data signal 734.

In yet another alternate embodiment, the arrangement
set forth in Fig 7I may provide two channels illustrated with
10 chirp generators 757 and 758 and shift registers 727 and 732
respectively; wherein chirp generator 757 may generate a
down-chirp signal selected with the zero-bits of register 728
and chirp generator 758 may generate an up-chirp signal selected
with the one-bits of register 728; wherein the down-chirp signals
15 selected with the zero-bits and the up-chirp signals selected
with the one-bits of register 728 may all be multiplexed
together onto the data link, as discussed above for up-chirp
signals and for down-chirp signals. The combination of
up-chirp signals and down-chirp signals selected with gates 729
20 are multiplexed together, transmitted together, and separated
therebetween; as discussed above for up-chirp signals and for
down-chirp signals with reference to Fig 7C.

The arrangement of Fig 7I has been discussed for a
constant frequency clock pulse signal CK to shift registers 727
25 and 732. Alternately, shift registers 727 and 732 may have
variable clock pulse signals. For example, the arrangements
shown in Figs 7J and 7H provide variable frequency squarewave
signals dz which may be used as a chirp signal as discussed
above or which may be used as a variable frequency clock
30 signal to registers 727 and 732 as shown in Fig 7I. The
connection of the dz signal (Figs 7J and 7H) for a linearly
swept increasing or decreasing clock signal applied to the
clock input CK of registers 727 and 732 generates a plurality
of chirp signals through gates 729 for multiplexing onto the
35 data link. If the clock signal CK is an increasing frequency

clock signal, a chirp signal from chirp generator 753 may
be shifted through register 727 at an increasing rate that is
a function of time and therefore may appear to have a higher
frequency at output signal lines which have a lower delay

5   and are further along towards the right of register 727.
Therefore, the chirp signal viewed on output line 730 may
have a lower frequency range and a longer chirp signal
envelope than chirp signals from subsequent outputs such as
output 731.   Such chirp signals multiplexed onto the data

10   link may be separable therebetween based upon the time phasing
or time sequence between chirp signals, where a time sequence
of chirp signals has been discussed above with reference to
Figs 7B and 7C, and may be further separable therebetween
based upon the different signatures of the chirp signals

15   such as higher frequency range chirp signals and shorter
chirp signal envelopes.

           The combination of the signature of a chirp signal
into data input D of register 727 and the signature of a chirp
signal into clock input CK of register 727 will together

20   determine the characteristic of each of a plurality of chirp
signals generated on output lines 730-731 of register 727;
where these characteristics include the signature of each
chirp signal, the signature between chirp signals, the
duration of the chirp envelope, and other such characteristics

25   of each chirp signal and characteristics between chirp signals.
Alternately, these variable clock frequency arrangements of
the present invention permit the generation of multitudes of
different types of chirp signals under program control.   For
example, a first programmable chirp generator 753 such as

30   shown in Fig 7G may be used to generate a chirp input
signal D and a second programmable chirp generator such as
the arrangement shown in Fig 7G may be used to generate a
chirp clock signal CK to register 727; wherein the chirp
frequency of the input signal D and the chirp frequency of

the clock signal CK may be constant frequencies or may be
sweet frequencies such as a linearly varying up-chirp or
down-chirp signals, exponentially varying up-chirp or
down-chirp signals, or combinations therebetween. For

5   example, the signals to the D-input and CK-input of register 727
may be a constant frequency and a linear up-chirp signal
respectively, a linear down-chirp signal and a linear
up-chirp signal respectively, an exporential down-chirp signal
and a linear up-chirp signal respectively, a linear up-chirp

10 signal and a linear down-chirp signal respectively, or any
other combinations of D-input and CK-input frequency controlled
signals. Further, the lengths of the signal envelopes and the
frequency ranges of the sweeps to the D-input and CK-input
of register 727 may be controlled using the arrangements

15 discussed with reference to Figs 7G and 7H.

In view of the above, multitudes of complex chirp
signals can be generated each having substantially different
correlation signatures therebetween, each generated from one
of a plurality of outputs of register 727, and/or each selectable

20 either individually or in combinations with a select code
loaded into register 728 for enabling and disabling AND-gates
729.

Although the arrangement of Fig 7I has been discussed
with reference to a data communication embodiment, this

25 arrangement may be used for many other embodiments. For
example, it may be desirable to ensonify a subsurface environment
in a geophysical application with a plurality of chirp signals
each having a different signature and each being generating
overlapping therebetween for separation through correlation.

30 In such an embodiment, multiplexed chirp signals 722 and 742
may be provided to a VIBROSEIS signal generator for ensonifying
a subsurface environment with seismic signals having the
multiplexed chirp signal characteristics. Acquisition and
processing of the multiplexed chirp signals having time delay

_269-

differences and having signature differences therebetween
may permit correlation with each of a plurality of operator
signals such as generated by the arrangement shown in Fig 7I
for separating the signal components.

5   Further, prior art signal generators such as the
VIBROSEIS signal generator are excited with sinusoidal signals.
In accordance with another feature of the present invention,
such signal generators may be excited with squarewave signals
such as the squarewave chirp signals discussed herein with
10 reference to digital chirp generators shown in Figs 7E-7I.
The multiplexing together of a plurality of chirp signals
may provide complex frequency components superimposed there-
between independent of whether sinusoidal or squarewave signals
are used so that advantages assumed by the prior art for
15 sinusoidal chirp signals loses much of its significance in
conjunction with the improved arrangement of the present
invention; wherein squarewave chirp signals may be used for
chirp excitation particularly when a plurality of squarewave
chirp signals are multiplexed together such as for exciting a
20 VIBROSEIS for ensonifying the subsurface environment with
seismic signals.

The components shown in Fig 7I may be well known
components. For example, register 728 may be a well known static
register such as S/N 74174 and S/N 74175 registers and shift
25 registers 727 and 732 may be well known shift registers such
as the S/N 7491A 8-bit shift registers cascaded together to
form the desired length shift register, MOS-FET shift registers,
or other well known shift register arrangements. Further, AND-
gates 729 may be S/N 7408 AND-gate circuits; inverters 743 may be
30 S/N 7404 inverter circuits; and amplifier 759 may include μA709
or μA 741 amplifier circuits. Further, digital device 710 may
be a computer, Teletypewriter, or other well known sources of
digital information. Yet further, chirp generators 757 and 758
may be the same chirp generators discussed with reference to Figs 7E,
35 7G, and 7H above or may be well known prior art chirp generators.

Description Of Fig 8

For simplicity of discussion and to better exemplify
the features of the present invention, arrangements have been
provided in digital form or in a form that has minimized the
5   showing of amplitude effects of signals. Now an arrangement
will be provided for illustrating the effects of amplitude in
an embodiment for communicating samples of analog information.

An analog signal may be sampled for modulating a chirp
signal using amplitude modulation, phase modulation, frequency
10   modulation, or other modulation techniques. An amplitude
modulation arrangement will be described with reference to Fig 8
to exemplify this feature of the present invention. An analog
ramp signal AI will be sampled at points S1, S2, S3, and S4;
where the analog samples will be used to amplitude modulate and
15   time modulate a chirp signal for communication of the analog
samples. Analog signal AI is shown as a ramp signal for simplicity
of explanation of this feature of the present invention, although
any analog waveform may be sampled and communicated in the manner
exemplified with ramp waveform AI. Sample S1 is a high amplitude
20   sample, which is used to amplitude modulate a first chirp signal
811, wherein chirp signal 811 is shown having a relatively high
amplitude corresponding to the relatively high amplitude of
sample S1. Similarly, samples S2-S4 amplitude modulate chirp ·
signals 812-814. Therefore, samples S1-S4 are shown having linearly
25   decreasing relative amplitudes therebetween and wherein chirp
signals 811-814 are shown having linearly decreasing relative
amplitudes therebetween corresponding to the amplitudes of
analog samples S1-S4 respectively. Chirp signals 811-814 are
shown progressively time delayed, wherein a chirp signal may be
30   started at the time the analog signal AI is sampled for modulating
the started chirp signal with the amplitude of the related analog
sample. Therefore, a chirp signal may have a starting time

related to the particular sample time and may have an amplitude
related to the amplitude of the related sample; wherein each
chirp signal 811-814 may correspond in time phase with the
related sample S1-S4 respectively and may correspond in amplitude
5   with the related sample S1-S4 respectively. In particular,
signal 811 may start at sample time S1 and may have an amplitude
related to the amplitude of sample S1, signal 812 may start at
sample time S2 and may have an amplitude related to the amplitude
of sample S2, signal 813 may start at sample time S3 and may
10 have an amplitude related to the amplitude of sample S3, and
signal 814 may start at sample time S4 and may have an amplitude
related to the amplitude of sample S4. Therefore, samples S1-S4
may be taken at progressively increasing times consistent with
well known sampling arrangements and may have progressively
15 decreasing amplitudes consistent with sampling a down-ramp;
wherein corresponding chirp signals 811-814 have progressingly
increasing starting times and progressingly decreasing amplitudes
corresponding to the related samples S1-S4.

Chirp signals 811-814 may be multiplexed together such
20 as with electronic summation as discussed with reference to
Figs 7D-7E above or with implicit multiplexing such as discussed
above for a geophysical embodiment. Signals 811-814 may be
multiplexed together to form multiplexed signal 815, wherein
multiplexed signal 815 provides a schematic representation of the
25 frequency related characteristics of a chirp signal; wherein
signal 815 provides spacing of vertical lines to set forth the
frequency components as discussed with reference to Fig 3 above
and signal 815 also has an amplitude related characteristic
shown schematically by the amplitudes of the vertical lines.
30 Summation of sinusoidal signals or other signals is well known
in the art and can be performed simply by summation of amplitudes
or other well known summing or multiplexing techniques. For

simplicity of discussion, a schematic notation is used in
Fig 8 for signal 815 showing amplitudes related to the vertical
summation of the vertical lines in signals 811-814 for a
schematic analog summation notation.   Therefore, the amplitudes

5   of signals in signal 815 do not necessarily represent amplitude
peaks of the summed signals but merely represent the concentra-
tion of frequency components associated with the vertical line
frequency schematic notation of signals 811-814.

Multiplexed signal 815 may represent a transmitted signal

10   in a communication system, may represent superposition or
multiplexing of a plurality of reflections from different sized
reflectors in a geophysical embodiment, or may represent a
generalized modulation of analog amplitude chirps for other
applications.   Regardless of the application and the means of

15   obtaining multiplexed signal 815, analog amplitude modulated
chirp signals being multiplexed together may be separated by
correlation with a chirp operator corresponding to the chirp
signature set forth in signals 811-814.   Correlation of signal
815 with a constant amplitude chirp operator may provide

20   correlation output signal 816 having four correlation output
peaks 821-824; wherein each peak is shown having an amplitude
corresponding to the amplitude of the related chirp signal
components 811-814 multiplexed onto signal 815 and having spacing
between correlation output peaks 821-824 related to the spacing

25   between related chirp signal components 811-814 respectively of
multiplexed waveform 815.   For example, peak 821 corresponds in
amplitude and time position with sample S1 and with chirp signal
811; peak 822 corresponds in amplitude and time position with
sample S2 and with chirp signal 812; peak 823 corresponds in

30   amplitude and time position with sample S3 and with chirp signal
813; and peak 824 corresponds in amplitude and time position
with sample S4 and with chirp signal 814.

The analog chirp modulation method discussed with reference to the waveforms of Fig 8 will now be discussed for the hardware embodiment set forth in Figs 7D-7F. A counter 754 may count sample clock signals 714 for sampling an analog input

5 signal AI. As counter 754 increments in state in response to input sample clock signal 714, decoder 756 is sequenced through a plurality of output-states to sequentially select each of a plurality of chirp generators such as chirp generator 758 in sequence. A typical chirp generator is shown in Fig 7E, wherein

10 the generation of a chirp signal 763 in response to signal EN from decoder 756 has been discussed in detail above. For analog amplitude modulation of a chirp signal, an additional circuit may be added for each chirp generator including one-shot 776, sample-and-hold 777, and multiplier 778 to generate a chirp

15 signal that is modulated with a particular analog amplitude. Output signal EN of decoder 756 initiates a chirp signal by setting latch 760 and initiates sampling of an analog signal AI with one-shot 776 controlling sample-and-hold circuit 777, wherein one-shot 776 may be a synchronous one-shot SOS discussed

20 with reference to Fig 6G above or may be any well known one-shot circuit. When output signal EN of decoder 756 makes a state transition, one-shot 776 is initiated to generate an output pulse to sample-and-hold 777 to sample analog input signal AI for generating analog output signal AO of sample-and-hold 777 which is a stored analog

25 value of sampled analog input signal AI. Sample-and-hold 777 stores the sampled analog signal AO for the duration of the chirp signal to insure that the chirp signal will be processed with a constant analog amplitude signal. In another embodiment that may involve integrating of the analog input signal AI over the

30 period of a chirp signal, sample-and-hold 777 may be eliminated and analog input signal AI may be used in place of analog output signal AO. Analog output signal from sample-and-hold 777 may

be applied to one input to multiplier 778 and chirp signal 763
may be applied to the other input of multiplier 778, wherein
output signal 773 from multiplier 778 represents the analog
amplitude of the product of chirp signal 763 and analog signal
5   AO.   Therefore, output signal 773 of multiplier 778 may be a
chirp signal having an amplitude related to the amplitude of
the analog sample AO as shown with waveforms 811-814 of Fig 8.

A demodulator may be provided as discussed with
reference to Fig 7F above; wherein correlator 766 may be used
10   to derive correlation output signal 816.   The amplitude peaks
821-824 of signal 816 may be processed with digital peak detector
767 and may be further processed with a digital data processor.
The output of the digital signal processor may be input to
a compositor for compositing-after-correlation or may be
15   otherwise stored, composited, or processed as required by the
system.   Components discussed with reference to Figs 7D-7F may be
well known components, where one-shot 776, sample-and-hold 777,
and multiplier 778 may be well known devices which are referenced
in other discussions herein.
20   The reference signal arrangement discussed with reference
to Figs 9F-9J above may be used in the arrangement discussed for
analog modulation of a signature signal with reference to
Figs 7 and 8 above to enhance precision.   For example, an
analog amplitude reference signal may be multiplexed with analog
25   signal samples for modulating chirp signals to generate an
amplitude reference chirp signal, wherein correlation

output signals 816 (Fig 8) may be adjusted in amplitude in response to the reference correlation peak amplitude. In this embodiment, one of the states of distributor counters 753 and 754 as identified with an output signal from decoder 756

5 (Fig 7D) may enable a reference signal switch such as with control signal 968 to reference switch 962 and to disable analog input signal AI such as with control signal 967 to analog switch 991 (Fig 9F). Analog signal 949 may be provided to multiplier 778 (Fig 7E) instead of to CCD memory 932 (Fig 9F)

10 to provide a reference signal and analog signal samples being multiplexed together for amplitude modulating chirp signals. Refresh circuit 996 (Figs 9F-9J) may be provided in a receiving modem for sampling the reference signal to provide an automatic gain control arrangement or other arrangement for compensating

15 amplitudes of the related peak signals 821-824 (Fig 8).

In one arrangement of an output refresh circuit, digital samples in Z-store 614 of a correlator may be normalized to the most significant part of the digital word, wherein the reference signal sample may have a maximum amplitude and, therefore,

20 normalizing all output signal samples until the maximum signal sample is at the maximum word size may have the same effect as multiplying the other signal samples by the same compensating parameter. Normalizing may be implemented by searching for the peak amplitude and multiplying all signal samples by a factor

25 that makes the peak signal sample magnitude equal to the maximum magnitude permissible, considering the word size of the output signal sample memory. Other amplitude compensation arrangements for digital data such as well known scaling arrangements may be provided for compensating of amplitude

30 errors related to amplitude modulation of correlatable signals.

In summary, as sample clock signal 714 sequences
counter 754 and decoder 756 through a sequence of output states, where
each output state selects a chirp generator 758 to generate a
chirp signal 763 starting at each sample clock time and the
5   output state also commands sample-and-hold 777 to sample analog
input signal AI. Multiplier 778 multiplies chirp signal 763
and analog amplitude modulating signal AO to generate analog
amplitude modulated chirp signal 773, as shown with signals
811-814 in Fig 8. A plurality of analog amplitude modulated
10   chirp signals 811-814 may be summed together with summing
amplifier 759 (Fig 7D) to provide multiplexed signal 815 for
communication over a data link or for other purposes related
thereto.

Signature Memory Arrangement

        The arrangement shown in Fig 7, discussed above
for a signature modem embodiment, will now be discussed for the
signature memory embodiment of the present invention.

5   Digital device 749 may be any digital device and may
be a digital signature memory device in the instant feature
of the present invention. Signature memory 749 may be a
magnetic rotating memory such as a disc memory or a drum
memory, a magnetic tape memory, a delay line memory such as a
10 magnetostrictive delay line memory, or other well known memory
devices. Signature memory 749 may be a digital memory or
an analog memory using either digital signature information
as discussed with reference to Fig 7 or analog signature
information as discussed with reference to Fig 8. For simplicity o
15 discussion to exemplify the instant feature of the present
invention, signature memory 749 may be discussed in the form
of a digital magnetic tape memory. It is herein intended that
any reference to a digital magnetic tape memory be exemplary
of magnetic disc memories, magnetic drum memories, magneto-
20 strictive delay line memories, and other well known memories
for storing information in digital signal form or in analog
signal form; wherein the use of other types of memories will
become apparent to those skilled in the art from the teachings
of the present invention. Further, for simplicity of discussion,
25 signature signals will be considered to be digital squarewave
chirp signals having an up-sweep or a down-sweep in frequency
of a digital squarewave signal. This digital squarewave
signal can be utilized with existing memory read and write
electronics which are designed for digital signal processing
30 in well known prior art memory devices. Alternately, analog
read and write amplifiers for recording analog signals such as
on a magnetic tape are well known in the art and may be used
for processing analog signature signals, the use of which will
become apparent from the teachings of the present invention.

The signature memory arrangement of the present invention provides significant advantages over prior art digital memory arrangements. One advantage is related to the increase in storage density of a memory, wherein a plurality

5 of signature carrier channels may be multiplexed together having a different signature signal per channel for separation therebetween through correlation. Another advantage is related to a long signature signal per bit that has high immunity to noise and signal drop-outs, thereby reducing error rates and

10 permitting lower quality memory devices to be utilized. Other advantages are similar to advantages discussed above for other features of the present invention.

The digital signature memory arrangement in accordance with the present invention will now be described with reference

15 to Fig 7. Digital device 710 may be a digital computer or other well known device for processing digital information. Digital device 710 may communicate with digital memory 749 through an interface exemplified with modem 711. Modem interface 711 may comprise a signature modulator 750 for

20 modulating signature related signals such as chirp signals with digital signals 714 and 734 for storing into digital memory 749 and may include signature demodulator 751 for demodulating signature related signals such as chirp signals to generate output signals 726 and 746. Interface modem 711 may be used

25 in place of or in addition to well known memory interface devices for interfacing to memory 749 such as a well known magnetic tape interface or rotating memory interface. Interface modem 711 may process magnetic read signals for generating digital information to digital device 710 and may

30 process digital signals 714 and 734 from digital device 710 to generate magnetic write signals for memory 749.

Implementation of modem 711 is shown in detail in
Figs 7B-7F and has been discussed in detail for a signature
modem communication embodiment with reference to Fig 7 above.
To reiterate, digital device 710 generates digital output

5 signals 714 and 734 to modulator 750 for modulating signature
signals. Modulator 750 may include counters 753 and 754 for
sequencing decoders 755 and 756 respectively in response to
transitions of digital input signals 714 and 734 to sequence
through a plurality of decoder output states for selecting chirp

10 generators 757-758. Chirp generators 757-758 generate
sequential signature signals 763 and 773 which may be over-
lapping or simultaneously generated signature signals, wherein
signature signals 763 and 773 may be multiplexed or summed
together with summing amplifier 759 to generate write signals 722

15 and 742 to a write head associated with memory 749. Signature
signals 763 and 773 may be analog signature signals or digital
signature signals and may be generated with a signature signal
generator such as chirp generators 757-758 as discussed with
reference to Figs 7E and 7G-7I above. Multiplexed signature

20 signals 722 and 742 may drive a write head included in
memory 749 to provide multiplexed signature signals overlapping
therebetween for recording on a magnetic surface such as for a
disc, drum, or tape memory. Recorded information may be in
overlapping signature signal form in contrast to the prior art

25 single-bit recording techniques. Signature signals may be
considered to be a plurality of single-bit signals multiplexed
therebetween for providing a plurality of squarewave transitions
analogous to the single-bit squarewave embodiment used in the
prior art. Therefore, well known write electronics may be

30 used with the signature modulator arrangement of the present
invention.

Interface modem 711 may receive recorded signals 722 and 742 for demodulation with signature demodulator 751 for providing output signals 726 and 746 to digital device 710. Demodulator 750 is shown in greater detail in Fig 7F as

5   described in detail above for a signature modem embodiment and will now be briefly reiterated for a signature memory embodiment. Memory output signals 722 and 742 may be received from a read head for processing with read amplifier 775 and squaring amplifier 765 to provide multiplexed signature signals to

10   correlators 766 and 769. Signature signals may be recorded as a plurality of overlapping signals having a first signature characteristic related to a first channel of information being multiplexed together with a plurality of overlapping signals having a second signature characteristic related to a second

15   channel of information. The two channels of information may be separate with correlators 766 and 769, wherein correlator 766 may operate in response to a pilot signal having a signature related to the first signature signal and correlator 769 may operate in response to a pilot signal having a signature related

20   to the second signature signal for generating output signals 724 and 744A related to the first channel and 744B related to the second channel of information multiplexed theretogether. Digital peak detectors 767 and 770 may process correlator output signals 744A and 744B related to the first channel and

25   the second channel respectively for generating output signals 725 and 745A related to first channel information and output signal 745B related to second channel information. If recorded information from each of the channels is related to positive and negative transitions of the recorded digital

30   signal, then each channel signal may be used to toggle a flip-flop such as channel 1 signals 745 and 745A toggling flip-flop 768 to generate digital output signal 726 related to first channel recorded information. Alternately, if pairs of

channels are used to record a first signature signal related to a positive transition and a second signature signal related to a negative transition of digital signals 714 and 734, then pairs of channels may be grouped together to set and reset a

5   latch such as latch 722 to generate digital output signal 746 for each pair of channels recorded in memory 749. A large number of channels of information may be multiplexed together with modulator 750 for storage in memory 749 and may be separated therebetween with demodulator 751, wherein each

10 channel may be related to a different signature signal for separation therebetween with correlator demodulators.

The elements described with reference to Fig 7 may be the same elements described for the communication modem embodiment discussed above with reference to Fig 7. For

15 example, correlators 766 and 769 may be well known prior art correlators or may be an improved correlator embodiment in accordance with the present invention such as discussed with reference to Figs 4-6 above. Similarly, chirp generators 757-758 may be any well known prior art chirp generator or may be

20 improved chirp generators in accordance with the present invention such as discussed with reference to Fig 7E and 7G-7I above.

A signature memory arrangement in accordance with the present invention will now be discussed with reference to Fig 3A.

25 The signature signal may be defined as an up-chirp signature signal 310 which may be used to modulate information for recording in a signature memory device. Signature modulator 750 may generate a plurality of up-chirp signals 311-314 having time-phase relationships therebetween shown with the start of the

30 up-chirp signals progressing toward the right-hand portion of Fig 3A for signal 311-314 and may be generated in response to modulating signal characteristics such as signal transitions or signal states. Modulated up-chirp signals 311-314 may be

multiplexed therebetween with multiplexor 759 to generate
multiplexed signal 315 for recording in signature memory 749.
Reading of multiplexed signal 315 may be accomplished with a
read head for outputting stored information from signature

5 memory 749, generating output multiplexed signal 315 which is
related to the input multiplexed signal stored in signature
memory 749. Processing of multiplexed signal 315 with correlation
demodulator 751 may generate correlation output signal 316
having correlation peaks such as peak 317 related to modulated

10 up-chirp signals 311-314. Correlation output peaks 316 may
be generated with digital peak detector 767 to generate output
information such as output digital information.

A multi-channel signature memory arrangement in
accordance with the present invention will now be discussed

15 with reference to Fig 3D. For simplicity of discussion, an
embodiment having two channels will be discussed wherein the
same information will be assumed to be stored in each of two
channels. Digital signals 714 and 734 from digital device 710
may clock counters 753 and 754 to sequence first signature

20 decoder 755 and second signature decoder 756 to select first
signature chirp generators 757, etc and second signature chirp
generators 758, etc for multiplexing theretogether. In this
example, the first signature is an up-chirp signature and the
second signature is a down-chirp signature. It is assumed that

25 two data-bits are input to each of the two modulator channels,
wherein a first data-bit causes up-chirp signal 338 to be
generated with channel-1 and down-chirp signal 339 to be
generated with channel-2 and wherein a second data-bit causes
up-chirp signal 340 to be generated with channel-1 and down-

30 chirp signal 341 to be generated with channel-2. Chirp
signals 338-341 may be multiplexed theretogether with
multiplexor 759 to form multiplexed signal 342 for recording in
digital memory 749. Reading of stored information will

generate a multiplexed output signal related to multiplexed
signal 342 for processing with signature demodulator 751.
Correlation of multiplexed signal 342 with a first correlator 766
operating in response to a first signature signal 336 may

5   generate correlation output signal 724 and 744A shown as
correlation output signal 343 related to first channel
information and correlation of multiplexed signal 342 with a
second correlation 769 operating in response to a second
signature signal 337 may generate output correlation signal 744B

10   shown as correlation output signal 344 related to second channel
information. First and second channel signals 343 and 344 may
be processed with digital peak detectors 767 and 770
respectively and other processing logic for reconstructing the
information contained therein. Storing and reading of multiplexed

15   signal 342, comprising a plurality of sequential and overlapping
signature signals having different signatures therebetween,
permits a plurality of overlapping signature signals having the
same signature related to the same channel and a plurality of
overlapping signature signals having different signatures

20   therebetween related to different channels to be multiplexed
together and to be stored in such overlapping multi-channel
multiplexed signal form.

          The signature memory feature of the present invention
will now be exemplified with reference to Fig 7B. Digital

25   signal 714 from digital device 710 may be processed with
signature modulator 750 to generate a sequence of signature
signals shown as up-chirp signals 715-721 in response to
transitions of digital signal 714. Counters 753 and 754
receive digital signal 714, wherein counter 753 may be

30   incremented in response to positive transitions of signal 714
and counter 754 may be incremented in response to negative
transitions of signal 714. Each transition of signal 714 causes
one of the counters 753 or 754 to increment to a new state,

thereby causing one of the decoders 755 and 756 to be incremented
to a new state for selecting a next one of chirp generators
757-758. Each chirp generator 757-758 generates an up-chirp
signal in response to selection with output signals of

5 decoders 755 and 756 in response to each transition of
signal 714 for generating an up-chirp signal 715-721. Up-chirp
signals 715-721 may be multiplexed together with multiplexor 759
for driving a write head for storage in signature memory 749.
Reading of information stored in memory 749 generates an output

10 multiplexed signal related to multiplexed signal 722 for
processing with demodulator 751. Demodulator 751 receives
multiplexed signal 722 with read amplifier 775 for processing
with squaring amplifier 765 and for correlating with correlator 766
in response to up-chirp signal 723. Correlator 766 generates

15 correlation output signal 724 wherein each correlation output
peak may be related to an up-chirp signal 715-721. Correlation
output signal 724 may be processed with digital peak detector 767
to generate output clock pulses 725 to toggle flip-flop 768
for generating a reconstructed digital output signal 726.

20   Fig 7C will now be used to exemplify a multi-channel
embodiment of the signature memory feature of the present
invention. Digital data signal 734 may be generated with
digital device 710 to modulator 750 in modem 711 for storage
in signature memory 749. A first signature signal such as

25 up-chirp signal 735 may be generated in response to each
negative transition and a second signature signal such as
down-chirp signal 736 may be generated in response to each
positive transition of signal 734 with modulator 750.
Signal 734 may be input to counter 753 in uncomplemented form and to

30 counter 754 in complemented form, wherein each positive transition
clocks counter 753 to command a down-chirp signal with down-
chirp signal generators 757, etc under control of decoder 755
and wherein each negative transition may be inverted to clock

counter 754 to command an up-chirp signal with up-chirp signal
generators 758, etc under control of decoder 756. Positive
transitions of signal 734 to bit-2, bit-4 and bit-7 generate
down-chirp signals 736, 738, and 740 respectively. Negative
5   transitions of signal 734 to bit-1, bit-3, bit-6, and bit-9
generate up-chirp signals 735, 737, 739, and 741 respectively.
Transition responsive chirp signals 735-741 may be multiplexed
theretogether with multiplexor 759 to generate multiplexed
signal 742 for driving a write head to write multiplexed signal 742
10   into signature memory 749. Information stored in signature
memory 749 may be monitored and demodulated with demodulator 751,
where multiplexed signal 742 sensed with amplifier 775 may be
processed with correlator 769 operating in response to up-chirp
pilot signal 743B for generating correlator output signal 744B
15   and may be processed with correlator 766 operating in response
to down-chirp pilot signal 743A for generating correlator output
signal 744A. Peak detectors 767 and 770 may be digital peak
detectors and may generate clock pulses 745A in response to
peaks of correlator output signal 744A and may generate
20   clock pulses 745B in response to peaks of correlator output
signal 744B to reconstruct digital signal 746 having up-chirp
responsive negative transitions and down-chirp responsive positive
transitions.

An alternate multi-channel embodiment will now be
25   described with reference to Fig 7C. A first signal may be
input to counter 753 and a second signal may be input to
counter 754. Transitions of the signal to counter 753 may
generate down-chirp signals 736, 738, and 740 and transitions of
the signal input to counter 754 may generate up-chirp signals 735,
30   737, 739, and 741. Down-chirp signals may constitute a first
channel in response to transitions of the digital input to
counter 753 and up-chirp signals may constitute a second
channel in response to transitions of the digital signal

input to counter 754. Up-chirp signals from the second channel
and the down-chirp signals from the first channel
may all be multiplexed theretogether to provide multiplexed
signal 742 for storing in signature memory 749. Similarly,

5 multiplexed signal 742 may be read from signature memory 749
for processing with signature demodulator 751 to generate
correlated output signal 744A related to the first channel and
correlated output signal 744B related to the second channel.
Correlator output signals 744A and 744B may be provided as

10 separate signals related to separate output channels. Therefore
in accordance with the instant feature of the present invention,
a plurality of separate memory channels may be provided having
different signatures therebetween for multiplexing there-
together, for storage in signature memory 749, and for separation

15 therebetween when output from signature memory 749 with a
plurality of correlator demodulator channels operating in
response to different signature pilot signals. Therefore,
multiplexing together of different signature signals for storage
and demultiplexing for separation of the different signature

20 signals output from signature memory 740 permits a plurality
of signature channels to be recorded in a superimposed or
overlapping form for increasing storage density.

An analog signature memory embodiment will now be
exemplified with reference to Fig 8. A plurality of analog

25 signal samples S1-S4 may be used to modulate signature signals
such as up-chirp amplitude signals 811-314. Amplitude
modulated signature signals 811-814 may be multiplexed there-
together to provide multiplexed analog signal 815 for recording
in an analog memory device. Reading of multiplexed signal 815

30 from signature memory 749 and processing with correlator
demodulator 751 provides correlation output signal peaks 816
having a spacing therebetween related to input analog signal
samples S1-34. Sample S1 may be considered to be a reference
signal amplitude, wherein correlation output signal peak 821

35 related to reference amplitude signal sample S1 may be used to
compensate for amplitude errors as discussed with reference to
Fig 9 hereinafter.

The signature memory feature of the present invention
may be used in conjunction with well known prior art memories
wherein input signals provided to signature memory 749 may be
processed with signature modulator 750 and stored signals

5   received from signature memory 749 may be processed with
signature demodulator 751. One well known prior art magnetic
tape recorder memory is the model H magnetic tape recorder
manufactured by Cipher Data Products of San Diego, California
and described in Technical Manual CDP-100 revised October 1970

10   which is incorporated herein by reference. Another well known
prior art magnetic tape recorder memory is the Model 7X20
synchronous write synchronous read tape transport manufactured
by Pertec of Chatsworth, California and described in Operating
And Service Manual No 101007 which is incorporated herein by

15   reference. Another prior art magnetic tape recorder is
manufactured by Bucode Inc of Hauppauge, New York and described
in the Handbook, Operation And Maintenance, Magnetic Tape
Systems Models 4005 and 4025 dated October 1972 and incorporated
herein by reference.

20   Arrangement of the signature memory of the present
invention using the above referenced Bucode magnetic tape
systems will now be described with the above referenced Bucode
Handbook. Fig 4-2 of said handbook shows read/write circuits
having computer data input and computer data output, where the

25   computer data input signals may be connected to signature
modulator 750 for generating multiplexed signature signals 722
and 742 and the computer data output signals may be connected
to signature demodulator 751 for demodulating multiplexed
signature signals 722 and 742 (Fig 7) for operation in accordance

30   with the present invention. Similarly, the Bucode Handbook
defines interface line receiver and line driver arrangements
that are compatible with well known line receiver and line
driver circuits for interfacing to the magnetic tape system.

Further, schematics of the logic and electronic circuits of the Bucode magnetic tape system are available to show well known prior art magnetic tape system implementation. Similarly, the above referenced documents describing the Ciper and Pertec

5 magnetic tape systems provide interface specifications to permit one of ordinary skill in the art to interface therewith. Also, other well known prior art memories such as magnetic disc and magnetic drum memories are well documented to permit one of ordinary skill in the art to interface therewith.

10 Many well known memory devices are multi-track devices such as 7-track and 9-track magnetic tape transports and multi-track head per track magnetic disc and drum memories. Therefore, a plurality of input signals may be provided simultaneously to such memory devices and a plurality of output

15 signals may be received simultaneously from such memory devices. For simplicity of discussion, only a single track of a plurality of tracks that may be available is considered with reference to Fig 7. It is herein intended that the single track modulator 750 described with reference to Figs 7A and 7D

20 and the single track demodulator 751 described with reference to Figs 7A and 7F be exemplary of modulator and demodulator arrangements for other tracks which may be included in a multi-track modem having multiple modulator and demodulator devices. In a preferred embodiment, single track modem 711

25 may be duplicated to provide a separate modem for each of a plurality of tracks for signature memory 749. Therefore, a 7-track magnetic tape transport may have 7-modem devices such as modem 711 wherein each of the 7-modem devices may be dedicated to a different magnetic tape transport track.

30 Further, each of the tracks of signature memory 749 may have a plurality of channels wherein each channel may be related to a different signature modulated signal and where all of the different signature modulated signals for the different channels may be multiplexed theretogether to provide a multi-

35 channel track for each of a plurality of tracks.

Prior art multi-track memories may provide a plurality of serial words wherein each serial word may be recorded on a separate track or may provide a plurality of parallel words wherein each parallel word is recorded on a plurality of

5   tracks. For example, well known IBM tape formats provide a 7-bit parallel word to be recorded on a 7-track magnetic tape wherein each bit of a word is recorded on a different track. In accordance with the present invention, a different serial word of a plurality of serial words may be recorded

10   on each channel of each of a plurality of tracks. In an alternate arrangement, digital information may be stored in parallel form having one-bit per channel for each of the tracks and having a different parallel word per multi-channel track. In still an alternate embodiment, digital information may be

15   stored in parallel form having a different digital bit of a parallel word stored on a different track which may be the corresponding modulating signal channel of each track or may be a different modulating signal channel of each track and wherein other parallel words may be stored with different

20   digital bits of each word on different tracks. In still another embodiment, a multi-bit signature signal amplitude may be recorded, wherein a plurality of bits for each of the signature signals may be recorded on a different channel of a particular track and wherein different bits of the digital information

25   may be recorded on different tracks. Other combinations of serial and parallel digital word recordings having combinations of channels and tracks for a particular digital signal may be provided.

Validity checks and error checks may be made using

30   well known codes such as a parity check, a cyclic redundancy check (CRC) and a longitudinal redundancy check (LRC) to determine validity of memory output information. If the memory output signals do not pass the required checks or have not

obtained the desired amplitude, repetitive readings of the recorded information may be made and the signals may be composited theretogether such as for compositing-after-correlation capability. In a rotating memory such as a magnetic disc or

5 magnetic drum memory, recorded information may be sequentially presented as the memory rotates, thereby providing sequential traces for compositing theretogether. For a magnetic tape memory, the magnetic tape may be rewound and reread for a desired number of times for compositing memory output information

10 to enhance output signals. This compositing arrangement may be used in conjunction with the signature memory arrangement of the present invention to enhance output signals and, in the presence of an error condition, permits compositing operations to overcome the error condition. Well known recorded preamble

15 and postamble data such as for drum, disc, and tape memory blocks may be used for synchronization of correlation and compositing operations just as they are used in the prior art for synchronizing of data transfer operations.

An analog signature memory arrangement may be

20 exemplified with signature memory 749 implemented with an Ampex Model 601 magnetic tape recorder, discussed in Ampex Operation Maintenance Manual TM1001 incorporated herein by reference. The Ampex model 601 recorder is an analog magnetic tape recorder and therefore provides for recording analog

25 signals. Therefore, use of analog signature signals such as sinewave chirp signals may be modulated with input information. Analog multiplexed signals from modulator 750 may be input to a record channel such as the microphone input on the Ampex tape recorder for recording on magnetic tape and analog

30 multiplexed signals from the magnetic tape recorder may output from a read channel such as from the output jack labeled phones on the Ampex tape recorder.

Output signals from the signature memory arrangement of the present invention may be very long continuous signals.

35 Therefore, particular advantages may be achieved by using the correlate on-the-fly and output on-the-fly features of the present invention in combination with the signature memory feature of the present invention.   -291-

CRT Display Embodiment

In a display system embodiment of the present invention, output signal samples may be displayed to an operator with a cathode ray tube (CRT) display device in real-time as the

5 information is being correlated without the need for an output memory device. In such an arrangement, the output product P_J times T_L may be presented directly to a CRT or other display device. The output memory may be implicit in the display device, where the output device may be a storage CRT such as the Tektronix

10 Model 601 CRT or may be an oscilloscope such as Tektronix Model 454 oscilloscope, wherein the memory function may be performed by the persistency of the CRT.

The use of a CRT display for the output device and the use of the persistancy of the CRT display for the memory device

15 will now be discussed with reference to the example set forth in Table III, the algorithm discussed with reference to Figs 5A and 5B above, and the embodiment discussed with reference to Fig 6D above. Two signals available from the correlation processor (Fig 6D) will be used to control a CRT including the

20 product signal from gate 626 related to the product of P_J and T_L which may be a one-bit product in a simplified embodiment to exemplify this feature and the synchronization signal from gate 621 related to initiating a new update of output signal samples.

The product signal from gate 627 may be provided to the

25 z-axes input of a CRT which is the intensity modulation input to the CRT. Therefore, the solution of each product computation may present either an intensity point or a non-intensity point. The persistency or storage characteristic of the CRT may cause all intensity signals associated with a corresponding point on

30 the CRT to be summed or integrated by the persistency or storage characteristic of the CRT. Therefore, as the CRT electron beam is swept over the face of the CRT under control of the CRT SYNC signal (Fig 6D), the intensity of the electron beam when traversing

a particular point for each of a plurality of sweeps may be integrated for that particular point to provide an intensity that is related to the sum of the intensities for each successive sweep. The intensity may be degraded as a function of time.

5   For a storage CRT such as the Tektronix Model 601 CRT, the degradation may be inconsequential; wherein the intensity of a point may be approximately proportional to the sum of the intensities of the electron beam for that point on the CRT for each of a plurality of sweeps. For a non-storage CRT such as the

10   Tektronix Model 454 oscilloscope CRT, the signal may be degraded as a function of time and as a function of persistency wherein more recent sweeps may have more significance than earlier less recent sweeps. This is not necessarily a disadvantage, wherein the operator's eye or a recording device may integrate the visual

15   information even for a high speed short persistency CRT such as used in the Tektronix Model 454 oscilloscope. Further, a continuous correlation operation may be used to present continuous information to the CRT for continuously refreshing the CRT with new display information in order to compensate for degradation of old display

20   information.

In view of the above, storage or persistency characteristic of a CRT, or of an output medium such as film, or of an operator's vision may provide an output memory function for the correlation operation in place of a more permanent memory such as a core

25   memory, a disc memory, and a magnetic tape memory.

A CRT display may display output signal samples Z_0-Z_{12} (Table III) that are presented at positions along a sweep horizontally across a CRT, where the Z_0 output signal sample may be provided at the start of a sweep at the left-hand side of the

30   CRT and the Z_1-Z_{12} output signal samples may be sequentially presented to the CRT as the sweep progresses in the right-hand direction until the last output signal sample Z_{12} is provided at the right-hand end of the sweep. Each output product T_L times P_J

may be used to excite the CRT Z-axes as intensity modulation to the Z-axes input of the CRT. The CRT display may be synchronized to the computation with the CRT SYNC pulse (Fig 6D), a Z_0 address (K=0), or other sync pulse relating to the start of the output signal sample updates. In an alternate embodiment discussed with reference to Fig 5A, a CRT sync pulse may be provided in any of operations 515 or 516. In another alternate embodiment discussed with reference to Fig 5B, a CRT sync pulse may be provided with the start of the correlation sync pulse detected in operation 540 or in any of operations 541 or 542 for the first iteration and either of operations 548-550 for subsequent iterations.

The significance of the CRT displayed information will now be described with reference to the above mentioned sync pulse and the product output signals. Each column shown in Table III represents a plurality of pilot signal sample computations for each trace signal sample, wherein each pilot signal sample updates an output signal sample for the trace signal sample at the top of the column (Table III). Therefore, computations described for the algorithm set forth in Table III such as with reference to Figs 5A, 5B, and 6D provide a sequence of pilot signal computations starting with the first pilot signal sample P_{J_0} at the top of a column (Table III) and progressing to the last pilot signal sample at the bottom of the column, wherein the related computations correspond to output signal samples $Z_0 - Z_{12}$ in sequence. Therefore, this computational algorithm provides for the sequential updating of output signal samples $Z_0 - Z_{12}$ as the computation for a selected trace signal sample T_L progresses from a first pilot signal sample P_{J_0} at the top of a column to a last pilot signal sample at the bottom of a column. Because the computation is synchronized to the output signal samples wherein the first product (row 1) for a particular trace signal sample updates the first output sample Z_0; the second product (row 2) for a particular

trace signal sample updates the second output signal sample Z_1;
and so forth as the computations for a particular trace signal
sample and for the sequential pilot signal samples generates
updates for the sequential Z_0-Z_{12} output signal samples.

5   Therefore, this computational algorithm sequentially scans through
all of the output signal samples Z_K in sequence for each trace
sample T_L and updates the appropriate output signal samples. If
a CRT display is synchronized to the output sample updates, the
output signal samples or the output sample updates may be displayed
10   on the CRT as the electron beam sweep progresses across the CRT
face refreshing the output signal samples Z_0-Z_{12} for each electron
beam sweep; wherein each electron beam sweep is synchronized to
each new trace signal sample T_L and therefore to each computational
iteration corresponding to each update of the sequential output
15   signal samples. Synchronization of the CRT electron beam sweep
to the start of the output signal updates for a particular trace
signal sample synchronizes the CRT sweep to the computational
inner loop 503 (Fig 5A) or operations 542-547 (Fig 5B), wherein
the output signal sample storage memory may be the storage or
20   persistency of the CRT and wherein each input trace signal sample
causes a new set of inner loop iterations of the correlation
algorithm and a resultant sequential update of the output signal
samples as the electron beam sweeps across the CRT face.

Updating of each output signal sample Z_K occurs at a
25   precise time after the start of the sweep of the start of the
sync pulse because of precise timing of digital equipment
operating with crystal clocks and because of the precision of the
CRT sweep circuitry. Therefore, the CRT display updates are
repeatable for a particular output sample position on the face of
30   the CRT. For this CRT embodiment, it is desirable to have equal
time intervals between update of each output signal sample to have
equal spacing and repeatable spacing for output signal samples
on the CRT display. Therefore, the inner loop computational

iterations set forth in Figs 5A and 5B may have equal time delays for each iteration period in an iterative loop. In Fig 5A, inner loop operations are shown taking two separate paths determined by test operation 527 in order to save computational time. In the

5 CRT embodiment it is desired to maintain constant time rather than achieve minimum time, wherein operation 527 may determine whether computational results should be displayed but may not bypass operation 517. This could be accomplished by placing a time delay in the NO path from operation 527 having a time delay

10 period equal to the time delay period of compute operation 517 to equalize time delays through inner loop 503. Alternately, decision operation 527 could enable or disable a blanking flip-flop control circuit to determine if the computed product should be displayed or not displayed, wherein the CRT display may be

15 blanked for not displaying the computed update in response to the NO path logic and may be unblanked for displaying the computed update in response to the YES path from operation 527; wherein both the unblanked YES path and the blanked NO path would execute the computation in operation 517 instead of bypassing operation 517

20 with the NO path. Similarly, in the algorithm set forth in Fig 5B; the test for J being negative in operation 546 may have a disable computation operation 547 for the YES path that is equal in time delay to the access and compute operations 542 and 543 for the NO path to equalize time delays for both alternate paths when

25 looping back for inner loop operations. Many other alternate arrangements will now become obvious to those of ordinary skill in the art from the teachings of this invention for providing repeatable or constant time delays between output signal updates for synchronization with a CRT sweep.

30   The arrangement discussed with reference to Fig 6D may be used in conjunction with a CRT output device. For example, the output of NOR-gate 621 is shown as CRT sync signal and output of NAND-gate 627 is shown as a CRT Z-axis excitation signal; where these CRT control signals will be described below.

The start of updating of each new output sample Z_K is identified by loading of counters 616 and 619 with output signal NXT from NOR-gate 621, followed by a time sequence of computational updates under control of exclusive-OR gate 626 as

5 enabled with NAND-gate 627. Therefore, the output of NOR-gate 621 may be used for synchronizing a CRT sweep and the output of NAND-gate 627 may be used to excite the Z-axis intensity control of a CRT wherein a zero-state from gate 627 is indicative of a comparison between trace signal samples T_L and pilot signal

10 samples P_J and a one-state from gate 627 is indicative of a non-comparison between trace signal samples T_L and pilot signal sample P_J. Therefore, the output of NOR-gate 621 may initiate a CRT sweep and the output of gate 627 may be used to intensity modulate a CRT sweep. Further, update signal $\overline{UPD}$ from

15 NAND-gate 627 may be inverted to provide update signal UPD to excite the CRT Z-axis with a one-state related to a comparison and a zero-state related to a non-comparison as shown in Fig 6D.

Listening Period Compensation

The real-time correlation and compositing-after-correlation features of the present invention provide unique operational capabilities that have not been available to the prior art. In the prior art, a single chirp signal may be generated and monitored with an array of transducers, wherein the system required a "listening period" following the end of the transmitted chirp signal. This listening period is related to the propagation time of the transmitted chirp signal to the most remote part of the environment that is to be interrogated and the propagation time back to the array in order to permit the signals at the end of the chirp signal to propogate to the extreme distances and to be reflected back to the array. In a typical geophysical embodiment, the trace signal may include a 24-second transmitted chirp signal and an 8-second listening period for a total trace signal duration of 32-seconds. Such listening periods provide well defined boundaries between sequential chirp signals and therefore between sequential trace signals.

The system of the present invention provides a capability to continuously correlate and composite trace information without specifically providing a listening period or other such boundary inbetween operations. For example, transmission of chirp signals need not cease for a listening period but a next successive chirp signal may be generated immediately after completion of a first chirp signal, wherein such successive chirp signals may have poor correlation for separation through correlation therebetween. For example, a first chirp signal may be an up-chirp signal having a 24-second period, followed immediately by another chirp signal which may be a down-chirp signal having a 24-second period, followed immediately by another chirp signal which may be another up-chirp signal having a 24-second period, etc. A multiple channel correlator such as shown in Fig 6E may be provided to correlate a trace signal with an up-chirp signal for a first channel and with a down-chirp signal for a second channel; providing correlated output signals from the first channel related to the up-chirp signal and providing correlated output signals from the second channel related to the transmitted down-chirp signal.

Alternately the plurality of channels shown in Fig 6E may be used to control a single Z-RAM 614 and a single Z-counter 613 for compositing the updates from each of a plurality of correlation channels into the same output signal samples. Such an

5 embodiment may be implemented by updating a single Z-counter in response to a first pilot signal and then updating the same Z-counter in response to a second pilot signal in sequence, thereby sharing a single Z-counter 613 and Z-RAM 614 with a plurality of channels. Alternately, selecting each of a plurality of

10 updates from each of a plurality of channels permits correlating a single trace signal T_L with each of a plurality of pilot signals by providing a sequence of updates of the output signal sample in Z-counter 613 in response to each of the plurality of correlated output signals under control of a sequence of update signals such

15 as from decoder 622. For example, decoder 612 may generate a sequence of $\overline{C1}$ clock signals to Z-counter 613, wherein a different channel is selected with each of the sequence of $\overline{C1}$ signals to Z-counter 613 for updating a single output signal sample contained in Z-counter 613 from correlation update control signals related

20 to each of a plurality of channels for compositing of these channels together.

This capability permits generation of short chirp signals and short pilot signals and permits continuous generation of ensonifying signals such as starting new chirp signals

25 immediately after the completion of a prior chirp signal or overlapping chirp signals or otherwise ensonifying the environment without the usual prior art listening period.

Continuous generation of short chirp signals may not degrade the effects of a long chirp signal used in the prior art

30 system because the total length of the sequential short chirp signals may equal or exceed the length of a single long chirp signal. Further, continuous generation of short chirp signals may provide a significantly simpler implementation such as having a

smaller J-counter 617, a smaller L-counter 618, and a smaller
P-ROM 625. For this embodiment, the number of output signal
samples may not be reduced because the number of output samples
may be related to the range through the environment which is

5 substantially independent of the manner of ensonifying the
environment. Therefore, as the trace signal and pilot signal
durations are reduced, the difference therebetween may be
maintained substantially constant based upon the relationship set
forth in equation (2) above. One apparent saving of this

10 embodiment is elimination of the prior art listening periods,
wherein the above geophysical example having a 24-second pilot
signal being generated at 32-second intervals in consideration of
the 8-second listening period may be changed to generate a
24-second pilot signal at 24-second intervals instead of the above

15 32-second intervals. This elimination of the listening period
effectively increases productivity by 25% for the present example.
Similarly, improved precision is obtained by compositing of output
signal samples Z_K related to each of a plurality of different
types of chirp signals that do not correlate therebetween, where

20 the correlation output computational noise sidelobes, shown
schematically in Fig 3D as sidelobes 346 and 347, may be reduced to
provide a more precise illustration of the environment. This
improvement has been discussed with reference to Fig 3D above,
wherein sidelobe signals from different types of ensonifying

25 signatures have different characteristics therebetween and may
provide cancellation therebetween when composited-after-correlation,
thereby effectively improving the signal-to-noise ratio.

Particular advantages may be obtained by using the
listening period compensation arrangement of the present
invention with the record on-the-fly arrangement of the
present invention in conjunction with a short pilot signal.

5 The listening period in prior art systems is related to the
range through the subsurface environment, wherein an 8-second
listening period may be related to a 40,000-foot range based
upon a 10,000-foot/second average velocity. Therefore, as the
trace signal length is varied, the listening period must be

10 maintained substantially constant to preserve the desired
range. As the trace signal is reduced in length, the relatively
non-productive listening period increases as a percentage of
the trace signal. This can be shown by a simple example
wherein an 8-second listening period out of a 32-second trace

15 signal constitutes 25% of the trace signal duration and an
8-second listening period out of a 16-second trace signal
constitutes 50% of the trace signal duration. Therefore, the
prior art has maintained trace signals that are relatively
long compared to the listening period. Because the amount of

20 input compositor memory in prior art systems is related to the
length of the trace signal, trace signal durations have been
maintained at a minimum practical duration, with a 32-second
trace signal being a practical upper limit. Therefore, trace
signal duration of prior art systems have been severely

25 constrained due to the required listening period limiting the
shorter duration of trace signals and due to the amount of
compositor memory limiting the longer duration trace signals.
The system of the present invention significantly reduces or
eliminates these prior art constraints; wherein reduction or

30 elimination of the listening period as discussed above for
the system of the present invention permits extremely
short trace signals to be provided without degradation of product-
ivity and wherein elimination of the compositor memory such as with
compositing-after-correlation capability as discussed above for

35 the system of the present invention permits extremely long if
not unlimited duration trace signals.

In accordance with the instant feature of the present
invention, further improvements will now be summarized. In
order to better understand these features of the present
invention, a term "seismic range" will be defined. Seismic

5   range is defined as having the units of time and is defined as
being the time for the seismic signals to propagate from the
seismic generator to the end of the range and back to the
transducer array, wherein the seismic range may be the
determining criterion for the prior art listening period. For

10   example, a prior art listening period herein defined as seismic
range is based upon an approximate velocity of 10,000-feet/second
and propagating through 80,000-feet of subsurface environment
for a listening period of 8-seconds wherein the 80,000-feet
of propagation distance is related to propagating outward from

15   the seismic generator through the subsurface environment to a
range of 40,000-feet and then propagating backward toward the
seismic array for the same distance of 40,000-feet, wherein a
seismic range of 8-seconds may be related to an 80,000-foot
propagation distance or a 40,000-foot distance of a most remote

20   subsurface reflector. Seismic range is only analagous to the
prior art listening period because the range of the system of
the present invention is relatively independent of prior art
considerations such as a listening period and therefore the
system of the present invention requires definition of new

25   terms to exemplify features of the present invention. The
term seismic range has been chosen for similarity with the
terminology radar range in the radar field, wherein radar
range is related to twice the time for radar signals propagating
to an object at a particular range which is related to the

30   propagation time outward to the object and backward to the
radar receiver.

In accordance with the above definition and the instant features of the present invention, the distinction of these features over the prior art will now be discussed in terms of the seismic range definition. Prior art systems are limited to a trace signal duration that is no shorter than twice the seismic range, primarily because productivity is significantly degraded for trace signal durations less than twice the seismic range. For the condition wherein the trace signal is twice the seismic range, the seismic range or listening period of prior art systems represents half of the trace signal duration and therefore implies only a 50% productivity because VIBROSEIS generators are only ensonifying the subsurface environment for one-half of the trace period; wherein the prior art listening period encompasses the other one-half of the trace signal duration. In accordance with the listening period compensation feature of the present invention, the listening period may be reduced in duration to being less than the seismic range duration and, in the ultimate, the listening period may be eliminated entirely. Therefore, this feature of the present invention may be characterized by an ensonifying signal duration that is less than the seismic range wherein the ensonifying signal duration may be only slightly less than the seismic range duration, may be one-half of the seismic range duration, may be one-fourth of the seismic range duration, may be one-tenth of the seismic range duration, may be one-hundredth of the seismic range duration, or may be any other duration which is less than the seismic range duration.

Although prior art systems use discretely definable signature signals having a precise signature characteristic such as a precisely definable up-chirp signal and because prior art systems separate a sequence of signature signals with listening periods, the sequence of ensonifying signals in prior art systems is readily definable. In accordance with the

instant feature of the present invention for providing
multiplexing of a plurality of different signature signals
either overlapping or being continuous therebetween, an
output signal such as a vibratory seismic signal from a

5   VIBROSEIS generator may not provide readily definable
identification of each of a plurality of different signature
seismic signals. Therefore, definitions will now be provided
to illustrate the characteristic features of the present
invention relating to a plurality of signature signals wherein

10 terms will be defined with reference to Fig 7C. If a plurality
of signature signals 735-741 are generated and multiplexed
together to provide multiplexed signal 742 for ensonifying a
subsurface environment or for other purposes such as communication
of digital information, multiplexed signal 742 may appear to be

15 a continuous signal wherein the component signature signals
signals 735-741 may not be readily identifiable in multiplexed
signal 742. For example, up-chirp signal 735 and down-chirp
signal 736 being overlapping therebetween and being multiplexed
together into multiplexed signal 742 are not readily

20 identifiable in multiplexed signal 742. The significance of
providing a plurality of different signature signals may be
best characterized by the use or purpose of multiplexing
together a plurality of signature signals. For embodiments
wherein a plurality of signature signals are multiplexed together

25 or generated together, either overlapping or in sequence; the
purpose of using such different signature signals is for
separation therebetween through correlation in a signal processing
system. Therefore, a definition of whether multiplexed
signal 742 is a single signature signal or represents a plurality

30 of signature signals may be defined by evaluating the correlation
processor and the pilot signals related thereto as indicating
the number of different signature signals to be separated. For
the example shown in Fig 7C, a multiple channel correlator is

provided for correlating multiplexed signal 742 with up-chirp
signal 743A with a first correlator channel and with down-chirp
signal 743B with a second correlator channel to separate
up-chirp and down-chirp signals multiplexed together as

5   multiplex signal 742 to generate separate up-chirp related
signal 744A and down-chirp related signal 744B. In view of
the above, the number of different signature signals contained
in multiplexed signal 742 may be related to the number of
signature signals separated therefrom with multiple channel

10 correlators, or the number of different pilot signals used
with said multiple channel correlator that are related to the
combined signals in multiplexed signal 742, or the number of
output signals separated through correlation from multiplexed
signal 742 rather than merely the number of signal components

15 multiplexed together to form multiplexed signal 742. Therefore,
the number of signature signals may be defined in relation to
features of the system. In one embodiment, the number of
signature signals may be related to the number of signal
components generated separately and combined theretogether

20 such as with multiplexer 759 (Fig 7D). In an alternate
embodiment, the number of signature signals may be related to
the number of correlator channels in a multiple channel correlator
for processing the trace signals. In another alternate
embodiment, the number of signature signals may be related to

25 the number of pilot signals or to the number of different
signature pilot signals utilized in filtering the trace
signals. In still another alternate embodiment, the number
of different signature signals may be related to the number of
different correlation output signals for the number of meaningful

30 and independent sets of correlator output information.

The teachings of the present invention provide for improving capability over prior art systems such as reduction or elimination of non-productive listening periods and increasing productivity through obtaining of meaningful information not

5 available with prior art systems including simultaneous ensonification of a plurality of shotpoints and overlapping of a plurality of different signature signals for separation and compositing therebetween. Therefore, it is herein intended that embodiments incorporating such improvements and exemplified

10 with the simplified examples provided herein be included in the terminology relating to the inventive features. For example language relating to a plurality of sequential ensonifying signals is intended to include overlapping signals having different start times or different end times, a multiplexed

15 signal having different signature component signals which may be separated with a plurality of correlator channels operating in response to different pilot signals, ensonification with a plurality of generators to generate independent signals related to simultaneously ensonifying a subsurface environment with a

20 sequence of signals, and other methods of combining, separating, and otherwise structuring signals and processing thereof to implement the features of the present invention.

The listening period compensation feature of the present invention will now be illustrated with an example.

25 For a system requiring a seismic range of 8-seconds for identifying subsurface structures at 40,000-feet distance, a plurality of ensonifying signals may be generated having over-lapping, adjacency, or continuity therebetween; wherein over-lapping, adjacent, or other ensonifying signal relationships which

30 are spaced closer than the seismic range related listening period may have different signatures therebetween for separation through correlation. For the above seismic range of 8-seconds, a first ensonifying signal having a first signature may be generated

for 8-seconds, followed immediately by a second ensonifying
signal having a second signature and being generated for a
duration of 8-seconds, followed immediately by the first above-
mentioned ensonifying signal, etc; wherein each ensonifying
5 signal having the same signature may have a spacing therebetween
related to the 8-second seismic range duration and wherein the
seismic range duration between ensonifying signals having the
same signatures may be "filled-in" with ensonifying signals
having different signatures. In an alternate arrangement, a
10 first signal having a first signature may be generated for a
duration of 6-seconds, followed by a two-second time delay
without ensonifying signal generation, followed by a second
signal having a second signature with a duration of 6-seconds,
followed by a two-second time delay without ensonifying signal
15 generation, followed again by the sequence starting with the
first ensonifying signal having the first signature. In still
another embodiment, a first ensonifying signal having a duration
of ten-seconds and having a first signature may be generated
followed by and a second ensonifying signal having a duration of
20 ten-seconds and having a second signature may be generated
having an overlapping signal portion therebetween of two-seconds
duration. The above three examples exemplify the conditions
of continuously generated ensonifying signals without spacings
between different signature signals, generation of a plurality
25 of ensonifying signals having spacings therebetween wherein
the spacings are less than the seismic range duration, and
generation of different signature seismic signals having
overlapping therebetween. The above examples were provided for
simplicity of illustration of the alternates of the instant
30 feature of the present invention wherein the plurality of
different signature ensonifying signals may have the same
durations therebetween, different durations therebetween,
durations equal to the seismic range duration, durations

different from the seismic range duration, continuous generation from a first signature signal to a second signature signal, spacings between the sequential signature signals, and overlapping between the sequential signature signals. For simplicity of illustration, the above examples provided two different sequential signature signals before repeating the sequence of signature signals, wherein it is herein intended that the sequence of different signature signals be exemplary of the more general embodiment wherein a plurality of signature signals which may be more than two signature signals is exemplified with the simple example above for two signature signals. Another example of a plurality of signature signals may provide for three different signature signals being adjacent, overlapping therebetween, or having spaces therebetween wherein the spaces are less than the seismic range duration.

In another example, it may be assumed that the system has a seismic range of 8-seconds having a first signature ensonifying signal generated with a duration of 4-seconds followed immediately by a second signature ensonifying signal having a duration of 4-seconds and followed immediately thereafter by a third seismic signature ensonifying signal having a duration of 4-seconds, then repeating the sequence of the set of three ensonifying signals each having a 4-second duration and being substantially continuous therebetween. This example provides for a relatively short signature signal followed by a plurality of other signature signals wherein the duration of the signature signals following a first signature signal may be equal to or greater than the seismic range duration so that the first signature signal is not repeated until after the completion of the seismic range duration.

Multiple Shot Point Arrangement

An arrangement in accordance with the present invention will now be discussed for acquiring a plurality of sets of information simultaneously in contrast to prior art system

5 arrangements for acquiring sets of information sequentially. This arrangement of the present invention will be discussed for a geophysical embodiment which is intended to be exemplary of the broad scope and applicability of this inventive feature.

Prior art systems use a plurality of VIBROSEIS generators

10 positioned at a single shotpoint and used to ensonify the subsurface environment. This plurality of VIBROSEIS generators operate in parallel to intensify the ensonifying signals over that generated with a single VIBROSEIS generator. Trace signals are received and composited in a geophysical exploration system

15 for subsequent recording. After a sufficient number of composites have been acquired for a partciular shotpoint, the VIBROSEIS generators are moved to another shotpoint and again are used to ensonify the subsurface environment with a plurality of chirp signals for generating a plurality of traces for compositing

20 for the second shotpoint. Therefore, prior art systems require a number of time-consuming moves and set-ups for the VIBROSEIS generators that is proportional to the number of shotpoints.

In accordance with the instant feature of the present invention, an arrangement is provided for reducing the number

25 of move and setup operations for the VIBROSEIS generators. A plurality of VIBROSEIS generators may be used to ensonify the subsurface environment such as with the arrangements shown in Figs 1C and 1D having a first VIBROSEIS generator 128A and a second VIBROSEIS generator 128B for generating ensonifying signals

30 129A and 129B respectively. The instant feature of the present invention is directed to reducing VIBROSEIS movements and setups. In accordance with this feature, each VIBROSEIS generator 128A

and 128B may be set up at a different shotpoint, wherein
VIBROSEIS 128A may be set up at a first shotpoint and
VIBROSEIS 128B may be set up at a second shotpoint. Each
VIBROSEIS may generate a different signature signal where,
5 for example, ensonifying signal 129A from VIBROSEIS generator
128A may be an up-chirp signal and ensonfiying signal 129B
from VIBROSEIS generator 128B may be a down-chirp signal.
Ensonifying signals 129A and 129B may be multiplexed together
by transmission through the subsurface environment and may be
10 received by array 110 as a multiplexed seismic signal. Array 110
may generate signals 111 for processing with signal processor 112
to generate processed multiplexed signal 113 for digital filtering
operations.

In one embodiment discussed with reference to Fig 1C,
15 a plurality of sequential trace signals may be composited
together with compositor 114 to generate composited signal 115
to multi-channel correlator 116. Multi-channel correlator 116
may correlate composited signal 115 with a plurality of pilot
signals, wherein a first correlator channel 116A may correlate
20 composited signal 115 with a first pilot signal 122A which
may be an up-chirp pilot signal and a second correlator channel
116B may correlate composited signal 115 with a second pilot-
signal which may be a down-chirp pilot signal for generating
output signal 117A from correlator 116A related to up-chirp
25 portions of composited signal 115 and for generating output
signal 117B from correlator 116B related to down-chirp portions
of composited signal 115 respectively. Therefore, correlation
output signal 117A may be related to the ensonifying signals
generated at the first shotpoint with VIBROSEIS 128A and
30 correlation output signal 117B may be related to the ensonifying
signals generated at the second shotpoint with VIBROSEIS 128B.
Because chirp signals from different shotpoints that are
generated simultaneously or overlapping therebetween are

multiplexed theretogether as they propagate through the subsurface environment, an acquired multiplexed signal may be related to multiplexing ensonifying signals from each of a plurality of shotpoints. As discussed above, each VIBROSEIS

5 generator related to different shotpoints generates an ensonifying signal having different signatures therebetween, wherein the different signatures related to different shotpoints may be separated through correlation with multi-channel correlator 116 for providing separate information from different

10 shot-points simultaneously.

In an alternate embodiment discussed with reference to Fig 1D, processed multiplexed signal 113 may be processed with correlator 116 which may be a multi-channel correlator having a first correlator channel 116A and a second correlator channel

15 116B. Processed signal 113 may be correlated with a first pilot signal 122A which may be an up-chirp signal for generating correlated output signal 117A related to the ensonifying signal 129A from VIBROSEIS 128A at the first shotpoint. Similarly, processed signal 113 may be correlated with a second pilot

20 signal 122B which may be a down-chirp signal for generating correlated output signal 117B related to ensonifying signal 129B from VIBROSEIS 128B at the second shotpoint. Therefore, correlated output signal 117 may be related to ensonifying signals from the first shotpoint and correlated output signal

25 117B may be related to ensonifying signals from the second shotpoint for ensonifying the subsurface structures from two shotpoints simultaneously. Correlation output signals 117A and 117B may be composited either together or separately with compositor 121 and may be recorded together with

30 a single recorder 118 (Fig 1D) or may be recorded separately with a separate recorder 118A and 118B for each of the separate correlated output signals 118A and 118B (Fig 1C). For this

embodiment wherein a plurality of ensonifying signals are generated simultaneously for different shotpoints, it may be desirable to maintain the ensonifying correlation output signals, which are related to each different shotpoint, separate therebetween for

5   separate gathering, static and dynamic corrections, and stacking operations. Therefore, correlated output signals 117A and 117B may not be composited therebetween but may be individually recorded for separate processing therebetween.

Logistics and productivity advantages of the multiple

10   shotpoint feature of the present invention will now be illustrated with several examples. For these examples, a set of chirp signals will be generated and composited for each of 100-shotpoints, wherein each chirp signal will have a period of 30-seconds including a listening period, and wherein

15   movement to and setup at a new shotpoint will take five-minutes. A constant seismic energy arrangement will be assumed wherein a single VIBROSEIS generator per shotpoint must generate a set of 20-composites, two-VIBROSEIS generators per shotpoint must generate a set of 10-composites and five

20   VIBROSEIS generators per shotpoint must generate a set of 4-composites.

A prior art arrangement having two VIBROSEIS generators per shotpoint requires a set of 10-composites per shotpoint and 100-moves between shotpoints. Based upon ½-minutes per composite and

25   5-minutes per move; a composite time of 5-minutes is required per shotpoint, a total composite time of 500-minutes is required per 100-shotpoints, and a total time of 500-minutes is required per 100-moves; yielding a total time of 1,000-minutes per compositing and movement time per 100-shotpoints.

The instant method of the present invention having two
VIBROSEIS generators with one VIBROSEIS generator at each of
a pair of shotpoints requires a set of 20-composites per
pair of shotpoints and 50-moves between pairs of shotpoints.

5   Based upon ½-minute per pair of composites and 5-minutes per
pair of moves; a composite time of 10-minutes per pair of
shotpoints, a total composite time of 500-minutes is required
per 50-pairs of shotpoints, and a total time of 250-minutes
is required per 50-pairs of moves; yielding a total time of

10 750-minutes per compositing and movement time per 100-shotpoints.
This total time of 750-minutes is approximately 25% less time
than the 1,000-minutes required for the prior art arrangement
using two VIBROSEIS generators.

A prior art arrangement having five VIBROSEIS generators

15 per shot-point requires a set of 4-composites per shotpoint and
100-moves between shotpoints. Based upon ½-minutes per composite and
5-minutes per move; a composite time of 2-minutes is required
per shotpoint, a total composite time of 200-minutes is
required per 100-shotpoints, and a total time of 500-minutes

20 is required per 100-moves; yielding a total time of 700-minutes
per compositing and movement time per 100-shotpoints.

The instant method of the present invention having five
VIBROSEIS generators with one VIBROSEIS generator at each of
five-shotpoints requires a set of 20-composites per set of 5-

25 shotpoints and 20-moves between sets of 5-shotpoints. Based
upon ½-minutes per set of 5-composites and 5-mintues per set of 5-
moves; a composite time of 10-minutes is required per set of 5-shot-
points, a total composite time of 200-minutes is required per 20-sets
of 5-shotpoints, and a total time of 100-minutes is required

30 per 20-sets of moves; yielding a total time of 300-minutes per
compositing and movement time per 100-shotpoints. This total
time of 300-minutes is approximately 60% less time than the

700-minutes required for the prior art arrangement using five VIBROSEIS generators.

In view of the above, using a plurality of VIBROSEIS generators in accordance with the present invention may

5 reduce average move and setup time and may not affect compositing time. Assuming that a geophysical exploration system may be leased for $5,000 per day; a 25% increase in productivity may be related to $1,250 savings per day and a 60% increase in productivity may be related to $3,000 savings per day.

10 The instant feature of the present invention for simultaneously ensonifying multiple shotpoints will now be discussed with reference to the signals shown in Fig 3D. Signal 336 is shown as an up-chirp signal which may be the same as ensonifying signal 129A from VIBROSEIS generator 128A (Figs 1C and

15 1D) and signal 337 is shown as a down-chirp signal which may be the same as ensonifying signal 129B from VIBROSEIS generator 128B at a first and at a second shotpoint respectively. Reflections from the up-chirp and down-chirp ensonifying signals may be multiplexed together by propagation through the subsurface

20 environment and may be received by a transducer array as a multiplexed signal containing multitudes of up-chirp and down-chirp signal reflections multiplexed together. A simple illustration is provided in Fig 3D showing two reflectors for reflecting up-chirp ensonifying signal 336 as reflected up-chirp

25 signals 338 and 340 and for reflecting down-chirp ensonifying signal 337 as reflected down-chirp signals 339 and 341, wherein an actual geophysical application may receive reflections from thousands of subsurface reflectors.

Up-chirp signal 336 from a first shotpoint may be reflected from a first subsurface reflector as up-chirp reflection 338 and from a second subsurface reflector as up-chirp reflection 340. Similarly, down-chirp signal 337 from a

5   second shotpoint may be reflected from a first subsurface reflector as down-chirp reflection 339 and from a second sub-surface reflector as down-chirp reflection 341. The two shot-points may be adjacent shotpoints being spaced relatively close together, wherein the reflection of ensonifying signals

10   from each of the two adjacent shotpoints occurs substantially simultaneously because of substantially constant propagation paths due to the close proximity between adjacent shotpoints. Therefore, for simplicity of illustration, up-chirp and down-chirp reflections 338 and 339 respectively from a first reflector

15   and up-chirp and down-chirp reflections 340 and 341 from a second reflector are shown lined-up for simplicity of illustration. Therefore, up-chirp signal 338 and down-chirp signal 339 generated at different shotpoints are shown lined-up vertically related to similar propagation paths to the first subsurface

20   reflector for simplicity of illustration and up-chirp signal 340 and down-chirp signal 341 generated at different shotpoints are shown lined up vertically related to similar propagation paths to the second subsurface reflector for simplicity of illustration. Ensonifying signals from different shotpoints

25   may have different propagation paths to a reflector and therefore may have different time relationships, wherein chirp-signal reflections from a particular subsurface reflector due to ensonification from different shotpoints may have different time-phase relationships and therefore may not necessarily

30   line-up as shown in Fig 3D. Regardless, for simplicity of discussion and illustration, such reflections of ensonifying signals generated at different shotpoints from the same reflector are shown lined up in Fig 3D.

Reflections 338-341 are shown multiplexed together by propagation through the subsurface environment to form multiplexed signal 342. Signals shown in Fig 3D may correspond to signals shown in Figs 1C and 1D. Multiplexed signal 342 may be received

5   by array 110 as signals 109, 109A, and 109B. Array 110 may generate array signal 111 for processing with signal processor 112 to generate processed multiplexed signal 113 for compositing and for correlation. The processed multiplexed signal 113 and 342 may be further processed with multi-channel correlator 116.

10   Correlator channel 116A may correlate multiplexed signal 113 and 342 with up-chirp pilot signal 122A and 336 to generate correlated output signal 117A and 343 related to a first shot-point and correlator channels 116B may correlate multiplexed signal 113 and 342 with down-chirp pilot signal 122B and 337

15   to generate correlated output signal 117B and 344 related to a second shotpoint.

Another example of the method of simultaneously ensonifying the subsurface environment from a plurality of shotpoints will be described with reference to Fig 7C. Assuming up-chirp signals

20   are generated with first VIBROSEIS 128A at a first shotpoint and down-chirp signals are generated with second VIBROSEIS 128B at a second shotpoint, a plurality of up-chirp and down-chirp signal reflections 735-741 may be multiplexed together as multiplexed signal 742. For conditions of significantly

25   different propagation times from each shotpoint to the subsurface reflectors such as for widely separated shotpoints, the up-chirp reflections related to the first shotpoint have different times of arrival than the down-chirp reflections related to the second shotpoint. A plurality of reflectors

30   may generate up-chirp reflections 735, 737, 739, and 741 in response to ensonifying signals from the first shotpoint and a plurality of reflectors may generate down-chirp reflections 736, 738, and 740 in response to ensonifying signals from the

second shotpoint. Transducer array 110 receives
reflections 735-741 multiplexed together due to propagation
through the subsurface environment, wherein the array signals
may be multiplexed signal 742. Correlation of signal 742 with

5   up-chirp pilot signal 743A related to the ensonifying signals
from the first shotpoint will generate correlation peaks shown
as signal 744A related to the reflectors and relative propa-
gation times associated with the first shotpoint and correlation
of signal 742 with a down-chirp pilot signal 743B related to

10 ensonifying signals from the second shotpoint will generate
correlation peaks shown as signal 744B related to reflectors and
spacings due to the propagation times associated with the
second shotpoint. Correlation signal 744A related to the first
shotpoint and correlation signal 744B related to the second

15 shotpoint may be individually recorded with separate output
devices such as output device 118A and output device 118B
shown in Fig 1C for subsequent gathering, stacking, and static
and velocity corrections.

An arrangement for correlating a trace signal or a

20 plurality of trace signals with a pilot signal or a plurality
of pilot signals in combination has been discussed with reference
to Figs 5A and 6E above. For the method of simultaneously
ensonifying from multiple shotpoints, these arrangements of
Figs 5A and 6E may be used wherein a single trace signal may

25 be provided to a plurality of correlator channels such as
compositor signal 115 (Fig 1C) and processed signal 113 (Fig 1D)
for correlation with a plurality of pilot signals 122A and 122B
using a plurality of correlator channels 116A and 116B for
generating a plurality of output signal samples 117A and 117B

30 (Figs 1C and 1D).

Another embodiment of the simultaneous ensonification from multiple shotpoint feature of the present invention will now be described, wherein explosive type of ensonifying sources may be used in place of the VIBROSEIS generators discussed above. The advantages achieved with the above described VIBROSEIS generator embodiment are applicable to the explosive type generators described hereinafter. Two primary differences exist for the explosive type generators when compared to chirp VIBROSEIS generators, wherein explosive type ensonifying signals have a significantly shorter duration and explosive type generators may not provide repeatable ensonifying signals.

Explosive type generators may provide only a short ensonifying signal. For example, dynamite blasts may provide only milliseconds of ensonifying signal duration compared to seconds of vibratory VIBROSEIS ensonifying signals thereby involving about a factor-of-1,000 difference in time duration. A pattern of explosive charges may be provided to lengthen the duration of explosive ensonifying signals but the explosive signals may still have a period of only about one-thousandth of the period of VIBROSEIS chirp signals.

Explosive ensonifying signals may not be repeatable relative to VIBROSEIS ensonifying signals, where explosive charges may not be controllable to a desired predictable precision. Therefore, it may be desirable to monitor the explosive ensonifying signals by sampling the signals such as with a whole-number analog-to-digital converter discussed with reference to Fig 2 above or with a single-bit converter discussed with reference to Fig 4 above. Sampled and stored explosive ensonifying signals may be used as pilot signals for correlation, thereby circumventing problems associated with the nonrepeatability or nonpredictability of the explosive signal signatures.

An explosive signal may be monitored with a geophone located near the ensonified shotpoint, wherein sampling operations may be initiated with the same signal that initiates the explosive charges. The sampled signals may be transmitted
5   to the appropriate correlator channels for storage as a pilot signal for subsequent correlation with monitored trace signals. For simultaneous ensonifying of a plurality of shotpoints, explosive charges may be initiated in a non-overlapping sequence, wherein a charge at a first shotpoint may be initiated and
10   sampled, followed by an explosive charge at a second shotpoint being initiated and monitored, followed by a next sequential explosive charge being initiated at each of the other shot- points to be simultaneously ensonified. Therefore, ensonifying signals may not be overlapping therebetween but may be over-
15   lapping the longer trace signals generated by reflections as the short ensonifying signals propogate through the subsurface environment. A multi-channel correlator may receive a sequence of nonoverlapping sampled ensonifying signals from each of the plurality of simultaneously ensonifyied shotpoints for storage
20   as pilot signals and may receive a trace signal related to multiplexed reflections associated with the ensonifying signals from the plurality of shotpoints. A plurality of correlator channels may each correlate the trace signal with a different one of the sampled pilot signals to separate the reflections
25   associated with each of the simultaneously ensonified shotpoints therebetween as discussed above for the VIBROSEIS generator embodiment.

Because of the sequential nature of initiating explosive ensonifying charges, the correlated output signals
30   may have a time relationship or phase relationship between each of the simultaneously ensonified shotpoints; wherein a correlation output signal related to a earlier ensonified shotpoint may have an earlier time phase relationship than

correlation output signals associated with each of the later ensonified shotpoints and wherein the time-phase relationship may be related to the time sequence of initiating explosive ensonifying charges. In an embodiment where explosive

5 ensonifying signals are generated in a time sequence but correlation operations for all channels are initiated simultaneously, correlation output signals being phase shifted therebetween may be recorded maintaining the phase shifted relationships and may have information recorded therewith

10 identifying the degree of phase shift or may be phase shifted after correlation to normalize the starting points for each ensonifying explosive signal to the same time-phase relationship. In an alternate embodiment, correlation operations for each of the plurality of channels may not start simultaneously

15 therebetween but may start at sequential times related to the sequential time relationships between initiation of ensonifying explosive charges.

Although a plurality of explosive charges may have different signatures therebetween or may not be repeatable nor

20 predictable, the differences in the signatures may be relatively small wherein separation between channels for different shotpoint pilot signals may be poor. Therefore, shaped explosive charges may be provided wherein the sequential or overlapping ensonifying signals for each of the plurality of shotpoints may be shaped

25 to have different durations, amplitudes, and other such characteristics. For example, an explosive charge may be composed of a plurality of subcharges exploded in sequence having particular time relationships and amplitude relation- ships therebetween. Shaping of charges to provide explosive

30 signal envelopes having desired characteristics is well known in the explosive art. Therefore, explosive charges at each of a plurality of shotpoints may be shaped to have different signatures therebetween for good separation of related reflected signals therebetween.

Further, in accordance with the present invention, an arrangement having simultaneous ensonification of a plurality of shotpoints may use combinations of continuous ensonifying signals such as provided with a VIBROSEIS generator and explosive

5   signals as provided with dynamite, wherein VIBROSEIS ensonifying signals and simultaneous or overlapping explosive ensonifying signals may provide overlapping trace signals therebetween and may be initiated at different shotpoints therebetween.

In view of the above, a significant enhancement in

10   productivity can be achieved by ensonifying the subsurface environment with an ensonifying source at each of a plurality of shotpoints, wherein the ensonifying signal from each shot-point may have a signature that is different than the ensonifying signal from each other simultaneously ensonified shotpoint for

15   separation through correlation of the reflections from subsurface structures related to each shotpoint. Although this method of the present invention has been discussed for the embodiment of a geophysical exploration system, it is equally applicable to other systems such as underwater acoustics systems.

Multiple Channel Ensonification From Each Shotpoint

      In accordance with another feature of the present invention, an arrangement and method will now be provided for ensonifying the subsurface environment with a plurality of

5 overlapping signal channels to enhance productivity. Prior art systems provide only a single channel of ensonifying signals and provide only a single correlator for processing the trace signal. Therefore, prior art systems require generation of multiple sequential ensonifying signals for providing multiple composites

10 and require listening periods therebetween.

      In accordance with the instant feature of the present invention, generating of overlapping ensonifying signals having a different time-phase relationship therebetween permits substantially simultaneous ensonification and substantially simultaneous

15 correlation and compositing of multiplexed signals; thereby simultaneously ensonifying the subsurface environment with a plurality of overlapping signals for compositing in contrast to the prior art method of sequentially ensonifying the subsurface environment with a plurality of sequential non-overlapping signals

20 for compositing theretogether.

      The degree of improvement in productivity of the instant feature of the present invention compared to prior art methods may be better understood with a simple example. Prior art systems may provide 16-composites of a trace signal having a

25 24-second pilot signal and an 8-second listening period, where acquisition of 16-sequential 32-second duration trace signals requires 512-seconds of acquisition, ensonification, and compositing. In accordance with the instant feature of the present invention, 16-different signature signals may be multiplexed together having

30 different time-phase relationships therebetween and being overlapping therebetween; wherein the 16-multiplexed signature signals may be acquired substantially simultaneously and separated

with a 16-channel correlator for compositing theretogether
after correlation. Time duration of the multiplexed trace
signals have approximately the same duration as a single trace
signal without a listening period, which is approximately 24-
5   seconds. Therefore in the above example, an improvement in
productivity of more than 20-times (24-seconds compared to 512-
seconds) may be achieved over prior art arrangements and methods
by the present feature of simultaneous ensonification in contrast
to the prior art method of sequential ensonification and by the
10   present feature of separation of different signature signals
with a plurality of correlator channels in contrast to the prior
art arrangements of having only a single correlator channel.

In accordance with the present invention, a plurality
of ensonifying signals may be generated being overlapping there-
15   between or being continuously generated in sequential form. This
may be contrasted to the prior art ensonifying signals which must
be generated in sequential form having listening periods there-
between due to limitations of those prior art systems. In a
first embodiment of the instant feature of the present invention,
20   ensonifying signals may be generated having overlapping
therebetween and being phase-locked therebetween such as shown
with ensonifying signals 336 and 337 (Fig 3D). In a second
embodiment of the instant feature of the present invention,
signals having different signatures therebetween may be generated
25   in sequence without having overlapping therebetween and without
having the usual prior art listening period. In a third embodi-
ment of the instant feature of the present invention, ensonifying
signals may be generated having overlapping therebetween but
having different time-phase relationships starting at different
30   times therebetween such as shown with ensonifying signals 350-352
(Fig 3E). The first above embodiment is described herein for
multiple shotpoint ensonification with reference to Fig 3D. The

second above embodiment is described herein for reduction or
elimination of a listening period. The third above embodiment
will now be described in detail for compositing of different
trace signal channels multiplexed together and overlapping

5   therebetween to minimize the number of sequential signals required
for compositing.

The conceptual basis associated with mutliplexing a
plurality of different signature trace signals having different
time-phase relationships therebetween will now be discussed. The

10 operation of compositing provides enhancement of signal-to-noise
ratio as is well known in the prior art. In order to provide
this signal-to-noise ratio enhancement, a plurality of trace
signals having statistically independent random noise is desired
for compositing operations. For example, compositing of a first

15 trace signal sample from each of three trace signals theretogether
reduces noise if noise signal components in each of the three
corresponding trace signal samples is different therebetween and
preferably is statistically independent therebetween. In such
a compositing operation the statistically independent nature of

20 the random noise signal components will be reduced by being
summed together. For example, the first sample of a first trace
signal may have a large positive component of noise and the first
sample of a second trace signal may have a large negative component
of noise, wherein summation of the large positive noise component

25 and the large negative noise component may yield a small noise
component; thereby reducing instantaneous noise components and
enhancing the signal-to-noise ratio. For a plurality of
ensonifying signals starting at the same time, corresponding
samples of each of the trace signals may have the same noise

30 components. Compositing of such different trace signals having
the same noise components in corresponding samples may not provide
the above mentioned improvement in signal-to-noise ratio because

the noise components summed theretogether are not statistically
independent but may have the same noise amplitudes, where
compositing of the same noise components may enhance the noise
components along with the signal components. Alternately, if

5 two ensonifying signals are generated having different time-phase
relationships therebetween, corresponding trace signal samples
may have different noise components and the noise components
would be reduced by compositing. For example, if the two
ensonifying signals 336 and 337 (Fig 3D) had a phase shift there-

10 between, then corresponding signal samples would have different
time-phase relationships therebetween and would have different
noise components superimposed on corresponding signal samples;
thereby providing for reduction of noise components through
compositing.

15   In another example, it will be assumed that up-chirp
signal 336 is initiated before down-chirp signal 337, wherein
down-chirp signal 337 will be initiated after the first 100-
sample intervals of up-chirp signal 336. For this example,
sample-101 of up-chirp signal 336 would occur at a time corres-

20 ponding to the time of sample-1 of down-chirp signal 337, sample-
102 of up-chirp signal 336 would occur at a time corresponding
to the time of sample-2 of down-chirp signal 337, etc. Therefore,
sample-1 of down-chirp signal 337 may have the same noise
components as sample-101 of up-chirp signal 336 because they

25 both occur at the same time and sample-1 of down-chirp signal 337
may have different noise components than sample-1 of up-chirp
signal 336 because both, sample-1 of up-chirp signal 336 and
sample-1 of down-chirp signal 337, occur at different times having
100-sample time intervals therebetween. For the compositor

30 arrangement of the present invention, sample-1 of down-chirp
signal 337 may be composited with sample-1 of up-chirp signal
336 for compositing of corresponding samples, but the noise

component of sample-1 of down-chirp signal 337 may be different than the noise component of sample-1 of up-chirp signal 336 because of the 100-sample intervals therebetween. Therefore, compositing of corresponding samples between up-chirp signal 336

5 and down-chirp signal 337 may provide for noise component reduction; wherein different noise components are contained in corresponding signal samples having different time-phase relationships therebetween and wherein such different noise components may have a statistically independent relationship therebetween

10 and may provide noise reduction through compositing therebetween. Therefore, compositing of corresponding samples between up-chirp signal 336 and down-chirp signal 337 may provide for noise component reduction; wherein different noise components are contained in corresponding signal samples having different time-

15 phase relationships therebetween and wherein such different noise components may have a statistically independent relationship therebetween and may provide noise reduction through compositing therebetween.

A preferred time-phase relationship for overlapping

20 ensonifying signals will now be discussed. As discussed above, it is desired to provide a time-phase relationship between over-lapping signals to permit different noise components to be introduced therebetween. Therefore, it is desired to have a time-phase relationship between overlapping ensonifying signals

25 related to the period of the primary noise component. Assuming that the primary noise component has a frequency range from 10-Hz through 50-Hz, it may be desired to provide a phase relationship between channels greater than the period of the 50-Hz noise component. For example, it may be desired to have a 100-millisecond

30 phase relationship between overlapping signals which is longer than the 20-millisecond period associated with 50-Hz noise frequency components. For the above example having 100-samples

of phase shift between overlapping signals, a 1-millisecond sample period for a phase shift of 100-samples provides 100-milliseconds of phase shift which is greater than the 20-millisecond period of the primary lowest frequency noise component.

5   The instant feature of the present invention will now be described with reference to Fig 3E. Three chirp signals having different signatures are shown as signals 350-352 having phase shifts therebetween. Phase shifted signal signatures 350-352 may be multiplexed together as multiplexed signal 353 for

10 ensonifying a subsurface environment. Multiplexed signal 354 may be received by a geophone array as related to ensonifying signal 353 being reflected from each of three subsurface reflectors and having noise pulse 368 superimposed thereon. Trace signal 354 may be a complex signal having three reflections of ensonifying

15 signal 353 multiplexed together as reflected from three subsurface reflectors, wherein a detailed vertical line notation is not shown for signal 354 for simplicity where the three reflections of ensonifying signal 353 multiplexed together in different time-phase relationships results in a densely cluttered schematic

20 notation. Correlation of received trace signal 354 with a three channel correlator may be provided for correlating input trace signal 354 with each of the three ensonifying signals 350-352 to generate three output signals 355-357 each having three peaks related to the three subsurface reflectors and each having a

25 noise pulse occurring at the same time as received noise pulse 368. Phase shifting of signals 355-357 for compositing corresponding samples is shown with signals 358-360 and compositing of signal 358-360 is shown with composited signal 361.

A detailed description of Fig 3E will now be provided.
Three signature signals 350-352 are generated having different
signatures and different time-phase relationships therebetween.
For example, signal 350 may be an up-chirp signal, signal 351
5 may be a down-chirp signal, and signal 352 may be a down-up-chirp
signal, wherein signals 350-352 provide poor correlation there-
between and therefore may be separated through correlation.
Signals 350-352 may be used to ensonify the subsurface environment.
In one embodiment, signals 350-352 may be electrically multiplexed
10 together to form signal 353 as discussed for the multiple chirp
summing arrangement with reference to Fig 7 herein, wherein
multiplexed signal 353 may be used to excite a VIBROSEIS generator
for ensonifying the subsurface environment. Alternately, each of
signals 350-352 may be used to excite a different one of three
15 VIBROSEIS generators for ensonifying the subsurface environment,
wherein signals 350-352 may be multiplexed together in an implicit
form as the independently generated signals 350-352 propa-
gate through the subsurface environment. Ensonifying signal 353
is assumed to be reflected from each of three subsurface structures,
20 wherein the three reflections of multiplexed signal 353 are
superimposed theretogether to form trace signal 354. Trace
signal 354 is shown having noise peak 368 impressed thereon as
illustrating a concept of the instant feature of the present
invention. Trace signal 354 may be received with a geophone
25 array for subsequent processing with a multiple channel correlator.
A first correlator channel may correlate trace signal 354 with
up-chirp signal 350 to generate correlation output signal 355
having three correlation peaks 370-372 related to the three sub-
surface reflectors and having noise pulse 373 impressed thereon.
30 Similarly, a second correlator channel may correlate trace signal
354 with down-chirp signal 351 to generate correlation output
signal 356 having three correlation peaks 380-382 related to

the three subsurface reflectors and having noise pulse 383
impressed thereon. Similarly, a third correlator channel may
correlate trace signal 354 with down-up-chirp signal 352 to
generate correlation output signal 357 having three correlation
5 peaks 390-392 related to the three subsurface reflectors and
having noise pulse 393 impressed thereon. Correlation output
signals 355-357 have corresponding correlation peaks; wherein
correlation peaks 370, 380, and 390 from output signals 355-357
respectively are related to a first subsurface reflector;
10 correlation peaks 371, 381, and 391 from output signals 355-357
respectively are related to a second subsurface reflector; and
correlation peaks 372, 382, and 392 from output signals 355-357
are related to a third subsurface reflector. Similarly, noise
pulses 373, 383, and 393 are related to noise pulse 368 impressed
15 upon trace signal 354. Noise pulse 368 introduced into trace
signal 354 is shown schematically as a sharp noise pulse for
simplicity of illustration of the instant inventive feature.
Similarly, noise pulse 368 is projected vertically downward onto
correlated output signals 355-357 as noise pulses 373, 383, and
20 393 respectively as a schematic notation of illustrating phase
and time relationships; wherein noise pulse 368 may be reduced
in amplitude and spread in time by the process of correlation
and wherein noise pulses 373, 383, and 393 shown in signals
355-357 respectively and 358-360 respectively are shown in
25 schematic pulse form for simplicity of illustrating the instant
inventive feature.

Correlation output signals 355-357 have similar correlation
output peaks representing reflections from the same subsurface
environment, but signals 355-357 have two important differences there-
30 between. First, correlation output signals 355-357 show different time-
phase relationships between corresponding correlation peaks
because of the different time-phase relationships of ensonifying

signals 350-352. Second, noise pulse 368 of trace signal 354
is shown at the same time for each of signals 355-357 and
therefore having different phase relationships between the
phase shifted peaks of signals 355, 356, and 357. The phase

5   shifting is related to down-chirp signal 351 initiated after a
T1 time delay from the start of up-chirp signal 350 and down-up-
chirp signal 352 initiated after a T2 time delay from the start
of down-chirp signal 351. Therefore, output signal peaks 370-372
related to up-chirp signal 350 has a phase lead of period T1

10   relative to output signal peaks 380-382 related to down-chirp
signal 351 and output signal peaks 380-382 related to down-chirp
signal 351 has a further phase lead of period T2 relative to
output signal peaks 390-392 related to down-up-chirp signal 352.
Therefore, correlation peaks of signals 355-357 are phase shifted

15   in relation to the phase shifts between ensonifying signals 350-
352 respectively. Noise pulse 368 impressed upon trace signal 354
at a particular time is therefore impressed upon correlated
output signals 355-357 at a related time independent of the
degree of phase shifting of the signal peak. Therefore, noise

20   pulse 368 is shown schematically on output signals 355-357
occurring at the same time as shown schematically on trace signal
354. Because peaks of signals 355-357 have different phase
relationships therebetween, noise pulses 373, 383, and 393
occurring at the same time have different phase relationships

25   with the correlation peaks of signals 355-357 respectively.
This can be seen by noise pulse 373 occurring inbetween peaks
371 and 372 but being very close to peak 372 in signal 355, noise
pulse 383 occurring inbetween peaks 381 and 382 but being very
close to peak 381 in signal 356, and noise pulse 393 occurring

30   about midway inbetween peaks 390 and 391 in signal 357.

Compositing of signals 355-357 together may be implemented by compositing corresponding signal samples together. For example, the first sample related to up-chirp signal 355 may occur at the start of signal 350, the first sample related to down-chirp

5 signal 351 may occur at the start of signal 351 after a time delay T1 from the first sample of signal 350, and the first sample related to down-up-chirp signal 352 may occur at the start of signal 352 after a time delay T2 from the first sample of signal 351. Compositing of all first samples of output signals

10 355-357 may be shown schematically by shifting output signals 356 and 357 to line up with corresponding samples of output signal 355; wherein output signals 358-360 correspond to output signals 355-357 respectively except that signals 356 and 357 have been phase shifted by a T1 time delay and a T1+T2 time delay respectively to

15 cause corresponding output samples of signals 355-357 to line up as shown for output signals 358-360. Lining up of output samples in signals 358-360 cause related output signal peaks to line up because corresponding output signal peaks are related to the same subsurface reflectors and therefore have the same propaga-

20 tion times and the same phase relationships therebetween. Noise signal pulses 373, 383, and 393 are shown having different phase relationships in each of signals 358-360 respectively wherein lining up of corresponding output signal samples having different time relationships causes

25 noise signal samples having the same time relationship to occur at different phases as shown in signals 358-360. Compositing of signals 358-360 may be provided by adding corresponding output signal samples together, wherein signals 358-360 have been phase shifted to vertically line up corresponding signal samples; where

30 vertically lined up samples may be vertically summed to provide composited signal 361. Composited signal 361 is shown normalized to the peak signal amplitudes. For example, first correlation

peak 362 of signal 361 may be formed by summing together
corresponding samples of correlation peaks 370, 380, and 390,
thereby providing a triple amplitude peak 362 while summing of
first noise pulse 393 provides only a 1/3 amplitude composited

5   noise signal component 365 because noise component 393 only
occurs in one of the three samples composited together from
signals 358-360.   Similarly, correlation peaks 371, 381 and 391
are composited to provide triple amplitude correlation peak 363;
correlation peaks 372, 382 and 392 are composited to provide

10   triple amplitude correlation peak 364; noise pulse 383 is
composited to provide single amplitude noise pulse 366; and
noise pulse 373 is composited to provide single amplitude noise
pulse 367.   Therefore, amplitudes of correlation peaks 362-364
may be enhanced and noise pulses 365-367 may be reduced in relative

15   amplitude through correlation.

In an alternate arrangement, trace signal 354 may be
correlated with each of pilot signals 350-352 through different
correlator channels wherein pilot signals 350-352 may be time
delayed or phase shifted by time delays T1 and T2 shown in Fig 6E

20   for signals 350-352.   Correlating with pilot signals 350-352
being time delayed therebetween may directly generate output
signals 358-360 thereby automatically compensating for phase
shifts T1 and T2 shown for correlation output signals 355-357.
Phase shifting to lineup corresponding signal samples may be

25   implicit in the phase relationships between stored pilot signals,
wherein phase relationships of pilot signals may be defined with
well known prior art techniques and may be stored in pilot signal
memory devices such as P-RAM 625 (Figs 6D and 6E) in phase shifted
form.

The improvement of the instant feature of the present invention will now be discussed with reference to prior art systems to exemplify the advantages of the instant feature. Prior art systems provide for generating a sequence of chirp

5 signals, wherein each of the sequence of chirp signals has the same chirp signature and wherein a listening period is provided inbetween the plurality of ensonifying chirp signals. The reflections for each of the chirp signals are received in sequence and composited together in sequence. After a plurality of trace

10 signals have been sequentially composited together, the composited signals may be corrolated before recording. This is substantially different from the instant feature of the present invention which provides for simultaneously (not sequentially) ensonifying of the subsurface environment with a plurality of

15 overlapping signature signals, separation of the signature signals with a multi-channel correlator (not single channel correlation) wherein each channel is operating in response to a different signature pilot signal, and compositing the plurality of correlated signals after correlation (not before correlation) substantially

20 simultaneously (not sequentially). This feature of the present invention provides significant improvements including improved productivity by simultaneously generating a plurality of signals for compositing and by compositing correlation output signals having different sidelobe components related to different pilot

25 signals and therefore improving precision of the output signal.

The instant feature of the present invention will now be discussed with reference to Fig 1D. A plurality of VIBROSEIS generators 108 including a first VIBROSEIS generator 128A generating a first signature signal 129A and a second VIBROSEIS

30 generator 128B generating a second signature signal 129B may be used to simultaneously ensonify the subsurface environment. Array 110 receives reflections from subsurface structures related

to first and second ensonifying signals 129A and 129B for
generating array signals 111. Signal processor 112 may process
array signals 111 to generate trace signal 113 for correlation
with correlator 116. Correlator 116 may be a multiple channel

5 correlator and may include a first correlator channel 116A for
correlating trace signal 113 with a first signature pilot signal
122A for generating correlation output signal 117A and a second
correlator channel 116B for correlating trace signal 113 with a
second signature pilot signal 122B for generating correlation

10 output signal 117B. If the first pilot signal 122A has a
signature related to the signature of the ensonifying signal 128A,
then the first correlation output signal 117A will be related to
reflections of the first ensonifying signal 129A. Similarly, if
the second pilot signal 122B has a signature related to the

15 signature of the second ensonifying signal 129B, then the second
correlation output signal 117B will be related to reflections
of second ensonifying signal 129B. Correlated output signals
117A and 117B may be composited theretogether with compositor 121
for generating composited output signal 117 to output device 118.

20 In a preferred embodiment, ensonifying signal 129A may be phase
shifted relative to ensonifying signal 129B as described above
with reference to Fig 3E and therefore correlation output signal
117A may be phase shifted relative to correlation output signal 117B.

The instant feature of the present invention will now

25 be described with reference to Fig 5A. Fig 5A has been described
above for a multi-channel correlation embodiment providing
correlation and compositing capability. For the instant feature
of the present invention, the trace signal may be the same
trace signal for all channels, wherein the trace signal channel

30 designator N may be the same for all channels and therefore the
trace signal sample designation T_{LN} may be simplified to trace
signal sample designation T_L. Similarly, all correlation output
signals may be composited theretogether into a single correlation

output signal, wherein the output signal designator N may be the same for all channels and therefore output signal sample designation Z_{KN} may be simplified to output signal sample designation Z_K. In the computation shown for operation 517,

5   the same trace signal sample T_L may be multiplied by the pilot signal samples P_{JN} for each of a plurality of channels to update the same output signal sample Z_K for each channel. In this embodiment, the pilot signal samples P_{JN} may be phase shifted therebetween as shown for pilot signals 350-352 (Fig 3E).

10   Alternately, the updates related to pilot signal samples having the same J-subscript for the same trace signal sample may be composited into different output signal samples of the same output signal to provide for the phase shift relationship therebetween.

15   A multiple channel correlator is shown in Fig 6D, wherein a first correlator channel is provided for processing first trace signal sample T_{LO} and a last correlation channel is provided for processing last trace signal T_{LN}. Each correlator channel may correlate and composite output signals related to

20   different pilot signals P_{JO}-P_{JN} in separate Z-RAM circuits. Alternately, Z-counter 613 and Z-RAM 614 may be common to all channels, wherein each product signal from gate 627 may be used to update the related output signal sample in Z-counter 613 in sequence as described for a multiple channel correlation and

25   compositing embodiment above.

          A hardware embodiment of the instant feature of the present invention will now be discussed with reference to Fig 7D. Generation of different signature signals having different phase relationships may be provided with the arrangement shown in

30   Fig 7D. A squarewave signal 714 may be used to control generation of overlapping signature signals wherein the positive transition of squarewave signal 714 may clock counter 753 and the negative

transition of squarewave signal 714 may be inverted with inverter 752 to clock counter 754. Output signals from counter 753 may be decoded with decoder 755 and output signals from counter 754 may be decoded with decoder 756 to be distributed between a

5 first set of chirp generators including generator 757 and a second plurality of chirp generators including generator 758 respectively. Chirp output signals 763 and 773 from chirp generators 757-758 may be multiplexed together with amplifier 759 for exciting a VIBROSEIS signal generator with signals 722 and

10 742. If the chirp generators including chirp generator 757 that are responsive to decoder 755 are up-chirp generators and if the chirp generators including chirp generator 758 that are responsive to decoder 756 are down-chirp generators, then the up-chirp signal will be generated in response to a positive

15 transition of signal 714 and a down-chirp signal will be generated in response to a negative transition of signal 714. Because positive transitions and negative transitions of signal 714 occur at different times, up-chirp signal generators responsive to positive transitions and down-chirp signal generators responsive

20 to negative transitions will generate up-chirp signals starting at different times than down-chirp signals being multiplexed together. Therefore, a plurality of signature signals may be generated having phase shifts therebetween for multiplexing theretogether to simultaneously ensonify a subsurface environment

25 with phase shifted overlapping signature signals.

Correlation Output On-The-Fly

For simplicity of discussion, correlator embodiments discussed above have shown all of the output signal samples related to correlation of a trace signal stored in the output
5 memory such as Z-RAM 613 until all compositing and correlation operations have been completed. The required amount of output signal sample memory for such examples is related to the difference in the number of trace signal samples and the number of pilot signal samples as defined by equation (2) above. In
10 accordance with an output on-the-fly feature of the present invention, output memory requirements may be reduced by outputting output signal samples on-the-fly as they become fully updated rather than storing them until all output signal samples become fully updated. In accordance with the output on-the-
15 fly feature of the present invention, output memory requirements may be further reduced by eliminating the requirement to store output signal samples that have not been updated for a first time. Further, in accordance with the output on-the-fly feature of the present invention, time to output correlated
20 signal samples may be reduced by outputting correlated signal samples simultaneously with acquisition and correlation of trace signal samples. This output on-the-fly feature of the present invention permits correlation of substantially continuous trace signals of extreme length but requiring a relatively
25 small output signal memory wherein the output signal memory requirement may be defined by (1) the number of pilot signal samples or (2) the difference in the number of trace signal samples and the number of pilot signal samples as set forth in equation (2) above; whichever of items (1) and (2) above is
30 less. For trace signals that are significantly longer than pilot signals, item (1) above is less. For trace signals that are only slightly longer than pilot signals, item (2) above is less. Examples may be provided wherein the trace signal

is significantly longer than the pilot signal and therefore
it may be assumed herein that the output memory requirement
is equal to the number of pilot signal samples for simplicity
of discussion. The "on-the-fly" output arrangement may be

5   used for minimizing output signal sample memory requirements
particularly when correlating extremely long continuous trace
signals. An arrangement has been described herein for correlating
on-the-fly without buffering trace signal samples at the
correlator input. Particular advantages are achieved with the

10   feature for correlating on-the-fly without buffering trace
signal samples in combination with the feature for outputting
on-the-fly without buffering all output signal samples in
accordance with the instant feature of the present invention.

        Continuous correlation of input trace signals may

15   be provided with an output signal sample memory that is
significantly smaller than indicated by equation (2) above.
This arrangement will now be discussed with reference to   .
Table III. As discussed above, when each trace signal sample
is acquired with time progressing toward the right-hand part of

20   Table III, a plurality of pilot signal samples for a related
trace signal sample column are compared with each acquired
trace signal sample and each pilot signal sample and trace
signal sample comparison is used to update a group of output
signal samples that is less than the total of all output signal

25   samples. For this example, acquisition of trace signal sample T_3
provides for updating the $Z_0 - Z_3$ output signal samples with
pilot signal samples $P_3 - P_0$ respectively. Similarly, acquisition
of trace signal sample T_4 provides for updating of output
signal samples $Z_1 - Z_4$. Similarly, as the acquired trace signal

30   samples progress towards the right-hand portion of Table III,
the pilot signal samples progress vertically downward in
Table III indicative of updating of groups of output signal
samples having increased subscript designators and therefore

having increased time-phase considerations. As acquisition
of trace signal samples progresses from trace signal sample T_3
to trace signal sample T_4, output signal sample Z_0 being
fully updated with trace signal sample T_3 is not updated with

5   trace signal sample T_4 but output signal samples Z_1-Z_3 are not
fully updated with trace signal sample T_3 and therefore must
be updated with trace signal sample T_4. Therefore, as
acquisition of trace signal samples progresses toward the
right-hand portion of Table III, earlier time related output

10   signal samples having lower magnitude subscripts become fully
updated. Therefore, output signal samples that are fully
updated need not be stored in the output signal sample memory
and may be output to external devices for processing such as
to a magnetic tape recorder for recording. Similarly, as

15   acquisition of trace signal samples progresses to the right-hand
portion of Table III, subsequent output signal samples having
greater time relations such as output signal samples having
greater subscript magnitudes may not be updated for earlier
trace signal samples but may be updated for later trace signal

20   samples. For example, output signal sample Z_9 may not be
updated until trace signal sample T_9 is acquired and therefore
an output signal storage location need not be preserved for
output signal samples Z_9 until the acquisition of a related
trace signal sample which is trace signal sample T_9.

25   In view of the above, only a limited set of output
signal samples need be updated for each acquired trace signal
sample wherein the set of output signal samples that are
updated in response to each acquired trace signal sample may
not exceed the number of pilot signal samples. For the example

30   shown in Table III, the maximum number of pilot signal
samples is P_0-P_3 and therefore a maximum number of four output
signal samples Z_K are updated in response to a particular trace
signal sample T_L. Therefore, there may be no need to store a

greater number of output signal samples in the output signal
memory than the number of pilot signal samples. In general, a
pilot signal has a limited number of samples such as the four
pilot signal samples for the example shown in Table III or

5   the 24,000 pilot signal samples for a geophysical example
described herein. Further, a trace signal may have a very
large number of samples and may approach an unlimited number
of samples such as for a trace signal being continually acquired
and correlated without interruption or discontinuities. For

10 such a pilot signal having a limited number of pilot signal
samples and such a trace signal having an unlimited number of
trace signal samples, equation (2) indicates a very large
number of output signal samples related to the difference
between the number of trace signal samples and the number of

15 pilot signal samples. If only a limited quantity of output
signal samples are updated in response to each acquired trace
signal sample and if processing of output signal samples is
sequential; then a limited group of output signal samples may
be updated as each trace signal sample is acquired. Fully updated

20 output signal samples may not be preserved in output signal
memory but may be output from the system as being fully updated
wherein output signal samples that are not as yet updated at
least one time need not be stored in the output signal memory.
Therefore, an output signal memory having a number of samples

25 related to the number of pilot signal samples may be used in
conjunction with a very long trace signal which may be a
continuous trace signal without practical limit nor duration.
In this embodiment, a well known first-in-first-out FIFO
memory may be used wherein fully updated output signal samples

30 are output to external systems and not preserved in storage
and wherein new output signal samples to be updated are entered
into the memory taking positions vacated by outputting of the
fully updated output signal samples.

Operation of a FIFO type memory arrangement can be understood with reference to Table III. The row shown as row M_Z defines a preferred memory location for output signal samples. Memory locations M_0-M_3 comprise four memory locations

5 related to the four pilot signal samples of the example shown in Table III. As trace signal samples T_0-T_3 are acquired in sequence, pilot signal samples P_0-P_3 are used to update output signal samples Z_0-Z_3 stored in memory locations M_0-M_3. After completion of processing in response to trace signal sample T_3,

10 output signal sample Z_0 has been completely updated and may be output to external equipment leaving memory location M_0 available. As trace signal sample T_4 is acquired, pilot signal samples P_0-P_3 are used to update output signal samples Z_4-Z_1 respectively. All four memory locations M_0-M_3 have been

15 committed to output signal samples Z_0-Z_3 respectively, thereby not providing a memory location for output signal sample Z_4 which is being newly updated in response to trace signal sample T_4. Because output signal sample Z_0 stored in memory location M_0 has already been completely updated and therefore output to

20 external equipment, memory location M_0 is not needed to store output signal sample Z_0 and therefore is available to store newly updated output signal sample Z_4 as shown with memory location M_0 being directly below output signal sample Z_4 (Table III. Similarly, as trace signal samples T_5-T_7 are acquired in

25 sequence, output signal samples Z_1-Z_3 in sequence become fully updated in response to the sequence of trace signal samples T_5-T_7 and therefore may be output to external equipment. Similarly, new output signal samples Z_4-Z_7 start to become updated in sequence related to the acquisition of trace signal samples T_4-T_7

30 and therefore require memory storage locations. Therefore, as output signal samples Z_0-Z_3 become fully updated, new output signal samples Z_4-Z_7 respectively become newly updated and require memory storage locations, wherein output signal

samples Z_0-Z_3 being fully updated and being output makes available memory locations M_0-M_3 respectively in sequence for storage of new output signal samples Z_4-Z_7 respectively in sequence and output signal samples Z_4-Z_7 may be stored in

5 memory locations M_0-M_3 respectively as these memory locations become available. Similarly, as other stored output signal samples become fully updated and are output, other newly updated output signal samples requiring memory locations may be assigned memory locations vacated by completely updated

10 signal samples that have been output to external equipment.

In view of the above, an output signal memory may have a storage capacity less than would be required for the number of output signal samples defined by equation (2) above, wherein output signal samples that have been completely updated

15 need not be stored in output signal memory and output signal samples that are not as yet being updated need not be stored in output signal memory; wherein the required number of output signal samples to be stored for updating may be related to the number of pilot signal samples. This embodiment of the present

20 invention is particularly useful when the number of trace signal samples significantly exceeds the number of pilot signal samples. Further, the instant feature of the present invention permits a virtually unlimited length trace signal to be processed with a limited length pilot signal without incurring the virtually

25 limitless output signal memory requirement implied by equation (2) for an extremely long trace signal and a limited length pilot signal.

The instant feature of the present invention is particularly useful for extremely long trace signals. For

30 example, the feature of the present invention related to the elimination of the listening period gap between trace signals provides a substantially continuous and potentially extremely long trace signal, wherein the instant feature of the present

invention is particularly useful for this storing feature in combination with the feature of the present invention related to the elimination of a listening period. As another example, in a passive surveillance sonar application, a correlator may

5   compare a relatively short pilot signal with a very long trace signal being required for long periods of time to detect acoustic signals generated by marine vehicles. In still another embodiment, a correlator may monitor a vibration sensor such as on a piece of machinery or an aircraft engine for detection of

10 a particular vibration signature, wherein the vibration signal may be continuously generated for extremely long periods of time such as for hours of time and wherein the pilot signal may have a limited duration such as for only seconds of time having three-orders-of-magnitude (factor-of-1,000) difference in

15 duration between the pilot signal and the trace signal. In still another example, a signature memory arrangement may provide continuous signature signals such as with a long magnetic tape for correlation with a relatively short pilot signal to generate output digital information.

20   A correlation output signal memory may be used to implement the continuous correlation feature of the present invention with well known memories and control arrangements. Such well known arrangements include a shift register arrangement and a random access memory arrangement which will now be

25 discussed below.

            In a shift register arrangement, a shift register may be implemented to store a plurality of correlation output words and may be arranged for processing through a plurality of output signal samples by outputting fully updated output signal

30 samples at the "front-end" of the memory and entering newly updated output signal samples at the "rear-end" of the memory. This embodiment can be illustrated with reference to Table III, where a four-word output memory M_0-M_3 may be utilized to process

through 13-output signal samples Z_0-Z_{12}. The four shift register words M_0-M_3 may be recirculated for updating with a related pilot signal sample in sequence and the newly acquired trace signal sample T_L. For each recirculation, it may be desired
5 to "dropoff" the oldest stored output signal sample and to add a newly updated output signal sample at the latest memory location. Therefore, for the update recirculation related to trace signal sample T_3, the contents of the least significant memory location M_0 may be output to external devices, the least
10 significant memory location M_0 may be cleared, and the shift register may be recirculated one word time to place the newly available memory location M_0 following the previous last memory location M_3. Subsequent updating of output signal samples Z_1-Z_4 may now be provided in response to trace signal
15 sample T_4, wherein the output signal sample Z_4 newly added for updating may be stored in the previously cleared memory location M_0. Another iteration of four updates for memory locations M_1, M_2, M_3, and M_0 in response to pilot signal samples P_3-P_0 respectively may be performed to update
20 output signal samples Z_1-Z_4 respectively. Similarly, at the end of each recirculation of the output signal shift register, the oldest output signal sample related to a fully updated output signal sample is output to external equipment, the related memory location may be cleared for use with the newest
25 output signal sample to be updated, and the shift register memory may be recirculated by one word time to put it in the proper sequence for updating. A control circuit for the shift register embodiment may sequence through a number of update counts for enabling clock pulses to the shift register, which
30 would be four clock pulses for the example shown in Table III having four memory words M_0-M_3, then would generate a control signal for enabling an extra clock pulse to recirculate and clear the oldest output signal sample and further to output

-344-

that oldest output signal sample to make the related output

memory location available as the newest memory location. These

continuous multi-clock updating and single clock clearing and

recirculating operations may be repeated in repetitive sequence as

5   memory locations M_0-M_3 precess along output signal

samples Z_0-Z_{12}.

      In a random access memory embodiment such as discussed

with reference to Fig 6, random access memory Z-store 614

may operate under control of control logic 615 which may be

10 counter control logic discussed with reference to Figs 6B

and 6D above or may be ROM control logic discussed with

reference to Fig 6C above. For the ROM control logic arrangement

discussed with reference to Fig 6C above, a processing sequence

of Z-store memory addresses may be stored in control ROM 641.

15   The output on-the-fly feature of the present invention

will now be described with reference to Figs 6C and 6D.

Fig 6C provides a ROM control arrangement for use in conjunction

with the correlation channel arrangement shown in Fig 6D.

Fig 6D is shown implemented with a counter control arrangement

20 shown in Fig 6B, wherein the ROM control arrangement shown

in Fig 6C may be used interchangeably therewith and wherein

the ROM control arrangement shown in Fig 6C may be used in

place of the counter control arrangement shown in Fig 6D.

      ROM control 615 has been discussed above with reference

25 to Fig 6C for a preferred embodiment of the present invention.

An alternate embodiment will now be discussed to exemplify the

instant feature of the present invention related to reduction

of output signal memory 614. An input sync signal CR may be

used to clear C-counter 616 and A-counter 640 to initiate

30 correlation and/or compositing operations under control of

ROM 641. C-counter 616 may continue to count through a sequence

of control signals $\overline{C0}$-$\overline{CN}$ for controlling correlator and

compositor operations as discussed above with reference to

Figs 6B and 6D. One of the control signals from C-counter 616 may be used to clock A-counter 640 such as control signal $\overline{C3}$. A-counter 640 may increment through a sequence of ROM addresses for accessing ROM 641 to generate a sequence of control signals

5   and output correlator addresses. Output signals from ROM 641 described with reference to Fig 6C above include the J-address, the K-address, disable signal D, and the end of correlation signal G. For convenience of implementation of the instant feature of the present invention, two additional control

10 signals T and $\overline{CLR}$ may be provided by expanding ROM 641 to having two additional bits for these control signals. A-counter 640 may sequence through a set of control signals and addresses being stored in ROM 641 for controlling operation of the correlator, wherein the sequence of control signals and

15 addresses will be discussed in detail with reference to Table XII hereinafter.

        The instant feature of the present invention will be exemplified with Table XII to illustrate the sequence of operations for controlling a correlator with an output on-the-

20 fly arrangement. The example set forth in Table XII is based upon a 16-sample trace signal, a 4-sample pilot signal, and a 13-sample output signal such as shown in Table III above. Further, the example discussed with reference to Table XII hereinafter may be better understood by cross-referencing to

25 Table III and Figs 6C and 6D.

        Column-A of Table XII represents a sequence of ROM addresses generated by clocking of A-counter 640 with control signal $\overline{C3}$ to sequence through a plurality of states of ROM 641. For the example shown in Table III, a set of 69 A-counter

30 addresses may be used for accessing ROM addresses 0-68. In the following discussion of Table XII, the addresses listed in sequence in column-A will be used to identify control and address words from ROM 641 being in the same row with the accessing address.

TABLE XII

A	L	J	K	M	D	T	$\overline{\text{CLR}}$	J-ADD JmJo		K-ADD KmKo		G
0	-	-	-	0	0	0	0	-	-	0	0	0
1	-	-	-	1	0	0	0	-	-	0	1	0
2	-	-	-	2	0	0	0	-	-	1	0	0
3	-	-	-	3	0	0	0	-	-	1	1	0
4	0	0	0	0	1	0	1	0	0	0	0	0
5	0	-	-	1	0	0	0	-	-	0	1	0
6	0	-	-	2	0	0	0	-	-	1	0	0
7	0	-	-	3	0	0	0	-	-	1	1	0
8	1	1	0	0	1	0	1	0	1	0	0	0
9	1	0	1	1	1	0	1	0	0	0	1	0
10	1	-	-	2	0	0	0	-	-	1	0	0
11	1	-	-	3	0	0	0	-	-	1	1	0
12	2	2	0	0	1	0	1	1	0	0	0	0
13	2	1	1	1	1	0	1	0	1	0	1	0
14	2	0	2	2	1	0	1	0	0	1	0	0
15	2	-	-	3	0	0	0	-	-	1	1	0
16	3	3	0	0	1	1	0	1	1	0	0	0
17	3	2	1	1	1	0	1	1	0	0	1	0
18	3	1	2	2	1	0	1	0	1	1	0	0
19	3	0	3	3	1	0	1	0	0	1	1	0
20	4	3	1	1	1	1	0	1	1	0	1	0
21	4	2	2	2	1	0	1	1	0	1	0	0
22	4	1	3	3	1	0	1	0	1	1	1	0
23	4	0	4	0	1	0	1	0	0	0	0	0
24	5	3	2	2	1	1	0	1	1	1	0	0
25	5	2	3	3	1	0	1	1	0	1	1	0
26	5	1	4	0	1	0	1	0	1	0	0	0
27	5	0	5	1	1	0	1	0	0	0	1	0
28	6	3	3	3	1	1	0	1	1	1	1	0
29	6	2	4	0	1	0	1	1	0	0	0	0
30	6	1	5	1	1	0	1	0	1	0	1	0
31	6	0	6	2	1	0	1	0	0	1	0	0
32	7	3	4	0	1	1	0	1	1	0	0	0
33	7	2	5	1	1	0	1	1	0	0	1	0
34	7	1	6	2	1	0	1	0	1	1	0	0
35	7	0	7	3	1	0	1	0	0	1	1	0
36	8	3	5	1	1	1	0	1	1	0	1	0
37	8	2	6	2	1	0	1	1	0	1	0	0
38	8	1	7	3	1	0	1	0	1	1	1	0
39	8	0	8	0	1	0	1	0	0	0	0	0
40	9	3	6	2	1	1	0	1	1	1	0	0
41	9	2	7	3	1	0	1	1	0	1	1	0
42	9	1	8	0	1	0	1	0	1	0	0	0
43	9	0	9	1	1	0	1	0	0	0	1	0
44	10	3	7	3	1	1	0	1	1	1	1	0
45	10	2	8	0	1	0	1	1	0	0	0	0
46	10	1	9	1	1	0	1	0	1	0	1	0
47	10	0	10	2	1	0	1	0	0	1	0	0
48	11	3	8	0	1	1	0	1	1	0	0	0
49	11	2	9	1	1	0	1	1	0	0	1	0
50	11	1	10	2	1	0	1	0	1	1	0	0
51	11	0	11	3	1	0	1	0	0	1	1	0
52	12	3	9	1	1	1	0	1	1	0	1	0
53	12	2	10	2	1	0	1	1	0	1	0	0
54	12	1	11	3	1	0	1	0	1	1	1	0
55	12	0	12	0	1	0	1	0	0	0	0	0
56	13	3	10	2	1	1	0	1	1	1	0	0
57	13	2	11	3	1	0	1	1	0	1	1	0
58	13	1	12	0	1	0	1	0	1	0	0	0
59	13	0	-	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0
60	14	3	11	3	1	1	0	1	1	1	1	0
61	14	2	12	0	1	0	1	1	0	0	0	0
62	14	1	-	1	0	0	0	0	1	0	1	0
63	14	0	-	2	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0
64	15	3	12	0	1	1	0	1	1	0	0	0
65	15	1	-	1	0	0	0	1	0	0	1	0
66	15	1	-	2	0	0	0	0	1	1	0	0
67	15	0	-	3	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	0
68	-	-	-	-	0	0	0	-	-	-	-	1

Column-L of Table XII identifies the trace signal
sample being processed, wherein the first trace signal
sample T_0 is identified by the 0-terms in column-L
(A-addresses 4-7), the second trace signal sample T_1 is
5 identified by the 1-terms in column-L (A-addresses 8-11),
and other subsequent trace signal samples are identified by
the other sequential sets of numbers through number 15 at the
bottom of column-L (A-addresses 64-67) indicative of the last
trace signal sample T_{15}. The L-parameter may not be generated
10 explicitly by control logic 615, wherein identification of a
trace signal sample may be implicit in the sequence of samples
accessed in response to the processing of sequential trace
signal samples. The last trace signal sample may be identified
with the counter embodiments described with reference to
15 Fig 6D such as with the Lm signal from L-counter 618 defining
the last trace signal sample. For the ROM control arrangement
of Fig 6C, signal G may be used to identify completion of
processing of the last trace signal sample by disabling
A-counter 640.

20   Column-J identifies the pilot signal sample P_J to be
multiplied by the trace signal sample T_L identified in
column-L. Transitionary states at the start of the correlation
and at the completion of correlation shown in Table III as
being related to trace signal sample T_0-T_2 and T_{13}-T_{15}
25 respectively are processed with a reduced number of pilot
signal samples, where the excluded pilot signal samples are
identified by dashes in column-J indicative of don't care
functions. Inbetween the startup transition and the completion
transition of correlation operations, all pilot signal
30 samples J_3-J_0 may be used to update output signal samples Z_K
as shown in Table III and therefore all pilot signal
samples P_3-P_0 may be used to process non-transitionary trace
signal samples T_3-T_{12}.

Column-K identifies output signal samples Z_K to be updated with pilot signal sample P_J and trace signal sample T_L identified with column-J and column-L respectively of Table XII. Precession of output signal samples Z_K

5 relative to pilot signal samples P_J, indicative of shifting of the pilot signal along the trace signal, may be seen by comparing column-J and column-K of Table XII. For example, pilot signal sample P_3 is used to update output signal sample Z_0 for trace signal sample T_3 (A-address 16), pilot

10 signal sample P_3 is used to update output signal sample Z_1 for trace signal sample T_4 (A-address 20), pilot signal sample P_3 is used to update output signal sample Z_2 for trace signal sample T_5 (A-address 24), etc.

Column-M identifies the output signal memory addresses

15 for storing output signal samples Z_K. The output signal memory locations (column-M) correspond to the output signal samples (column-K) (A-addresses 0-22) until the output signal sample memory locations are reassigned when earlier output signal samples become fully updated and are output and later

20 output signal samples become newly updated and must be stored until fully updated. The precession of output signal memory addresses (column-M) is shown as the precession progresses for the sequence of trace signal samples T_L. This precession of output memory addresses is similar to the above described

25 precession of output signal samples (column-K) except that the output memory addresses (column-M) are implemented as a modulo-3 arrangement wherein every fourth output memory address overflows or is reassigned to the least significant output memory address for storing the next sequential output

30 signal sample.

Column-D provides a disable signal to disable updating output signal samples Z_K in response to an improper pilot signal sample. The D signal is shown having a zero-state for disabling updating in response to a dash in column-J or column-K related to a non-update condition and having a one-state in response to a non-dash condition in column-J or column-K related to an update condition. Inbetween the correlation start transition and the correlation completion transition (A-addresses 16-55) for trace signal samples T_3-T_{12}, the D-signal is continuously in the one-state to enable all update operations.

Column-T represents a transfer command signal for transferring a fully updated output signal sample when transfer signal T is in the one-state, related to an output signal sample row having a fully updated output signal sample. For example, output signal sample Z_0 is initially updated for A-address 4, subsequently updated for A-addresses 8 and 12, and fully updated for A-address 16, wherein the one-state of transfer signal T for A-address 16 is indicative of a fully updated output signal sample Z_0 and provides for transfer to an output device of the fully updated Z_0 output signal sample. Similarly, each subsequent output signal sample being updated with pilot signal sample P_3 (A-addresses 20, 24, 28, etc) becomes fully updated and therefore are output when enabled by a one-state of transfer signal T. Transfer signal T may be provided to external equipment to enable transferring of fully updated output signal samples Z_K contained in Z-counter 613 from the output of Z-counter 613 to the external device under control of transfer signal T.

Column-$\overline{\text{CLR}}$ provides clear signal $\overline{\text{CLR}}$ to recirculation gates 630 for initially clearing Z-RAM 614 (A-addresses 0-3) and for clearing the contents of each output memory location when the output signal sample contained therein is fully updated and is therefore transferred to external equipment as

identified by a one-state signal in column-T. This clearing of fully updated signals after outputting is provided by disabling the recirculation path from Z-counter 613 to Z-RAM 614 (Fig 6D) with clear signal $\overline{CLR}$ wherein a completely

5 updated output signal sample in Z-counter 613 is output to external equipment in response to the one-state of transfer signal T and is cleared by disabling recirculation with the zero-state of clear signal $\overline{CLR}$. An initial clear iteration (A-addresses 0-3) may be provided to sequence through output

10 signal memory addresses M_0-M_3 for clearing Z-RAM 614 in anticipation of a new correlation operation. Alternately, the output signal memory may be cleared during the completion transition during completion of updating for output signal samples without new output signal samples being available,

15 indicated by the dashes in column-K for A-addresses 59, 62-63, and 65-67 for output signal samples. If output memory locations are cleared during the completion transitions, the startup iteration (A-addresses 0-3) may be unnecessary. For the embodiment shown in Table XII, clear signal $\overline{CLR}$ is in the zero-

20 state for clearing an output memory location for all disable states shown as zero-states in column-D. Therefore, for this embodiment, the D-bit shown in column-D is redundant with the $\overline{CLR}$-bit and therefore the D-bit may be eliminated.

Column J-ADD provides the J-address codes to identify

25 a pilot signal sample; wherein the binary J-address code in the J-ADD column corresponds to the J-address of the J-column discussed in detail above. For the embodiment of the instant example, the four pilot signal samples P_3-P_0 may be completely defined with two digital bits wherein Jm is the most-significant-

30 bit and JO is the least-significant-bit. The discussions for J-addresses shown in the J-column are applicable to the description for the binary J-address codes in column J-ADD.

Column K-ADD provides the memory addresses used for storing the output signal samples listed in column-K and provides a binary code equivalent to the decimal code listed in column-M. Although column K-ADD has K-nomenclature for the heading, the

5   information is related to the output memory addresses listed in column-M. The four output memory locations M_0-M_3 may be defined with a two-bit binary code having Mm most-significant-bit and M0 least-significant-bit for addressing output memory locations. Precession of the output memory addresses in

10 column K-ADD is the same as discussed for the precession of addresses in column-M above.

Column-G is used to control completion of correlation. A zero-state G-signal enables A-counter 640 to sequence through A-addresses 0-67 and a one-state G-signal locks up A-counter 640

15 at address 68 to terminate correlation and to await the next sync signal CR to clear A-counter 640 for again sequencing through the correlation control signals in ROM 641.

The dashes shown in Table XII are related to don't care functions where numbers that may be put in place of the

20 dashes are not significant and do not affect the correlation solution. Dashes for A-addresses 0-3 are provided wherein the L-parameter, J-parameter, K-parameter are not significant for these output memory clear operations. Similarly, control signals for A-addresses 5-7, 10-11, and 15 may not be significant

25 because these control signals are related to non-update conditions; wherein the non-update conditions permit K-addresses to be provided to equalize time between trace signal samples and wherein skipping non-update conditions such as A-addresses 5-7, 10-11, and 15 would decrease the duration of

30 sampling intervals for trace signal samples T_0-T_2. Similarly, non-update conditions defined by A-addresses 59, 62-63,

and 65-67 are provided to equalize update times. In one

embodiment, updating of the last trace output signal sample

(A-address 64) terminates sampling operations, wherein control

signals associated with A-addresses 65-67 may be eliminated or

5   defined by a one-state G-signal which could be provided for

A-address 65 because the last output signal sample update

operation has been completed in A-address 64.

The arrangement shown in Fig 6D may operate in

response to control signals from ROM control 615 shown in

10 Fig 6C and exemplified with Table XII. For example, the D-signal

in Table XII may correspond to the D-signal from P-ROM 625

to NAND-gate 627, wherein a zero-state D-signal may disable

updating operations and a one-state D-signal may enable

updating operations. Clear signal $\overline{CLR}$ to recirculation gates 630

15 provides for clearing output memory locations in response to a

zero-state $\overline{CLR}$ signal and for permitting recirculation without

clearing output memory locations in response to a one-state

$\overline{CLR}$ signal. J-addresses to P-ROM 625 may be the two-bit

J-address shown in the J-ADD column of Table XII. K-addresses

20 to Z-RAM 614 may be the two-bit K-address shown in the K-ADD

column of Table XII. Sample flip-flop 628 may be clocked with

transfer signal T shown in Table XII or may be clocked with

another control signal bit stored in ROM 641 for each new trace

signal sample T_L. Alternately , sample flip-flop 624 may be

25 eliminated where the output of amplifier 623 may be input

directly to gate 626 as trace signal sample T_L without use of

sample flip-flop 624. Further, logic associated with compositing

may be eliminated for the instant feature of the present

invention wherein the updated output signal samples may be

30 transferred to output devices without compositing for a

preferred embodiment of the instant feature of the present

invention thereby eliminating switch 650, compositor control 632,

and enable gate 638. Further, one-shot 651 operating in

response to the sync signal may generate an output signal to clear C-counter 616 and further to clear A-counter 640, wherein A-counter 640 may be implemented as K-counter 619 and wherein the G-signal may be connected to input G of

5   K-counter 619 for enabling or disabling counter operations. Still further, clear switch CLR may be eliminated, wherein clear signal CLR may be derived from ROM 641 as discussed with reference to Table XII.

The example shown in Table XII illustrates precession

10   of memory addresses with respect to output signal samples and other aspects of the instant feature of the present invention. For example, A-address 16 provides for the fourth and last update of output signal sample Z_0 in memory location M_0 with pilot signal sample P_3 and trace signal sample T_3; resulting

15   in generation of a one-state transfer control signal T for transferring the fully updated output signal sample Z_0 to external devices and for clearing of output memory location M_0 with a zero-state clear signal $\overline{CLR}$. Further, the cleared output memory location M_0 may be subsequentially reassigned

20   to the next output signal sample Z_4 (A-address 23) for starting updating of this new output signal sample Z_4 in memory location M_0. Similarly, precession of output memory locations with reference to output signal samples is shown progressing through all output signal samples in Table XII

25   for the example set forth in Table III.

ROM control logic 615 shown in Fig 6C will now be sized for the example set forth in Table XII. C-counter 616 may be implemented as a two-bit counter and with a two-bit, four-state decoder as shown in Fig 6D. A-counter 640 may be

30   implemented as a 7-bit counter connected as a pair of S/N 74190 type counter circuits which are connected for an up-count mode of operation and having a G-enable input connected to the G-output of ROM 641. The 7-bit A-counter 640 has a

maximum count range from 0 through 127. A-counter 640 may
be cleared to the zero-state with sync signal CR and may be
clocked with control signal $\overline{C3}$ until the G-output signal from
ROM 641 to the G-input of A-counter 640 is in the one-state

5   as shown with A-address 68 (Table XII) to discontinue counting
operations until again cleared with sync signal CR. The
7-address signals A from A-counter 640 may be used to address
the 68-control words stored in ROM 641 for the example shown
in Table XII, wherein each control word has one D-bit, one

10   T-bit, one $\overline{CLR}$-bit, two J-ADD bits, two K-ADD bits, and one
G-bit for a total of 8-bits per ROM word. The 8-bits per word
times 69-words provides a total of 552-bits for the example
shown in Table XII. Based upon a price of 0.1¢ per bit,
ROM 641 may have a cost of approximately 55¢ to implement the

15   example shown in Table XII. Inefficiencies may arise wherein
a 69-word 8-bit ROM may not be commercially available.
Therefore, a larger ROM such as a 128-word ROM may be necessary
to implement the example set forth in Table XII. Regardless,
the low cost of this ROM implementation is not significantly

20   altered by this inefficiency of less than 50¢ worth of unused
ROM capability.

     The instant feature of the present invention is
directed to continuously outputting fully correlated samples
simultaneously with correlation of subsequent samples, wherein

25   earlier output signal samples may be completely updated and
output for recording while later trace signal samples are still
being correlated for the same trace signal. This simultaneous
correlation and output feature of the present invention yields
significant advantages over prior art systems such as permitting

30   correlation of extremely long trace signals, reducing output
storage requirements, and reducing output storage time; as will
be discussed briefly hereinafter.

Prior art systems have considered that the amount of output storage is related to the difference between the number of trace signal samples and pilot signal samples as set forth in equation (2) above. Therefore, correlation of extremely

5 long trace signals is considered by the prior art to be impractical due to the extremely large output memory requirements. For example, a sonar passive surveillance application may provide a one-second pilot signal having 1,000-samples and a 30-thousand second trace signal having 30-million samples;

10 thereby having an output memory requirement of approximately 30-million samples for a single trace. With the instant feature of the present invention which simultaneously correlates and outputs information, the output memory requirement is related to the number of pilot signal samples and is relatively

15 independent of the number of trace signal samples wherein the system of the present invention implementing the above example would require storage for only about one-thousand output signal samples independent of the number of samples in the trace signal. Continuous trace signals having substantially infinate

20 length may be processed with the instant feature of the present invention wherein such infinite length trace signals are inconsistant with prior art correlation algorithms.

The amount of output signal memory required for a correlation computation is considered by the prior art to be

25 related to the difference between the number of trace signal samples (N_T) and the number of pilot signal samples (N_P) as defined by equation (2) above. With the instant feature of the present invention, the amount of output signal memory is relatively independent of the length of the number of trace

30 signal samples but is related merely to the number of pilot signal samples (N_P) or the number of output signal samples (N_S) whichever is less. For the above example having a 1,000-sample pilot signal and a 30-million sample trace signal, the output

memory requirement may be only 1,000-output signal samples
related to the number of pilot signal samples, providing a
reduction in output memory requirements by a factor-of-30,000
over the requirements for prior art correlation algorithms

5   operating in accordance with equation (2) above.

Reduction in output recording time provides an
important advantage of the instant feature of the present
invention. In one embodiment, a magnetic tape recorder may be
required .to record output signal samples, wherein the magnetic

10   tape recorder may have a recording speed of 1,000-samples per
second consistent with the trace signal sample acquisition rate
for the above example. Prior art systems would require
storage of all of the output signal samples and then recording
of the output signal samples only after correlation has been

15   completed. The instant feature of the present invention
provides for recording of completely updated correlation output
signal samples as they become fully updated simultaneously
with the correlation of later acquired trace signal samples.
Therefore, in accordance with the instant feature of the present

20   invention; as trace signal samples are acquired and correlated
at a rate of 1,000-samples per second, fully updated output
signal samples may be simultaneously recorded on magnetic tape
wherein the rate of fully updated output signal samples may be
equal to the rate of acquired trace signal samples consistent with

25   the instant feature of the present invention and therefore the
output rate of fully updated output signal samples may be equal to
the trace signal sample acquisition rate of 1,000-samples per
second. Therefore, this fully updated 1,000-sample per second
rate is consistent with magnetic tape recorder speeds and

30   permits recording on-the-fly as output signal samples become
fully updated to make output signal sample memory locations

available for newly updated output signal samples in response
to newly acquired trace signal samples. For the above example
having 30-million trace signal samples and approximately
30-million output signal samples, prior art systems would

5   acquire and store the 30-million trace signal samples requiring
30-thousand seconds, would then correlate 30-million trace
signal samples which might take another 30-thousand seconds,
and would then record the approximately 30-million output signal
samples on a magnetic tape recorder operating at a record rate

10 of 1,000-samples per second requiring another 30-thousand seconds
for a total of 90-thousand seconds or approximately 25-hours
for acquisition, correlation, and recording operations. In
accordance with the correlate on-the-fly feature of the present
invention, the 30-thousand seconds for correlation of trace

15 signal samples may be performed simultaneously with the 30-thousand
seconds for acquisition of the trace signal samples, wherein
the prior art operation requiring a total of 90-thousand seconds
may be reduced to 60-thousand seconds by simultaneously performing
acquisition and correlation operations. In accordance with the

20 instant feature of the present invention for recording on-the-
fly in combination with the above discussed feature of the
present invention for correlating on-the-fly; output signal
samples may be recorded as they become fully updated simultaneously
with trace signal samples being correlated as they become

25 acquired; wherein acquisition, correlation, and recording
operations may be performed simultaneously thereby requiring
only 30-thousand seconds for acquisition, correlation, and
recording operations for this combined correlate on-the-fly
and record-on-the-fly feature of the present invention.

30 Therefore, the record-on-the-fly feature of the present invention
may provide a 33% reduction in operating time and the record-
on-the-fly feature in conjunction with the correlation on-
the-fly feature of the present invention may provide a 67%

improvement in operating time, wherein the 25-hour acquisition, correlation, and recording time set forth for the above example of prior art system operation may be reduced by a factor-of-3 to about 8-hours of simultaneously performed

5 acquisition, correlation, and recording with the correlate on-the-fly and the record on-the-fly features of the present invention.

In accordance with the record on-the-fly feature of the present invention, an improved method will now be provided for a geophysical exploration embodiment. Prior art systems must store all input trace signals for compositing-before-correlation and must store all output signals during correlation and prior to recording on magnetic tape. Prior art systems may have a relatively long pilot signal comparable in duration to the trace signal to minimize effects of the non-productive listening period. In one prior art system, a 24-second pilot signal may be used in conjunction with an 8-second listening period to generate a 32-second trace signal. In accordance with the output on-the-fly feature of the present invention, advantages may be achieved when the pilot signal is significantly shorter than the output signal or significantly shorter than the seismic range. For example, a system in accordance with the present invention may be implemented for generating a 9-second trace signal in response to a 1-second pilot signal for generating an 8-second output signal related to a seismic range of 8-seconds for a 40,000-foot range. In accordance with the above mentioned calculations related to the amount of output storage required, the output storage for outputting on-the-fly for this example may be the pilot signal or output signal duration, whichever is less; wherein the pilot signal duration is 1-second and the output signal is 8-seconds for an output memory requirement of 1-second of output signal storage. Therefore, for a record on-the-fly feature of the present invention, a short pilot signal being shorter than the seismic range duration reduces the amount of required output memory in a record on-the-fly embodiment. Further, improvements may be obtained by combining various features of the present invention wherein the listening period compensation, simultaneously ensonification from a plurality of shotpoints, and simultaneous

ensonification with a plurality of overlapping ensonifying
signals generated from the same shotpoint may provide even
more significant improvements when used in combination there-
together. Therefore, for the above arrangement having a

5   1-second pilot signal and an 8-second seismic range, a plurality
of sequential or overlapping ensonifying signals each having a
short duration may be used wherein 9-sequential 1-second signals
having different signatures therebetween may be generated
sequentially for providing continuous or overlapping

10 ensonification of the subsurface environment during the seismic
range duration associated with each of those sequential 1-second
ensonifying signals.

Charge Coupled Device Signal Processor (Fig 9)

Charged coupled devices (CCDs) may be used to provide signal processing in accordance with the present invention. CCDs are well known in the art, being monolithic integrated
5 circuits having charge storage and charge transfer capability. The CCD may have one or more input terminals, one or more output terminals, and a plurality of charge transfer stages to "shift" the charge between stages. Arrangement of input stages, output stages, and transfer circuits are well known
10 in the art. For simplicity of discussion, a CCD will be considered as a circuit having input signal lines, output signal lines, and various shiftable stages coupling input and output lines. The monolithic implementation of such a CCD is well known in the art and therefore will not be discussed herein.
15 CCD signal processors will be discussed with reference to Fig 9 hereinafter in the embodiment of an acoustic imaging system. These CCD signal processor arrangements are intended to be generally applicable for many signal processing uses that will become obvious to those skilled in the art from the
20 teachings of the present invention. For example, this CCD signal processor arrangement may be used as a demodulator, multiplexer, or sample-and-hold circuit for use in systems including data acquisition, analog signal processing, computer peripheral, telemetry, and other systems. Further, a hybrid
25 memory embodiment may be used as an off-line computer memory, an on-line computer memory, a disc memory replacement, an analog memory for an analog or hybrid computer, and other arrangements.

CCD Demodulator and Multiplexer (Fig 9A)

In accordance with the present invention, a phase sensitive demodulator and a multiplexer arrangement will now be described with reference to Fig 9A. To exemplify this embodiment of the present invention, it will be described relative to the channel processing arrangement for an acoustic imaging system.

An array of transducer elements 910 is provided to generate transducer signals 912 with each element 911 generating an output signal 913 in response to acoustic inputs sensed by elements 910. Signal processors 914 provide signal processing operations on signals 912, where these signal processing operations may include buffering, amplification, and noise filtering. Processed transducer signals 915 and 916 may each be input to one switch or a pair of switches shown as field effect transistor (FET) switches 917 and 918. One of each pair of switches may be controlled by an in-phase (0°) reference signal 930 and the other switch may be controlled by a quadrature (90°) reference signal 931. Reference generator 929 generates in-phase signal 930 and quadrature signal 931 for complex demodulation of processed signals 915 and 916 respectively. In one embodiment, reference generator 929 may have substantially the same frequency as the acoustic signals sensed by elements 910. As is well known in the art, sampling or switching an AC signal with a reference signal will provide an output signal that is related to the component of the input signal that is in-phase with the reference signal. Therefore, in-phase reference signal 930 controls in-phase FETs 917 to provide in-phase demodulated signals and quadrature reference signal 931 controls quadrature FETs 918 to provide quadrature demodulated signals. CCD 920 is implemented to receive and store a plurality of demodulated input signals 919 with corresponding charge storage and shift elements, where each storage element in

CCD 920 sums or integrates the charge provided by each
corresponding signal 919 which are switched or demodulated
with FETs 917 and 918. The amount of charge that is accumulated
in each CCD storage element is related to the amplitude of the
5 input signal and the time that switches 917 and 918 are con-
ducting. The summation of samples controlled with FETs 917
and 918 cause a charge to be stored that has a magnitude
related to the phase related components of the input signal
915 which is sampled in-phase with the corresponding reference
10 signal 930 or 931. Input FETs 917 and 918 may have a charging
time constant associated therewith such as with the on-resistance
of the FET and the charging capacitance of the CCD. The
charging time constant may be increased by connecting resistors
in series with FETs 917 and 918 or by reducing turn-on excitation
15 of FETs 917 and 918 to provide a desired charging rate. The
charging time constant should be longer than the frequency of the
input and reference signals to filter the demodulation switching
transients.

Mode logic 921 controls system operations. A plurality
of modes may be provided with control signals including de-
modulate and integrate mode signals 924, shift signal 922 and
convert signal 923. These signals control the sequential
5   modes of operation of the system. For example, demodulate
and integrate signal 924 enables reference generator 929 to
generate in-phase signal 930 and quadrature signal 931 to sample
input signals 915 and 916 with switches 917 and 918 to build-up charge
in corresponding elements of CCD 920, which demodulates and
10 filters processed signals 915 and 916. After a pre-determined period
of time or quantity of integration samples, the shift and
convert mode may be enabled, and the demodulate and integrate
mode may be disabled; thereby causing signals 930 and 931 to
turn off or "open" switches 917 and 918 to prevent further
15 charge accumulation in CCD 920. Mode logic 921 may then
generate clock pulses 922 to shift the stored charge through
CCD 920 to output signal line 925. Analog-to-digital converter
(ADC) 926 may be controlled with convert signal 923 to convert
analog output signal 925 to digital form as digital signals 927.
20 Clock signal 922 and convert signal 923 may be interleaved so
that each analog signal 925 that is shifted out of CCD 920
will be converted with ADC 926 to provide sequential digital
output signals 927. Therefore, the plurality

of demodulated and integrated signals may be stored in CCD
920 and may be sequentially or serially shifted out of CCD
920 as analog output signals 925 and may be converted to
sequential digital signals 927 with ADC 926. This arrangement
5 provides a parallel-to-serial signal converter, which is
known in the art as a multiplexer.

Mode logic 921 may be a well known counter and decoder
arrangement such as a Texas Instruments counter S/N 7490 and
decoder 7442. Gating of clock signals and generation of
10 quadrature signals is discussed in related   patent applica-
tions which are incorporated herein by reference.

The arrangement described with reference to Fig 9A
further exemplifies a CCD arrangement for summing analog
signals. Input signals 919 excite related CCD elements when
15 switches 917 and 918 are conducting, where the CCD elements
effectively add new charge that is related to the amplitude of
input signal 919 to the charge previously stored in the
corresponding CCD element.

Prior art phase sensitive demodulators provide a
20 switching arrangement and a filtering arrangement, wherein
the filtering arrangement "smooths" switching transitions to
provide a steady state output signal. In system 900, switches
917 and 918 in conjunction with CCD 920 provide operations
similar to that used in prior art phase sensitive demodulators.
25 For example, switches 917 and 918 will switch processed signals
915 and 916 in-phase with reference signals 930 and 931 and
charge storage elements of CCD 920 will integrate or filter
the sampled processed signals 919 to provide a steady state
charge signal proportional to the phase related component of
30 processed signals 919 as a steady state charge amplitude
without switching transients.

The CCD demodulator and multiplexer embodiment has
been described for a combined phase sensitive demodulator and
multiplexer arrangement. It is herein intended that the
demodulator arrangement and the multiplexer arrangement may
5   be usable as separate arrangements and may be combined in a
preferred embodiment of the present invention. Further, any
reference to a demodulator with reference to the embodiment
shown in Fig 9A is also intended to exemplify a sample-and-hold
arrangement wherein the demodulator arrangement described with
10   reference to Fig 9A provides a sample and storage operation
under control of mode signals and therefore further exemplifies
a sample-and-hold arrangement. Still further, a plurality of
samples may be added or integrated under control of the reference
signals 930 and 931 using the storage and charge adding or
15   charge integrating capabilities of the CCDs, exemplifying
analog summation or integration and particularly analog summa-
tion or integration under control of digital logic signals.

Beam Forming (Fig 93)

A beam forming arrangement may be provided with a plurality of transducer elements for receiving incident illumination and a delay line having taps for introducing

5 received energy from the transducers into the delay line. Assuming that the taps are equally spaced relative to the time delay therebetween, if the period of a signal introduced into the plurality of taps is equal to the time delay between taps, that signal may be reinforced at each tap and may exit

10 the delay line having an amplitude related to the incident energy. If the period of the signal is different from the time delay between taps, the signal may not be reinforced to the same degree as in the above-mentioned case. Still further, if the waveform period is half the delay between taps, alternate

15 taps would provide a signal 180 degrees out-of-phase with the preceding tap signal thereby cancelling the signal introduced at two adjacent taps. This is analogous to the operation of a well known phase sensitive demodulator wherein an input signal has a first frequency characteristic and wherein the

20 reference signal has a frequency characteristic that is equal to the input signal frequency, different from the input signal frequency, or half of the input signal frequency respectively relative to the three delay line examples discussed above.

In one beam forming embodiment, a plurality of trans-

25 ducers 910 are shown receiving illumination along lines 969 from source 964. Transducer output signals 968 are connected to taps on CCD delay line 966. The input signals 968 propagate along CCD delay line 966 in the direction shown by arrow 970 to be generated as output signal 971, which is related to the

30 time varying summation of input signals 968 having time delays T1 on input lines 968. If the time delay between signal taps 968 is a fixed delay T1 corresponding to a wavelength and if the spacing between transducers 910 is related to wave-

length λ, then the delay line 966 will enhance the signals
by summing the input components in-phase and outputting the
time variying summation on signal line 971. If the incident
illumination 969 has a frequency f1 with a wavelength $\lambda1$, then

5 energy coming from source 964 propagating in direction 973
parallel to the plane of transducers 910 will provide in-phase
signal components at each of the transducers 910 for enhancement
of signal 971. For frequencies lower than frequency f1, an
angle θ may exist wherein the incident illumination projected

10 upon transducer array 910 will have a wavelength component
equal to $\lambda1$ and thereby satisfying the conditions for
enhancement of output signal 971. Therefore,
there is a relationship between spacing $\lambda1$ of transducer
elements 910, time delay T1 between delay line taps 968,

15 frequency of incident illumination, and angle-of-incidence θ
for signal enhancement.

In accordance with one feature of the present invention,
a beam forming arrangement is provided having a controllable
illuminating frequency which defines the angle θ viewed by the

20 array 910. A variable transmitter frequency
such as provided with a VIBROSEIS chirp generator
may   be used with the beam forming
arrangement of this inventive feature. It can be seen that the
signal that will be enhanced with delay line 966 is related

25 to the frequency of the illumination and the angle θ of
incident illumination, wherein the component of wavelength in
the plane of sensors 910 must be equal to distance $\lambda1$.
Therefore, the lower the frequency the greater must be the angle
θ and the higher the frequency the smaller must be the angle θ

30 for enhancing signal 971. Further, signal 971 is related to
the illuminated environment at an angle θ that is determined
by the frequency of the incident illumination. Therefore,
the direction of received beam θ is related

to the frequency of the illumination, wherein the beam direction can be controlled by the illuminating frequency.

In accordance with the present invention, a variable frequency illuminator is provided to control the direction of the received beam 969 and therefore the portion of the environment to be interrogated, where the information is output as signal 971. Various well known arrangements may be used in conjunction with the system of the present invention including arrangements for controlling the transmitting frequency to sweep through a controllable angle Θ to interrogate an environment.

In another embodiment of the present beam forming inventive feature, delay line 966 may be replaced with a CCD, as described above with reference to Fig 9A. In this embodiment, CCD 920 receives input signals 919 from transducers 910. A clock generator 921 provides clock signals 922 to shift information along CCD 920 to the output signal 925. In this arrangement, the time delay between taps 919 is controlled by the frequency of clock 922, where the time delay is related to the clock frequency and to the number of shift stages between taps 919. For simplicity, it will herein be assumed that taps 919 are located one shift stage apart, wherein each clock pulse 922 will shift the charge that is accumulated at a particular tap 919 by one tap toward output signal 925.

CCDs have the characteristic of accumulating charge in relation to (1) the signal magnitude on an input line and (2) the time for which the signal is present. Therefore, the output signal on line 925 is related to the magnitude of signals 919 and the time of charge accumulation related thereto. Assuming that the time of charge accumulation is related to the shift frequency, the output signal 925 will be related to the signal magnitude on lines 919 for the time of charge

accumulation. As discussed relative to Fig 9B for the delay

line 966, the output signal 925 will be related to the frequency

of the illuminating energy, the time delay between shifting

stored signals between input lines 919 and the angle of

5   incidence Θ of the illumination. Assuming that the frequency

is constant and the time delay between input signal lines 919

is related to the frequency of shift clock signal 922, then beam angle Θ

that will cause signal 925 to be enhanced is inversely related

to the frequency of clock signal 922, wherein a high clock

10 frequency will steer the beam to a low angle and a low clock

frequency will steer the beam to a high angle for enhancement

of signals 925 and 971 related to the particular beam angle.

Therefore, beam forming may be achieved with a CCD

arrangement and beam angle Θ may be controlled by the frequency

15 of clock signal 922.

The CCD arrangement set forth in Fig 9A has been used

to exemplify the CCD arrangement of the beam forming inventive

feature. In this embodiment, switches 917 and 918 may be

used for demodulating the input signals 916 or may be controlled

20 to be conductive or "on" to provide greater similarity to the

delay line embodiment discussed with reference to Fig 9B.

Further, the modes of integrate or shift as discussed for the

demodulator and multiplexer arrangement with reference to

Fig 9A are interleaved as alternate integrate (sample) and

25 shift commands for the beam forming feature of the present

invention; wherein mode logic 921 may command integrate, shift,

integrate, shift, etc. as alternate operations or interleaved

operations for beam forming of input signals.

Background on beam forming concepts may be obtained

30 from the prior art literature such as the reference to

Dolph listed hereinafter and the references cited therein.

Hybrid Memory (Figs 9C et seq)

Memories for storing digital information in digital form are well known in the art and include digital shift registers, disc memories, and magnetic tape. In one embodiment

5 of the present invention, a "digital" memory is provided for storing information in analog signal form and for operating in conjunction with a digital system as a digital memory. The storage of information in analog signal form and the conversion between digital and analog signals for storage,

10 for input, or for output will herein be termed a hybrid memory arrangement.

A CCD memory degrades signals as they are shifted through the memory due to charge transfer inefficiencies. Several CCD memory refresh mechanizations will be described

15 with reference to Figs 9A-9J to illustrate refresh embodiments. Refreshing may be provided in the digital domain as will be described with reference to Fig 9C, in the analog domain as will be described with reference to Figs 9F and 9G, or in the hybrid (analog and digital) domain as will be discussed with

20 reference to Fig 9J. A digital refresh embodiment provides re-establishment of signal amplitudes with digital circuit elements substantially operating on digital signals in the digital domain. An analog refresh embodiment provides re-establishment of signal amplitudes with analog circuit elements

25 substantially operating on analog signals in the analog domain. A hybrid refresh embodiment provides re-establishment of signal amplitudes with a combination of analog and digital circuit elements operating on analog signals and digital signals in combined analog and digital domains. A digital

30 refresh embodiment is discussed with reference to Fig 9C; where digital circuits add a digital "non-significant" bit to a digital signal to re-establish digital signal amplitude.

An analog refresh embodiment is discussed with reference to Figs 9H and 9I; where analog circuits control gain with an analog sampled signal to re-establish analog signal amplitude. A hybrid refresh embodiment is discussed with reference to

5 Fig 9J where digital circuits set the gain of an analog amplifier with a digital gain setting number to control an analog signal.

The hybrid memory feature of the present invention will now be described. This feature provides improved storage

10 utilization. For example, analog signals may be stored and shifted within CCD memory 932 to an accuracy that, for this example, will be assumed to be better than one part in 256 or 8-bits of digital resolution. An analog signal having such resolution may require only a single shiftable memory

15 cell. Digital signals stored and shiftable in CCD memory 932 having such digital resolution would require 8-bits of digital resolution to provide a resolution of one part in 256. Therefore, for this example an improvement in storage capacity by a factor of eight may be achieved, where 8-bit resolution

20 analog information may be stored and shifted in CCD memory 932 requiring only one-eighth of the number of storage elements that would be required to store and shift 8-bit resolution digital information in CCD memory 932.

A hybrid memory arrangement using a CCD will now be

25 described with reference to Figs 9C and 9D. Hybrid memory system 902 comprises CCD memory 932, input digital-to-analog converter (DAC) 933 and output analog-to-digital converter (ADC) 934. CCD memory 932 comprises a plurality of shiftable analog storage elements, wherein an analog input signal 949

is stored in a first CCD element and, under control of clock
signal 943, input analog signal 949 is shifted through a
plurality of CCD analog charge memory stages until it reaches
an output stage which provides the shifted analog charge

5   signal as output signal 936. Output analog signal 936 may
be converted with ADC 934 to provide digital output signals
935 for use by a digital data processing system. Input digital
signals 938B to DAC 933 are converted to analog signal 949
for storage in CCD memory 932. Information shifted out of

10   CCD memory 932 may be recirculated as input information in
analog signal form along recirculation path 939 or may be
recirculated as digital signals from 938A to signals 938B.
Information in CCD memory 932 may be changed by opening the
recirculation path, either analog recirculation path 939

15   with switch 947 or digital recirculation path 938B with logic
940, and enabling digital input signals 938C with well known
selection logic 940 or analog input signal 944 with switch 945.

Control logic 937 provides sequential control signals
for clocking CCD memory 932 with clock signal 943 and for

20   controlling the conversion of input and output information
with convert signals 941 and 942. In one embodiment having
digital recirculation, control logic 937 may provide clock
signal 943 to provide a new output signal 936, then provide
convert signals 941 and 942 to convert analog output signal 936

25   to digital signal 938A with ADC 934 and to convert digital
signals 938B to analog signal 949. Signal 938A may be avail-
able to the digital system and may be further available for
recirculation.

Operation and error reduction for a hybrid memory will

30   now be discussed. An example will be provided to illustrate
the relationships between signal degradation by a CCD memory
and resolution of DAC 933 and ADC 934. In a preferred
embodiment, ADC resolution is worse than DAC resolution

which is worse than signal degradation through the CCD;

where DAC and ADC resolution can be set to be worse than

signal degradation. ADC 934 is assumed to have a conversion

precision of 8-bits or one part in 256 for the present example,

where this resolution is assumed to be greater than the degra-

dation of the stored information in CCD memory 932. Further,

DAC 933 is assumed to have a resolution greater than the resolution

of ADC 934, which will be 9-bits or one part in 512 for the present

example. Therefore, it can be seen that DAC

933 may have greater resolution than ADC 934, where the state of

the least significant bit of DAC 933 may be considered to have

no "significance" and therefore may be set to either the

one or the zero state without affecting the operation of hybrid

memory 902.

Therefore, in accordance with the present invention, the

least significant bit of DAC 933, which is a "non-significant

bit", will be set to the one-state so that input analog signal 949

will always be on the high side of the permissible input signal

variation, where any signal degradation through CCD memory 932 will

merely be degradation of a part of the "non-significant" information

or degradation of information that is always on the high side of the

permissible variations within the resolution of ADC 934. Although

analog signal 949 is degraded as it is shifted through CCD memory

932, the degradation will be less than the "non-significant" bit or

"bias" imposed on signal 949 by DAC 933. This bias does not

overlap to the next count of ADC 934 because it is also less than

the resolution of ADC 934. Therefore, degradation of analog signal

949 through CCD memory 932 may be less than the bias signals due

to this "non-significant" bias bit in DAC 933 and therefore can never

be degraded to the next lower count associated with ADC 934. There-

fore, DAC 933 will re-establish the level of signal 949 independent

of degradation through CCD memory 932, but neither re-establishment of

the signal

level with DAC 933 nor degradation of the signal shifted
through CCD memory 932 will overlap the next highest count
or degrade below the next lower count of ADC 934.

The error reduction concept can be better understood
with reference to Fig 9D, where a resolution increment of ADC
934 is shown bracketed by upper limit 955 and lower limit 956.
Analog output signal 936 is shown having an amplitude 957 into
ADC 934. ADC 934 converts signal 957 and rounds-off the
output digital number to amplitude 956. The digital number
related to amplitude 956 is recirculated as signals 938A and
938B to DAC 933 which converts amplitude 956 to an analog signal
level and introduces an "non-significant" bit or bias having an
amplitude VB which is less than the resolution increment
between resolution amplitudes 956 and 955 but which is greater
than the degradation of the signal 949 when shifted through CCD
memory 932. Therefore, input signal 949 will have an amplitude
that is equal to amplitude 956 plus the bias amplitude VB for
a total amplitude shown as amplitude 958. As the analog input
signal 949 is shifted through memory 932, it is degraded toward
amplitude 959 and output as signal 936. Again, conversion of
signal 936 having amplitude 959 with ADC 934 provides amplitude
956, which is again recirculated and converted to amplitude 950
and again shifted through CCD memory 932. Therefore,
the roundoff with ADC 934 and the introduction of bias
VB with DAC 933 automatically compensates for degradation of
the signal shifted through memory 932, thereby precluding an
accumulation of error; neither round-off, nor bias, nor memory
shift related degradation.

In still another example, output analog signal 936
may be degraded to level 951, where ADC 934 converts
analog signal 951 to digital form and "rounds high" to the
next higher increment of amplitude 952. Signal amplitude 952
is then degraded through recirculation, D/A conversion and

shifting as described above to amplitude level 953 (the
same as amplitude 951) as output signal 936 but is again
converted with ADC 934 to digital form and again "rounded-high"
to amplitude 954 (the same as amplitude 952) before again
5   recirculating.

Rounding high may be accomplished with well known
analog biasing, digital biasing, adding one digital increment,
or other well known rounding techniques. For example, a
"non-significant" or bias bit may be set to a fixed state to
10   bias the digital number to the high side for a "round-high"
arrangement.

In view of the above, degradation
of an analog signal such as due to shifting, can be limited
to a finite error or resolution region and can be prevented
15   from accumulating without limit. Therefore, limiting the
magnitude of error accumulation permits analog signal degradation
to be tolerated and permits unlimited shifting operations with
only a limited error accumulation.

The above described embodiments for elimination of
20   accumulating error has been described relative to recirculation
for a hybrid memory. It should be understood that this inventive
feature has broad applicability, where this inventive feature
may be practiced with any embodiment that either biases an
input analog signal or rounds-off an output analog signal or
25   both, biases an input signal and rounds-off an output signal
as discussed relative to Figs 9C and 9D above.

In the above example, biasing and round-off of signals
has been shown using digital techniques. Other bias and round-
off techniques may be used. For example, analog biasing such
30   as with summing resistors or by scaling the signals may be used.
Similarly, round-off may be achieved with digitizing
a signal. Other arrangements will now become obvious to those
skilled in the art from the teachings of the present invention.

An adaptive refresh arrangement will now be described with reference to Fig 9F. CCD memory 932 stores information under control of clock signal 943. The information is loaded as signal 949 and output as signal 936

5   in serial form. These signals may be analog level signals or digital single-bit signals. Refresh circuit 996 refreshes memory output signal 936 for output and for recirculation as signal 960. The output signal from the memory system may be the unrefreshed memory signal 936 or the

10   refreshed signal 960, shown as outputs from memory 932 by arrows pointing out of the memory system to other systems. Refreshed signal 960 may be recirculated back to the input of memory 932 under control of selection circuitry and a FET electronic switch 947.

15   Input signals to memory 932 are selected with input selector switches 947, 991 and 992 to generate input signal 949. Switch 947 selects recirculation signal 960 from memory output. Switch 991 selects analog input signal AI to load new information into memory 932. Switch 992 selects a reference signal REF.

20   Switches 947, 991, and 992 may be controlled with a digital gate such as AND-gates 987 and 988 and inverter-gate 989 respectively. When decoder signal 990 is low, AND-gates 987 and 988 are disabled and inverter 989 is enabled for non-selecting switches 947 and 991 and for selecting switch 992. When decoder signal 990

25   is high, AND-gates 987 and 988 are enabled and inverter 989 is disabled for selecting either switch 947 or 991 in response to recirculation mode command signal RECIRC and input mode command signal INPUT or for non-selecting switch 992 respectively. Recirculation is enabled with recirculation command signal RECIRC

30   to gate 987 and input signal AI is enabled with input command signal INPUT to gate 988. Therefore, memory 932 may load recirculated information, input information, or a reference signal under control of signals to gates 987, 988, and 989 respectively.

An arrangement will now be discussed for adaptively
controlling refreshing of information stored in memory 932 by
using a reference signal to control gain of the refresh
circuitry 996. Clock pulses 943 will herein be assumed to be from a

5   free-running clock for simplicity of discussion, where memory 932
is continually clocked to load either recirculation signal 960,
analog input signal AI, or reference signal REF under control
of logical signals 948, 967, and 968 from gates 987, 988, and
989; respectively. Clock signal 943 may clock a counter 993 to

10   provide a count that is indicative of the number of clock pulses
received and therefore the position of the information shifted
into memory 932. For example, counter 993 provides operation
similar to the bit, word, and sector counters associated with
well known prior art disk memories which are used for counting

15   disk memory clock pulses to keep track of the location of
information on a rotating disk. Counter output signals 994
are provided to decoder 995 generating decoder output signal 990
in response to a particular code of counter signals 994 from
counter 993. Well known decoders such as the Texas Instruments

20   S/N 7445 decoder provides a high signal output when the input
code is not true and provides a low signal output when the input
signal code is true. Therefore, when counter 993 increments
through a selected code, decoder 995 may provide a low output
signal 990; which may enable switch 992 through inverter 989 and

25   which may disable switches 947 and 991 through gates 987 and 988
respectively to load a reference signal REF into memory 932
through switch 992 as signal 949. In one embodiment, the selected
code in counter 993 lasts for one period of clock signal 943,
where the next clock pulse increments counter 993 to a different

30   code condition. Therefore, decoder output signal 990 may have a
single clock pulse width and reference signal REF loaded into
memory 932 may be loaded into a single-bit position.

Mode selection may be performed with a mode flip-flop
M1 for selecting a recirculation mode with the $\bar{Q}$ signal RECIRC
or for selecting an input mode with the Q signal INPUT. The
state of the mode flip-flop M1 may be controlled with well known

5   logic arrangements such as toggling a Texas Instrument's S/N 7473 J-K flip-flop
or loading a mode condition into a Texas Instrument's S/N 7474 D flip-flop.
The recirculation mode is commanded when the M1 flip-flop generates
a high recirculation mode signal RECIRC thereby enabling gate 987,
where recirculation control signal 948 becomes high for the period

10   of time that decoder signal 990 is high. Recirculation control
signal 948 controls recirculation switch 947 to be conductive
for the period of time decoder signal 990 is high to conduct
recirculation signal 960 to the input of CCD memory 932 as
signal 949. Similarly, the input mode is commanded when the M1

15   flip-flop generates a high input mode signal INPUT, thereby
enabling gate 988, where input control signal 967 becomes high
for the period of time that decoder signal 990 is high. Input
control signal 967 controls input switch 991 to be conductive
for the period of time decoder signal 990 is high to conduct

20   input signal AI to the input of CCD memory 932 as signal 949.
Mode command signals RECIRC and INPUT are mutually exclusive,
where only one of these mode command signals may be high at a
time, which is characteristic of flip-flop Q and $\bar{Q}$ output signals.
Therefore, either the recirculation switch 947 will be conductive

25   as enabled by recirculation control signal 948 being high, or the
input switch 991 will be conductive as enabled by input control
signal 967 being high, or neither recirculation switch 947 nor
input switch 991 will be conductive as disabled by decoder
signal 990 being low.

30   Decoder signal 990 is high for the data load portion of
a memory cycle and low for a reference load portion of a memory
cycle as will be discussed with reference to Fig 9G. A memory

cycle may be defined as a storage sequence of a combination of data and reference signals. In a simplified example used herein, a memory cycle may be the number of clock pulses required to shift a stored signal from the input of memory 932 to the output of

5   memory 932. For example, a memory having a 512 data-bit capacity and a one reference-bit capacity may have a memory cycle of 513 clock pulses. Therefore, the decoder signal 990 will be high for the 512 data-bit portion of the memory cycle and will be low for the one reference-bit portion of the memory cycle.

10 When decoder signal 990 is high, inverter 989 will be disabled and gates 987 and 988 will be enabled; where data will be recirculated through switch 947 or data will be input through switch 991 under control of mode signals RECIRC or INPUT. When decoder signal 990 is low, inverter 989 will be enabled and gates 987 and 988 will

15 be disabled independent of the state of mode signals RECIRC and INPUT. Inverter 989 will invert a low decoder signal 990 to produce a high reference control signal 968 to make reference switch 992 conductive, which results in reference signal REF being input to memory 932 as signal 949 where reference signal REF

20 will be input through switch 992.

Reference signals can be introduced into selected bit positions of memory 932 with counter 993, decoder 995, and input circuitry 908. Reference signal REF may be a precise amplitude signal, wherein the precision of the amplitude may be preserved

25 with a good quality electronic switch 992 or other switch which are well known in the art, wherein a precision reference amplitude signal input to CCD memory 932 through switch 992 as signal 949 may be stored in a selected bit position. The reference signal bit may be shifted through memory 932 under control of clock signal

30 943 and shifted out of memory 932 as output signal 936 to refresh circuitry 996. The reference signal may be degraded as it is shifted through memory 932, consistent with the charge transfer

inefficiency of the CCD type memory devices. Reference
signal REF stored in and shifted through memory 932 may be degraded
by substantially the same amount as other signals stored in and
shifted through memory 932. Because reference signal REF was

5   initially stored in memory 932 as a precise signal amplitude,
the amplitude of the reference signals when shifted out of memory 932
is indicative of (the degradation through memory 932. Therefore,
the reference signal output from memory 932 may be used to control
the refresh circuitry to provide an adaptive control for

10 amplitude reconstruction. Adaptive control is herein intended to
mean control that is adjusted to the actual conditions, where
refresh circuitry 996 operating under control of a degraded
reference signal may be used to control refresh operations as a
function of actual degradation of the signal and may therefore be

15 used over a range of degradation variables such as over a temperature
range, over a clock pulse frequency range, and over variations
between different CCD memory devices and may further be used to
adaptively compensate for other variations such as charge
leakage, aging of CCD memory elements, and other such effects.

20   In a simplified embodiment, it may be assumed that
counter 993 contains a number of counts equal to the number of
bits in memory 932 and that a particular count code, which may be
the first count code for the present simplified example, is
detected with decoder 995 to generate decoder signal 990. For

25 the first count of each memory shifting sequence, the output of
decoder 995 will go low thereby commanding loading of
reference signal REF into memory 932 as discussed above and
simultaneously enabling refresh circuitry 996 with decoder
signal 990 to sample or otherwise monitor a signal being shifted

30 out of memory 932; wherein the synchronization counter 993 provides
another frame, or initialization point, or start of the shift
operation with a reference signal being loaded into memory 932

and the last prior reference signal being simultaneously available
as the output signal 936 of memory 932. Therefore, decoder 995
may enable loading of a new reference signal into memory 932 and
may also enable sampling of the degraded reference signal as

5   signal 936 output from memory 932 with refresh circuitry 996.

In a simplified example, it will be assumed that
memory 932 has a four-bit storage capacity and that counter 993 is
a two-bit counter for a four-count operation, known as a
modulo-3 counter. This example will now be discussed with reference

10   to the waveforms shown in Fig 9G. Clock signal 943 is represented
as a sequence of clock pulses. Signal 990 is shown as a square-
wave signal which is low for each fourth-bit time, which is
consistent with decoder 995 decoding the output of a two-bit
four-state counter 993. Data signal 949 is shown in digital

15   squarewave form for convenience but may also be implemented as
analog amplitude signals. Data waveform 949 is shifted into
memory 932 and similarly is shifted out of memory 932 as signal 936
after a four-bit time shift delay. Therefore, signals 949 and
936 are substantially the same signal except that signal 936

20   has been delayed by four-clock pulse periods and has been
degraded by the shifting operations through memory 932. It
will further be assumed for this example that recirculation
control signal RECIRC is high and the input control signal INPUT
is false. Therefore, three data-bits will be recirculated during

25   the high period of decoder signal 990 and one reference-bit will
be loaded during the low period of decoder signal 990. As shown
in Fig 9G, data signals (shown as a "1" and a pair of "0"s
following the reference signal R) will be recirculated as signal 960
through switch 947 under control of decoder signal 990 and mode

30   signal RECIRC. Therefore, when decoder signal 990 goes low,
gate 987 will cause control signal 948 to go low thereby making
switch 947 non-conductive and

disabling recirculation signal 960. Further, when decoder signal 990
goes low, inverter 989 will cause control signal 968 to go high
thereby enabling reference signal REF to load a precision voltage into
the CCD memory, shown in Fig 9G as signal R in waveform 949.

5   Similarly, when decoder signal 990 goes high, recirculation
signal 960 will be enabled with gate 987 and switch 947 and
reference signal REF will be disabled with inverter 989
and switch 992, thereby permitting the three data-bits shown
as a "100" code to be recirculated as signal 960 into

10 memory 932 as signal 949. Therefore; as counter 993 increments
from a count of 0 to a count of 3, decoder 995 enables the
reference signal REF to be loaded into memory 932 at the
count of 0 and the digital data in memory 932 (consisting of
a "100" sequence) to be recirculated and loaded into memory 932

15 at the counts of 1, 2, and 3. Refresh circuitry 996 monitors
the reference signal shifted out of memory 932 as signal 936,
identified by a low decoder output signal 990 to refresh
circuitry 996; where refresh circuitry 996 will adaptively
re-establish the amplitude levels of the data in response

20 to the reference signal, as described in detail hereinafter.

A simplified embodiment of a refresh circuit will
now be described with reference to Fig 9H. Output signal 936
from memory 932 is processed with amplifier 963. Sample-
and-hold circuit 961 samples the output signal 936 under

25 control of the decoder sample signal 990; where decoder
signal 990 going low enables sample-and-hold 961 to sample
the reference bit of output signal 936; thereby providing
output signal 962 indicative of degradation of the reference
signal through memory 932. Amplifier 963 may be an RCA Model

30 No. CA3080 transconductance amplifier, wherein the gain
through amplifier 963 is controlled by control signal 962.
Therefore, memory output signal 936 is adjusted in amplitude

with amplifier 963 as a function of control signal 962,
thereby providing refreshed recirculation signal 960.
Control signal 962 may be connected to control input I_{ABC}
of amplifier 963 and signal 936 may be applied to the

5   inverting input of amplifier 963, wherein the output signal
960 is related to the product of the signals 962 and 936.
It may be desired that the amplitude of signal 960 be
inversely proportional to the control signal 962, wherein
control signal 962 may be implemented as a complement

10 signal by subtraction from a reference signal or may be
inverted as a reciprocal signal inversely proportional to
the sampled signal 936 for complement or inverse control
of amplifier 963. Reciprocal and subtraction circuits are
well known in the art and may be introduced in signal

15 line 962 to complement or invert the signal from sample and
hold 961.

    An alternate embodiment of refresh circuitry 996
is shown in Fig 9I, where memory output signal 936 is loaded
into sample-and-hold 961 under control of decoder signal 990,

20 as described with reference to Fig 9H, and signal 936 is
further processed with an inverting circuit to provide an
output amplitude that is inversely proportional to the degradation
of the reference signal. An implicit servo is shown in Fig 9I,
implemented with multiplier 980 and summer 999, wherein an

25 implicit servo is well known in the art and is described in
the reference by Levine listed hereinafter. The sampled
reference signal is provided as signal 962 to multiplier 980.
Multiplier 980 generates a product signal 982 which is
proportional to the sampled signal 982 and the memory output

30 signal 965 (-Z). The product signal 962 and the input signal 936
are algebraically summed with summing amplifier 999 to provide
an implicit servo output signal 965; which can be shown to

be related to input signal 936 divided by sampled signal 962.
Amplifiers 999 and 976 may be used to adjust the scale factor
of signal 965 to the desired value with feedback and input
resistors and may be used to provide amplification, buffering,
5   and inversion of summation signal SUM. Output signal 960 can
be shown to have an amplitude proportional to the amplitude
of input signal 936 and inversely proportional to the amplitude of
degraded reference signal 962 stored in sample-and-hold
circuit 961.

10   The implicit servo shown in Fig 9I will now be described.
The implicit servo discussion will reference equation (10)
through equation (14) below to provide a simplified explanation
of operation. Signals will be represented in equations (10)-(14)
by the reference designation of the signal as shown in Fig 9I
15 provided in parentheses () in the equation as being indicative
of the signal magnitude.

$$(SUM) = (936) + (982) \approx 0 \qquad \text{equation (10)}$$
$$(982) = (962)(965) = -YZ \qquad \text{equation (11)}$$
$$(SUM) = (936) + (962)(965) = X - YZ \approx 0 \quad \text{equation (12)}$$
20
$$(965) = -(936)/(962) \qquad \text{equation (13)}$$
$$Z = X/Y \qquad \text{equation (14)}$$

Summation signal SUM is equal to the difference between product
signal 982 and input signal 936. Because output signal 965
is fedback in servo form to multiplier 980 to close a servo
25 loop, signal SUM is controlled to be a very low magnitude
near zero signal, as shown by the approximately zero ($\approx$0)
symbol in equation (10). Multiplier signal 982 from multiplier
980 is equal to the product of signal 965 and adaptive scale
factor signal 962, as shown in equation (11). Substitution
30 of equation (11) into equation (10) to eliminate the signal 982
term yields equation (12). Grouping of terms, factoring of the
signal 965 term, and solving for the signal 965 yields the input

signal 936 term divided by adaptive scale factor signal 962;
as shown in equation (13). This solution is based upon the
assumption that signal sum is servoed to a very low signal
amplitude then amplified with amplifier 999 to generate

5   signal 965 for output and for feedback. In a high gain servo,
the error in assuming that signal SUM is approximately equal
to zero may be very small and will be assumed to be negligible.
Equation (13) shows that compensated signal 965 is approximately
equal to input signal 936 divided by the adaptive scale

10   factor signal 962; wherein the greater the degradation
through memory 932, the smaller will be adaptive scale factor
signal 962 and therefore the larger will be the signal 965.
In other words, the degraded signal 936 is multiplied by the
reciprocal of the sampled reference signal to increase the

15   signal 936 to a level related to the amount of degradation,
as defined by adaptive scale factor signal 962. Other analog
signal processing and implicit servo arrangements will now
become obvious to those skilled in the art such as providing
various function generation circuits to adjust the amplitude

20   of degraded signal 936 as a function of adaptive control
signal 962.

         An alternate discussion of an implicit servo will now
be presented with reference to the textbook by Levine listed
hereinafter; wherein the following description is similar to

25   the example provided on page 157 therein and wherein signals
936, 962, and 965 will be referred to as signals X, Y, and Z
respectively for compatability with the description in the
book by Levine. It is desired to solve the equation $Z=X/Y$
as shown in equation (14), wherein Z is the corrected output

30   signal 965, X is the degraded memory signal 936, and Y is the
adaptive control signal 962 defining the magnitude of the required
re-scaling. The servo output signal $(-Z)$ is fedback to

multiplier 980 to be multiplied with adaptive scale factor
signal Y 962 to provide output signal (-YZ) as signal 982.
Signal 982 (-YZ) is added to the uncorrected signal X 936 at the
summing junction of operational amplifier 999 to generate the
5 summation signal SUM which is amplified with amplifier 999 to
provide output signal (-Z) 965 as a solution to equation (14).

The corrected signal (-Z) 965 is processed with inverting
amplifier 976 to generate a non-inverted output and recirculation
signal 960. Scale factors may be readjusted by a fixed amount
10 by selecting feedback resistors of operational amplifiers 999
and 976.

Still another embodiment of the refresh circuit 996
is shown in Fig 9J. Decoder signal 990 may be used to enable
analog-to-digital converter (ADC) 934 to convert a reference
15 bit of the memory output signal 936 to provide a digital
output number Y 938A proportional to the degraded reference
signal. Output word 938A may be used to excite multiplying
digital-to-analog converter (DAC) 933. The DAC is implemented
with analog switches 974 and weighted summing resistors 975
20 in a well known arrangement. Multiplying DAC 933 generates
an output signal to the summing junction of operational amplifier
999 that is proportional to the digital number (Y) 938A and
proportional to the excitation signal (-Z) 965 fedback from
the output of operational amplifier 999. Similar to the
25 mechanization discussed for Fig 9I above, feedback signal
(-Z) 965 is multiplied by digital input number (Y) 938A to
generate output analog signal -YZ. Signal -YZ is summed with
input signal X at the summing junction of operational
amplifier 999 to generate output signal (-Z) 965 for feedback
30 and for output. Buffer amplifier 976 is used for inversion,
scaling, and buffering as discussed with reference to
Fig 9I above.

The instant reference signal refresh feature of
the present invention has been described in detail with
reference to Figs 9F-9J for scale factor compensation related
error mechanisms such as charge transfer inefficiencies.

5   In accordance with another feature of the present invention, a
reference signal bias refresh compensation arrangement will now
be discussed with reference to Figs 9F-9J.

An important CCD error mechanism may be relatively
independent of signal magnitude scale factor such as being related

10   to time, temperature, and/or other variables. This error
mechanism may be defined as a bias error mechanism and may be
caused by thermal leakage, recombination, or other well known
affects as described in the article by Carnes and Kosonowsky
referenced hereinafter. Compensation for bias errors may be

15   accomplished in a manner similar to the arrangement discussed
above for scale factor errors.

A bias reference signal may be multiplexed into a
CCD memory as discussed for the scale factor reference signal
with reference to Figs 9F-9J above. For simplicity of discussion,

20   the bias reference signal REF (Fig 9F) and R (Fig 9G) may be
described as a zero magnitude reference signal but the bias
reference signal may be any convenient magnitude signal. As
the bias reference signal is shifted through CCD memory 932,
the magnitude will change as a function of leakage and other

25   bias error mechanisms. The bias reference signal will be shifted
out of CCD memory 932 to refresh circuit 996 for compensating
the data signal 936 for bias errors. The bias reference signal
may be loaded into sample and hold 961 to generate stored bias
reference signal 962 (Fig 9H). Bias reference signal 962 may

30   be subtracted from memory output signal 936 to generated refreshed
or compensated output signal 960.

The arrangement shown in Fig 9H has been implemented
to illustrate scale factor compensation, where changes to Fig 9H
will now be discussed to illustrate bias compensation.
Amplifier 963 may be connected as well known differential amplifier,
5   wherein memory output signal 936 may be connected to the negative
input and stored reference signal 962 may be connected to the
positive input or conversely to generate differential output
signal 960. Differential signal 960 may represent memory output
signal 936 with the bias error signal subtracted out therefrom,
10 thereby compensating for bias errors.

        The scale factor and bias compensation arrangements
discussed with reference to Figs 9F-9J above may be combined to
form a combination scale factor and bias compensation arrangement.
Decoder 995 may generate first and second output signals for
15 controlling multiplexing of scale factor and bias reference
signals respectively into different samples of CCD memory 932
with multiplexing circuits similar to gate 989 and switch 992
of multiplexer 908 and for controlling sampling of scale factor
and bias reference signals respectively with different sample
20 and hold circuits similar to sample and hold circuits 961 for
scale factor and bias compensation respectively. Scale factor
compensation may be performed with product circuits 963, 930,
and 974 shown in Figs 9H-9J and bias compensation may be
simultaneously performed with differential circuits by subtracting
25 the bias reference signal from the memory output signal such as
before scale factor compensation with differential amplifier 963
or after scale factor compensation with differential amplifier 976.
In alternate arrangements, the bias reference signal may be
sampled before or after scale factor compensation, the scale
30 factor reference signal may be sampled before or after bias
compensation, and the memory output signal may be compensated
for bias errors before or after it is compensated for scale
factor errors by appropriate arrangements of circuit placement
and input signal selections.

Devices shown in Figs 9F et seq are well known in the art. For example, counter 993 may be a Texas Instruments (TI) counter S/N 7493, decoder 995 may be a TI decoder S/N 7441- S/N 7449, inverter 989 may be a TI inverter S/N 7404 and AND-

5   gates 987 and 988 may be TI gates S/N 7408. Switches 947, 991, and 992 may be any well known switches and, in a preferred embodiment, may be electronic switches implemented with field effect transistors (FETs). CCD memory 932 may be a well known CCD memory shift register device. Sample-and-

10   hold circuit 961 is well known in the prior art, wherein one prior art sample-and-hold circuit is manufactured by Datel Systems Inc as Model SHM-3. Analog multipliers are well known in the art and may be implemented with any well known analog multiplier such as with a RCA model CA3080 trans-

15   conductance amplifier connected as an analog multiplier. One form of analog multiplier is shown in block diagram form as multiplier 980. A RCA CA3080 ·transconductance amplifier form of multiplier is shown as device 963. These two forms are exemplary of the present invention which may be implemented

20   with other well known forms of analog multipliers. Converters such as ADC 934 and multiplying DAC 933 are well known in the art, wherein commercial ADC and multiplying DAC devices are exemplified by Datel Systems Inc devices model ADC 89 series and model DAC-HI 12B respectively.

25   Operational amplifiers for summing and buffering operations are well known in the prior art such as the Fairchild μA709 and μA741 operational amplifiers which may be arranged with input and feedback resistors as shown with circuit 999 and 976.

30   The arrangements discussed with reference to the figures are presented in a simplified form to better exemplify the present invention although many other arrangements may

be utilized which will now become obvious to those skilled in the prior art. For example, refresh circuitry 996 may be implemented with a well known automatic gain control (AGC) circuitry. An AGC circuit may operate from the reference

5 signal 962 that is sampled in response to decoder signal 990 as described above. In an alternate embodiment which finds primary advantage in a digital memory arrangement, refresh circuitry 996 may integrate the signals from CCD memory 932 to provide a gain control signal related to the average of the

10 information stored in memory 932. Information in memory 932 may include control signals to equalize the number "1" and "0" counts being loaded into memory 932 so that the integral of the output signals 936 will have an average value of zero and will have an amplitude related to the degraded signal

15 amplitude. Further, for a digital memory arrangement, refresh circuitry 996 may merely sample digital one-bits shifted out of CCD memory 932, being indicative of signal degradation without the use of the reference signal discussed above.

In an alternate embodiment, the amplitudes of the input

20 signals 949 to memory 932 may be adjusted in relation to the degradation through memory 932 to normalize output signals 936 in contrast to the arrangement described above wherein refresh circuitry 996 re-establishes the amplitude of output signals for input of a normalized signal to memory 932 as signal 949.

25 Input circuitry; consisting of logic gates such as gates 987-989 and analog switches such as switches 947, 991, and 992; may be considered to be a multiplexer because this circuitry combines or multiplexes a plurality of analog signals (particularly data signal 960 or AI with a reference signal). Further, refresh circuitry 996

30 may be considered to be a demultiplexer because this circuitry separates or demultiplexes a plurality of analog signals (particularly the reference signal which is separated with sample-and-hold 961 from the memory output signal).

It can be seen that CCD memory 932
are   electronic devices that may be shifted or not shifted
under control of gated clock pulses 943 from control logic
937.   Therefore, control of CCD memory may permit outputting
5   of information on line 936 and inputting of information on
line 949 while clocking CCD memory 932 or while holding the
state of CCD memory 932 stationery by disabling clock 943.
This is a significant advantage over the well known rotating
memories such as disc memories, where a disc memory is
10   continually rotating and may not be conveniently stopped due
to the inertia of the memory and other such considerations.
Therefore, a CCD memory that may be stopped under control of
electronic signals will provide greater versatility in
accessing and loading information and generally in operation
15   of the memory device.

Although the present memory arrangement may be
described with respect to a CCD memory and signal processing
arrangement, it is intended that the inventive features
described herein be applicable to signal processing and
20   memory arrangements in general and not be limited to CCD
arrangements.   For example, an adaptive refresh arrangement
described herein is equally applicable to other memory
arrangements such as a magnetostrictive delay line memory
and an LC delay line memory.

The CCD arrangements discussed with reference to
Figs 9C et seq are described for embodiments wherein signals
are stored in analog signal form having analog resolution.
It will now become apparent to those skilled in the art that
5   these arrangements may also be used to store digital
information such as in single-bit form. For example, ADC 934
may be a single-bit ADC such as a threshold detector. In
one embodiment, a well known Schmidt trigger threshold detector
may be used as a one-bit ADC 934 to detect whether the output
10   information 936 is above or below a threshold, indicative
of a binary one or a binary zero condition. If above the
threshold, Schmidt trigger ADC 934 may restore the amplitude
to an upper amplitude magnitude and, if below a threshold,
Schmidt trigger ADC 934 may restore the signal to a lower
15   amplitude magnitude. As described with reference to Figs 9C
and 9D above, ADC 934 would restore the input signal 949 to
an amplitude that may permit degradation through CCD memory
932 without traversing the higher level threshold, detected
with ADC 934. This arrangement can be described with
20   reference to Fig 9D, where amplitude 956 may be defined as
the high level threshold of Schmidt ADC 934, where an input
signal 936 to ADC 934 above amplitude 956 such as amplitude
951 may be detected as a high level signal and may be
restored to a high level recirculation amplitude 952.
25   Shifting through CCD memory 932 would degrade amplitude 952
to amplitude level 953 which is still greater than the minimum
high level amplitude 956; where ADC 934 may restore amplitude
953 to the high level recirculation amplitude 954. The
system may have a characteristic where the difference between
30   input threshold 956 and recirculation amplitude 955 is
greater than the degradation of signal 949 when shifted
through CCD memory 932, where this degradation may be the

difference in amplitude between points 952 and 953 which is
less than the difference in amplitude 955 (952) and 956.
Input signals 936 to ADC 934 which are below threshold 956
may be recirculated as low level magnitudes.

5   Degradation of low level amplitudes may be of only
secondary consideration because degradation of amplitudes
through CCD memory 932 may tend to reduce the amplitude of
the signal, thereby minimizing the detrimental effect on
low level amplitudes. According to this consideration, it
10 may be desirable to provide a high level amplitude for a
first binary state and a low level amplitude for a second
binary state, where the low level amplitude may be closer to
zero voltage than to a high level negative amplitude. For
example, representation of two binary states with a high level
15 positive amplitude and a low level amplitude or a high level
negative amplitude and a low level amplitude are preferred
over an arrangement with representation of two binary states
with a high level positive amplitude and a high level
negative amplitude; where degradation of high level negative
20 signals may be comparable to degradation of high level
positive signals and where degradation of low level positive
or negative signals may be minimized.

       Now, an example will be provided to illustrate this
degradation consideration. A binary signal will be assumed
25 representing a one-state whenever the signal amplitude is
greater than a threshold amplitude 956 and a zero-state
whenever the signal amplitude is less than a threshold
amplitude 956. Threshold signal amplitude 956 is assumed
to be three-volts, degraded signal amplitude 951 and 953 is
30 assumed to be four-volts, restored one-level signal amplitude
952 and 954 are assumed to be five-volts, and restored zero-
level signal amplitude (not shown) is assumed to be zero-volts.

As restored signal 952 is shifted through CCD memory 932,
the signal is shown being degraded from a five-volt amplitude
952 to a four-volt amplitude 953, but four-volts is greater
than the three-volt threshold of Schmidt trigger 934.

5   Therefore, the four-volt input signal 936 will be restored
to an equivalent five-volt output signal 938A at amplitude
954. As a zero-level signal is shifted through CCD memory 932,
the signal will be reduced in amplitude toward zero-volts
(if it is not already at zero-volts) and will, therefore, not

10   be degraded toward the threshold amplitude 956.

     In another embodiment, the threshold signal is
assumed to be zero-volts, the restored binary one signal is
assumed to be plus three-volts, the restored binary zero
signal is assumed to be minus three-volts, and signal degrada-

15   tion is assumed to be from the plus-voltage level and from
the minus-voltage level toward the zero-voltage threshold
level. Therefore, both the binary one and the binary zero
voltage levels will degrade toward the threshold level.
Therefore, this embodiment may be less desirable than the

20   embodiment of the above example where only the binary one
voltage level will degrade toward the threshold voltage level.

     In still a further embodiment of the hybrid memory
arrangement of the present invention, a ternary memory may be
provided with a three-state ADC 934, where the recirculation

25   line 938A from ADC 934 may have three-states including a
positive-amplitude, a zero-amplitude, or a negative-amplitude.
ADC 934 may be implemented with a pair of Schmidt triggers,
where a positive Schmidt trigger may generate a high level
amplitude or low level amplitude in response to a high level

30   or a low level positive amplitude of input signal 936 and a
negative Schmidt trigger may generate a high level amplitude
or a low level amplitude in response to a high level or low

negative amplitude of input signal 936. Therefore, if input
signal 936 had a high level positive amplitude, the positive
Schmidt trigger would be in the positive high level state
and the negative Schmidt trigger would be in the low level

5   state; if input signal 936 had a low level amplitude, both
positive and negative Schmidt triggers would be in the low
level state; and if input signal 936 had a negative high
level amplitude, the positive Schmidt trigger would be in
the low level state and the negative Schmidt trigger would

10 be in the negative high level state. Summing of Schmidt
trigger outputs would provide a high level output if the
positive Schmidt trigger was in the high level state, a
negative output if the negative Schmidt trigger was in the
negative high level state, and low level output if both

15 Schmidt triggers were in the low level state. It should be
noted that when one of the Schmidt triggers is in a high level
state, the other Schmidt trigger is in the low level state
consistent with ternary signal forms and with the binary nature
of Schmidt trigger threshold detectors.

CCD Compositor Fig 9E)

Compositors are well-known in the geophysical art.
One well known prior art compositor is implemented in the
CAFDRS system sold by United Geophysical Corporation, an
5 affiliate of Bendix Corporation located in Pasadena, California,
which is implemented with a General Automation Corp SPC-16
computer. Another well known compositor is the trace com-
positor, model 1011 manufactured by Scientific Data Systems
of Santa Monica, California and described in Technical Manual
10 SDA 98 02 62A dated November 1967. Such compositors accept
input waveforms from geophone transducers and store the
sampled waveforms in memory, where corresponding samples of
each sequential waveform are added together. The sampling
and adding of input waveform samples to previously sampled
15 and added corresponding waveform samples is known as compositing.
Compositing effectively sums or integrates corresponding
samples in the temporal or time-domain to enhance the signal-
to-noise ratio.

An improved compositor arrangement is shown in Fig 9E
20 using a CCD memory arrangement. CCD compositor 903 is shown
for a single transducer input waveform. In a preferred
embodiment, a plurality of compositor channels may be provided
wherein one compositor channel per transducer may be used to
composite each transducer input waveform known as a trace.
25 In reference to Fig 9E, input transducer 911 generates
transducer signal 913 which is preprocessed with buffer
amplifier 983. Transducer signal from buffer amplifier 983
is input to CCD memory 932 through summing resistor 984. As
data in CCD memory is shifted with clock pulses 943, input
30 signal 986 is shifted into and stored in CCD memory 932.
Control signal 972 enables control 937 to generate clock pulses
943 for the period of a trace, where control signal 972

enables the shifting of CCD memory 932 at the start of
an input trace from transducer 911 and control signal 972
disables the shifting of CCD memory 932 at the completion
of the input trace from transducer 911. The first trace may
5 be loaded into CCD memory 932, where the recirculation path
960 is disabled by making FET switch 947 non-conductive
with control signal 948, which is indicative of the first
trace to be loaded into CCD memory 932. Opening of the
recirculation path 960 insures that the first trace will be
10 loaded into CCD memory 932 and that prior contents of the
CCD memory will not carry-over to the new composited infor-
mation. For subsequent traces following the first trace,
control signal 948 controls FET 947 to be conductive to
provide a recirculation path for the composited information
15 in CCD memory 932 to be recirculated and added to the input
trace through summing resistor 985 to summing point 968,
where the input trace signal will be added at summing point
986 through input summing resistor 984. Therefore, when a
trace subsequent to the first trace is sensed by transducer
20 911, this new input trace will be summed with the recirculated
composited information 960 and then shifted into CCD memory 932.
Therefore, CCD memory 932 provides the operation of storing
the composited information and summing resistors 984 and 985
provide the operation of adding the input information to the
25 stored information.

        The information stored in CCD memory 932 may be
analog samples, wherein the shift clock 943 effectively
samples a portion of input signal 913 by inputting to CCD
memory on input signal line 986, then shifting under control
30 of clock 943.

Input control signal 972 to control logic 937
may be related to the ensonifying signal such as a well known
chirp signal, where the system generates a control signal
to the transmitter which may be a well known VIBROSEIS
5   device for ensonifying an underground environment. Control
signal line 972 may be derived from the ensonifying signal
to start the sampling and compositing of input signal 913
with CCD memory 932. Control 937 may include a timer such
as a well known counter to provide clock pulses 943 for a
10   fixed period of time starting with the transmitter command
signal 145 input to control 937 as signal 972.

One distinction of the CCD compositor of the present
invention is that the signals are added in the analog domain
and are stored as analog signals in contrast to digital domain
15   summing and storage in prior art systems. Another distinction
is that a separate compositor channel may be used for each
input channel rather than using the prior art time-shared
adder and disc memory storage.

Additional distinctions and advantages may be obtained
20   by using the hybrid memory teachings of the present invention
discussed with reference to Figs 9C and 9D in conjunction
with the compositor discussed with reference to Fig 9E. In
this arrangement, analog trace signals may be provided as
analog input signal 944 to be added with recirculated signal 936 at
25   summing point 949. Alternately, input signals may be
digitized with a well known ADC and may be input as signals
938C to logic 940 which may be well known adding logic to add
input signals 938C to recirculated signal
938A to provide the summed digital signal 938B for
30   storage in CCD memory 932.

-400-

Another feature of the present invention provides
for summing of analog signals which are input to a CCD.
Such analog summing is exemplified with summing resistors 984
and 985 to summing junction 986 shown in Fig 9E. Similarly,
5   CCD input signals 919 (Fig 9A) may be summed or otherwise
combined with other analog signals. Further, input signal
944 and recirculation signal 936 from hybrid memory arrangement 902
shown in Fig 9C may be summed as input signal 949 if recircula-
tion control signal 948 makes recirculation FET 947 conductive
10   at the same time that input control signal 946 makes input FET
945 conductive. In one embodiment, summing may be performed
with summing resistors as is well known in the art such as with
summing resistors 984 and 985 to summing junction 986 as shown
in Fig 9E. For simplicity, summing resistors may not be shown
15   such as for recirculation signal 936 and input signal 944
to summing junction 949. Still further, other analog
summing arrangements are well known in the
art.

        In CCD compositor arrangement 903, an arrangement may be
20   used to compensate for signal degradation, as discussed with
reference to Figs 9C et seq above. Further, recirculation signal 960
may be scaled to the proper amplitude such as with well known
scaling techniques using ADC 934 or, alternately, by adjusting
summing resistors 984 and 985.

CCD Correlator

A CCD correlator may be provided in accordance with
the present invention using CCD memory and analog signal processing techniques.
This CCD correlator will now be discussed relative to Figs 4, 6, 7, and 9.

5   One embodiment of a CCD correlator will now be
discussed with reference to Fig 4. Loading of a pilot signal
into register 412 and loading of a trace signal into register 417
have been described for single-bit digital signal samples with
reference to Fig 4 above. If registers 412 and 417 are CCD
10   registers, then analog signal samples may be stored therein.
For a CCD correlator embodiment, pilot signal samples may be
processed with amplifier 410 and trace signal samples may be
processed with amplifier 415 which may be μA709 operational
amplifiers. Gates 411 and 416 have been discussed above as
15   digital gates for a digital embodiment but may be analog gates
such as FET analog switches in an analog embodiment. Pilot
signal samples may be loaded into CCD register 412 in analog
signal form with a LOAD P signal in the zero-state inverted
with inverter 414 for selecting input pilot signal from
20   amplifier 410 with FET switch gate 411 for loading into
register 412. Similarly, the LOAD P signal in the zero-state
may be inverted with inverter 418 to select input trace signal
from amplifier 415 with analog gate 416 for loading into
CCD register 417 as analog trace signal samples. When the
25   LOAD P signal and LOAD T signal go to the one-state, input
pilot and trace signals from amplifiers 410 and 415 respectively
are disabled with inverters 414 and 418 respectively and
recirculation signals are enabled. Pilot sample register 412
may have an extra CCD shift register stage 413 for providing
30   an extra one-bit time delay for recirculation through analog
selection gate 411 and trace signal samples from CCD register 417
may be recirculated back to the input of CCD register 417
through analog selection gate 416.

Analog switches 411 and 416 may be field effect

transistor (FET) switches with the outputs connected together

either directly or with resistors for summing or conducting the

selected signal from the selected FET switch to the input of

5   CCD registers 412 and 417. Selection of the FET switches for

conduction or for non-conduction may be provided with the

LOAD P and LOAD T signals for gates 411 and 416 respectively.

Therefore, analog signal gates may be provided for selection

operations similar to the digital signal gates discussed above.

10   Product circuit 419 has been discussed as an

exclusive-OR circuit for generating a single-bit product

signal 424 in response to single-bit output signals from

registers 412 and 417 for a digital single-bit embodiment.

In the instant CCD embodiment, product circuit 419 may be any

15 well known analog multiplier circuit such as discussed in

detail   for multiplier 778 (Fig 7E).

            Counter 420 and register 421 may be replaced by a

CCD register for shifting analog product samples 424 as a

CCD shift register for storage and for adding new correlated

20 output signal samples to prior correlated output signal samples

for compositing-after-correlation in the same form discussed

for CCD compositor 903 (Fig 9E).

            In an alternate embodiment, one of the input signals

may be stored as single-bit digital signal samples and the

25 other input signal may be stored as analog signal samples.

For example, pilot signal logic comprising squaring amplifier 410,

inverter 414, gate 411, register 412, and flip-flop 413 may

be single-bit digital logic elements as discussed above for

the single-bit digital embodiment and operational amplifier 415,

30 inverter 418, analog gates 416, and CCD memory 417 may be

analog sample elements as discussed for the CCD correlator

embodiment immediately above. Multiplier 419 may be implemented

to multiply a single-bit digital sample and an analog sample

-403-

such as a FET switch for conducting an analog signal sample
from CCD register 417 in response to a one-state of the digital
bit from register 412 and for non-conducting an analog signal
sample from register 417 in response to a zero-state digital

5   bit from register 412. Therefore, product signal 424 may be
equal to the analog signal from CCD register 417 when the
digital signal from register 412 is in the one-state and product
signal 424 may be a zero signal when the signal from register 412
is in the zero-state. CCD register or compositor comprising

10 stages 420-421 may load or sum analog signal samples generated
as signal 424 into register stages 420-421 for storage and for
compositing operations. Therefore, a single-bit sample and
an analog sample product arrangement may be implemented using
the combination of techniques discussed for the single-bit

15 digital embodiment and for the CCD analog embodiment above.

The arrangement discussed herein with reference to
Figs 9F-9J may be used for preserving the precision of analog
signal samples stored in CCD memories such as registers 412,
417, and 420-421. Therefore, input logic to registers 412,

20 417, and 420-421 may include a multiplexer for multiplexing
an analog reference signal with the input signal samples and
the output of these registers may contain refresh circuitry
operating in response to the analog reference signal sample.

In an alternate embodiment, the correlation processing

25 may be performed in parallel word form as will be described
hereinafter for a single-bit digital pilot signal and an
analog trace signal. A plurality of digital pilot signal bits
from register 412 may each be used to select or non-select a
corresponding FET multiplier switch such as indicated by

30 multiplier 419 to control the updating of a plurality of analog
output signal sample bits stored in register stages 420-421 in
response to a single analog sample from register 417.
Alternately, a single output digital sample from register 412

may control a plurality of multiplier gates 419 to either
select or non-select updating of a plurality of output signal
samples in register stages 420-421 in response to a plurality
of analog signal samples from register 417. Therefore, although

5 the arrangement shown in Fig 4 has been discussed for a serial
arrangement wherein a plurality of serial words in registers 412
and 417 may be processed with a single multiplier circuit 419
in sequential or serial form to update a plurality of output
signal samples shifted between stages 420-421 in sequential

10 serial form; the communication paths shown in Fig 4 may also
represent parallel signal communication paths or may represent
combinations of serial and parallel communication paths.
Further, sets of parallel processors such as parallel
multipliers 419 may be provided for processing parallel signals

15 in parallel signal paths.

The arrangement discussed with reference to Fig 6D
may also be implemented with a CCD register embodiment. For
example, trace signal T may be processed with an operational
amplifier 623 to provide input signal samples T_L. Sample

20 device 624 may be a well known sample-and-hold circuit as
discussed with reference to sample-and-hold 777 (Fig 7E).
Alternately, sample circuit 624 may be eliminated. P-ROM 625
may store single-bit digital signal samples for gating trace
signal sample T_L in response to a one-state pilot signal sample

25 and for not gating trace signal sample T_L in response to a zero-
state pilot signal sample from P-ROM 625. Product circuit 626
may be a single FET switch as discussed with reference to
Fig 4 above for either gating or not gating the input analog
trace signal samples to be summed into the output signal sample

30 memory. Z-RAM 614 and Z-counter 613 may be replaced with a
CCD memory for storing analog signal samples from product
circuit 626 as discussed for a CCD embodiment with
reference to Fig 4 above and as discussed
for compositor 903 with reference to Fig 9E above.

Digital detector circuits **643** and **645** have been discussed as
digital detectors with reference to Fig 6D. Alternately,
detectors 643 and 645 may be implemented as analog detectors
such as Schmidt triggers or other analog threshold detectors
5 for an analog output signal sample embodiment. Control circuitry
including compositor control 632, one-shot 651, counters 616-619,
decoder 622, and decoder 628 which have been discussed above
for a digital embodiment but may also be used in conjunction
with the analog or hybrid CCD memory embodiment.

10   A hybrid correlator embodiment has been discussed
above with reference to Figs 4 and 6D, wherein the term hybrid
correlator is herein intended to mean a correlator that provides
correlation between a first signal having a plurality of
digital signal samples and a second signal having a plurality
15 of analog signal samples processed with a hybrid multiplier such
as multiplier 419 (Fig 4) and multiplier 626 (Fig 6D). In
the hybrid embodiments discussed above, the digital signal samples
were assumed to be pilot signal samples and the analog signal
samples were assumed to be trace signal samples. Alternately,
20 the digital signal samples may be trace signal samples and the
analog signal samples may be the pilot signal samples. For
simplicity of discussion, the digital signal samples have
assumed to be single-bit digital signal samples and hybrid
multiplier 419 (Fig 4) and 626 (Fig 6) has been assumed to be
25 single-bit hybrid multipliers such as a single FET switch. In
an alternate embodiment, the digital signal samples may be
multi-bit digital signal samples such as 4-bit digital signal
samples and hybrid multiplier 419 (Fig 4) and 626 (Fig 6) may
be a multipling digital-to-analog (DAC) converter such as
30 multiplying DAC 933 (Fig 9J) or may be other well known
multiplying DAC circuits.

For the CCD correlator arrangement discussed with reference to Fig 6D, the Z-store may be a CCD shift register being shifted under control of clock $\overline{C2}$ as gated by composite signal $\overline{COM}$ and correlate enable signal Lm through

5 OR-gate 629. Although Z-store has been discussed for a Z-RAM 614 with reference to Fig 6D, replacement of Z-RAM 614 with a CCD shift register under control of the clock signal from gate 629 permits use of a CCD memory in the arrangement shown in Fig 6D. Further, Z-counter 613 may be

10 eliminated, wherein output signals Z_K from a CCD Z-store may be recirculated and summed with analog product signal from analog multiplier 626 and analog gate 627. In this CCD compositor embodiment, CCD shift registers are not random access devices and therefore cannot be instantaneously synchronized with an

15 input sync signal to gate 638. Therefore, it may be desirable to discontinue recirculation of the CCD shift register after completion of compositing and correlation operations under control of the Lm and $\overline{COM}$ signals to OR-gate 629. Therefore, Z-store implemented with a CCD shift register may be maintained

20 in a static state except when compositing and correlating. As is well known in the art, a shift register such as a CCD shift register is a sequential access device under control of a clock signal, wherein accessing may not be performed in response to an address on a random access basis as discussed for Z-RAM 614

25 operating in response to K-addresses from K-counter 619. Therefore, K-counter 619 may not be required for accessing the Z-store but may be used primarily for initiating another load of J-counter 627 with the Jo-parameter and K-counter 619 with a zero-state or other initial condition with signal Km

30 through NOR gate 621.

Sampled Filter Arrangement

A sampled filter arrangement 1000 having important advantages over prior art filters will now be discussed with reference to Fig 10. Arrangement 1000 incorporates many inventive features including a sample-on-the-fly arrangement, an improved memory arrangement, a hybrid arrangement, and other inventive features. For convenience of discussion, the sampled filter arrangement of the present invention will be discussed in the embodiment of a discrete Fourier transform (DFT) arrangement, which is intended to exemplify more general filter methods including other Fourier transforms, correlators, convolvers, compositors, FIR filters, and other filter arrangements.

The DFT arrangement of the present invention will now be discussed with reference to Figs 10A-10D to illustrate the processing method. Elements t_0-t_3 represent time domain samples; where the first sample is t_0, the second sample is t_1, the third sample is t_2, and the fourth sample is t_3. These samples may be analog samples, digital samples, single-bit samples, or other samples. The time domain samples are mapped into frequency domain samples through appropriate constants such as by multiplying the input sample by the appropriate constant and summing the product thereof into the appropriate output sample storage location. Output samples are designated as the f_0-f_3 samples wherein the f_0 sample is the lowest frequency sample, the f_3 sample is the highest frequency sample, and the f_1 and f_2 samples are intermediate frequency related samples of ascending frequency significance.

For simplicity of discussion, time domain samples t_0-t_3 are assumed to be equally spaced in time and frequency domain samples f_0-f_3 are assumed to be equally based in frequency; but such equal time spacing and equal frequency spacing is not necessary for implementation of the system of the present invention. Further, for simplicity of discussion the number of time domain

samples t_0-t_3 is shown equal to the number of frequency domain
samples of f_0-f_3; although there may be fewer time domain
samples than frequency domain samples or there may be fewer
frequency domain samples than time domain samples. Therefore,
5   for the general method, any number of time domain samples
having any desired time spacing therebetween may be mapped into
any number of frequency samples having any frequency spacing
therebetween.

The mapping of any time sample t_n into any frequency sample
10   f_n can be performed in the following manner. The time sample t_n
is multiplied by an appropriate constant and added into the
related frequency sample or frequency bin. The constant is a
function of the time relationship of the time domain sample t_n
and the frequency relationship of the frequency domain sample f_n.
15   For example, the constants may be a pair of trigonometric
constants, being the sine and cosine functions of the argument
wt; where $w=2\pi f$ and wherein the f and t values of this argument
are derived from the time-related source and frequency-related
destination of the particular operation. Alternately, other
20   constant terms may be used.

An example of operation will now be provided relative to
Figs 10A-10D. As shown in Fig 10A, the first time domain sample t_0
is mapped into each of a plurality of frequency domain samples f_n
by multiplying the t_0 sample by the appropriate constant (which
25   is a function of the t_0 time source and the related f_n frequency
destination) and then summing that product into the appropriate
frequency sample f_n. As shown in Fig 10B, the second time domain
sample t_1 is mapped into each of a plurality of frequency
domain samples f_n by multiplying the t_1 sample by the
30   appropriate constant and then summing that product into the
appropriate frequency sample f_n. Similarly and as shown in
Figs 10C and 10D, the third and fourth time domain samples t_2 and
t_3 are mapped into each of a plurality of frequency domain
samples f_n by multiplying the t sample by the appropriate constant
35   and then summing that product into the appropriate frequency

sample f_n. Therefore, for each of four time domain samples $t_0 - t_3$ updating each of four frequency domain samples $f_0 - f_3$ (Figs 10A-10D), each frequency domain sample $f_0 - f_3$ will be updated four times, once for each input sample $t_0 - t_3$.

5   Alternately, input sampling can continue past the t_3 sample for subsequent updating of each of the four frequency domain samples $f_0 - f_3$ or conversely a limited number of time domain samples such as four time domain samples $t_0 - t_3$ can each be used to update a large number of frequency domain samples such as

10   64 frequency domain samples.

     For simplicity of discussion, a single time domain sample is shown updating a single frequency domain sample (Figs 10A-10D). As is well known in the DFT art, updating of samples is typically performed using a complex (real and imaginary) number represen-

15   tation characterized by in-phase and out-of-phase updates, or sine and cosine updates, etc. In one embodiment, two time domain samples may be provided for each time domain sample period $t_0 - t_3$ and each of the pair of time domain samples can be multiplied by the appropriate constant to update the corresponding one of

20   a pair of complex frequency domain samples. Therefore for example, the t_0 time domain sample (Figs 10A-10D) may represent a pair of complex time domain samples, the f_0 frequency domain sample (Figs 10A-10D) may represent a pair of complex frequency domain samples, and the constant being a function of t_0 and f_0

25   may represent a pair of constants being a sine function and a cosine function of the time and frequency related argument. Alternately, the time samples $t_0 - t_3$ may be single (not complex) samples, wherein each time sample t may be multiplied by a complex pair of constants to generate a complex pair of

30   frequency-related updates for updating a complex pair of frequency domain samples f for each frequency. As another alternative, a complex pair of time domain samples may be generated by using a pair of non-complex time domain samples

offset in time such as offset by one-half of the sampling
period. Many other methods for satisfying the complex number
requirements of a DFT will now become obvious from the
teachings herein.

5   For simplicity of discussion, the methods shown in
Figs 10A-10D use only four time domain samples t and four
frequency domain samples f. In an actual implementation,
such sets of four may be quadrature signals having zero and
unity trigonometric functions and therefore represente an
10   extremely simple configuration. It is herein intended that
these groupings of four be exemplary of larger groupings that
represent more practical implementations of a DFT.

           The transform on-the-fly method of the present invention
will now be discussed. When the t_0 sample is received (Fig 10A)
15   it is multiplied by the four constants that are functions of
the t_0 time sample and of frequency and used to update each of
the four frequency samples. When the t_1 sample is received
(Fig 10B), it is multiplied by the four constants that are
functions of the t_1 time sample and of frequency and used to
20   update each of the four frequency samples. When the t_2 sample
is received (Fig 10C) it is multiplied by the four constants
that are functions of the t_2 time sample and of frequency and
used to update each of the four frequency samples. When the t_3
sample is received (Fig 10D), it is multiplied by the four
25   constants that are functions of the t_3 time sample and of
frequency and used to update each of the four frequency samples.
Therefore, it can be seen that each time domain sample is fully
processed and fully updates the frequency samples to implement
the process-on-the-fly arrangement of the present invention.

30   A process-on-the-fly implementation has been disclosed for
a correlator processor herein;
which arrangement is equally applicable to a DFT processor or
other filter arrangement to provide other arrangements such as
a DFT.

A general implementation of a filter exemplified by a
DFT wil be discussed with reference to Fig 10E and a specific
hybrid embodiment will be discussed with reference to Fig 10F
hereinafter. The sampled filter arrangement may be implemented
in analog, digital, or hybrid signal processing form.
Preferred embodiments of all three forms will be discussed
hereinafter to exemplify the more generally applicable features
of the present invention.

Many filtering and processing arrangements can be
characterized as the sum-of-the product arrangements, wherein
an input sample 1012 may be multiplied by a reference sample 1013
using a multiplier 1014 and summed with a summer 1017, with the
output sample stored in output memory 1018. For example, a
sequence of reference samples 1013 can be provided by memory 1010
to be processed with a sequence of input samples 1012 such as
from input memory 1011 to be multiplied with multiplier 1014
and summed with summer 1017. Each input sample 1012 can
processed with a corresponding reference sample 1013 such as
disclosed with reference to Fig 6D herein.

Arrangement 1000 is shown in block diagram form, wherein
the elements and methods used therefor have been disclosed in
detail in the instant application and in related applications.
For example, reference memory 1010 may be the analog ROM as
discussed with reference to Figs 1-3 of application S/N 889,301
or may be a digital ROM such as ROM 625 at Fig 6D herein.
Further, multiplier 1014 may be an analog multiplier as is
well known in the art, a hybrid multiplier such as a multiplying
DAC, or a digital multiplier such as a single bit multiplier
or a whole number multiplier as discussed in application S/N 889,301
and as discussed herein. Further, summer 1017 may be an analog
summer or a digital summer and output memory 1018 may be an
analog memory or a digital memory as disclosed herein.

Further control arrangements, addressing methods and other
concepts for sample filters are set forth in detail herein.
and various addressing and control arrangements are set forth
in application S/N 889,301; where these methods may be
implemented in the structural form set forth relative to Fig 10
herein. For example, a start address for accessing an ROM may
be derived as set forth in Fig 6 herein and may be preloaded
into word counter 316 (Fig 6A of application S/N 889,301)
to provide accessing the analog ROM of the present invention
in accordance with the addressing method of Fig 6 herein.
Other adaptations of the system of Fig 10 herein and the
methods and arrangements of the system of Fig 10 herein can
now be provided by one skilled in the art from the teachings
herein.

Arrangement 1000 characterizes a general sampled filter
arrangement in accordance wtih the system of the present
invention. Reference memory 1010 provides constant or reference
information 1013. Memory 1010 may be an analog ROM in accordance
with the present invention or a digital ROM such as ROM 625
at Fig 6D herein. Alternately, reference memory 1010 may be
an RAM, a core memory, or any other memory arrangement.
Input memory 1011 may be a CCD or other serial memory or other
memory arrangement disclosed herein or known in the art.
Alternately, a process on the fly method in accordance with the
disclosure in application Serial No 550,231 may be used, wherein
input signal 1012A may be sampled directly from front end 1009
as signal 1012 and processed-on-the-fly without the need for input
memory 1011.

Because of the large number of combinations of analog and
digital signal processors that may be implemented with the
arrangement of Fig 10E, the various combinations are summarized
in tabular form in the TABLE OF PROCESSING ALTERNATIVES set

5   forth herein. In this table; the elements (1010, 1011, 1014, 1017, and
1018) are set forth in columns and the embodiments (P0 to P31)
are set forth in rows. For each embodiment, the elements in
the columns are identified as either an analog element with a
"0" symbol or a digital element with a "1" symbol. The table

10   is organized in truth table form as a binary progression to ·
identify all combinations in a convenient manner. For example,
the first embodiment is a fully analog embodiment having all
"0" elements and the last embodiment is an all-digital
embodiment having all "1" elements, wherein all other embodiments

15   may be considered to be hybrid embodiments having combinations
of analog and digital ("1" and "0") elements. For convenience
of reference, the binary numerical value of the combination of
"1" and "0" terms in an embodiment is characterized by the
decimal numerical value of the P reference number for that

20   particular embodiment. For example, a "00111" embodiment can be
characterized as a 7 based upon the weighted binary numerical
value and defined as the P7 embodiment having digital elements
1010, 1011, and 1014 defined with "1" symbols and having analog
elements 1017 and 1018 defined with "0" symbols.

25   For convenience of discussion and to limit the size of the
TABLE OF PROCESSING ALTERNATIVES to a practical level, elements
are defined as analog elements or digital elements by the
analog or digital nature of the signals output therefrom. For
example, reference memory 1010 may be the analog ROM of

30   application S/N 889,301 and may be characterized as an analog element
if output signal 1013 is in analog signal form. Alternately,
if an A/D converter is used in combination with the analog ROM
for reference memory 1010, signal 1013 will be a digital signal

TABLE OF PROCESSING ALTERNATIVES

REF NO →	1018	1017	1014	1011	1010	EMBODIMENT ↓
P0	0	0	0	0	0	ANALOG
P1	0	0	0	0	1	HYBRID
P2	0	0	0	1	0	HYBRID
P3	0	0	0	1	1	HYBRID
P4	0	0	1	0	0	HYBRID
P5	0	0	1	0	1	HYBRID
P6	0	0	1	1	0	HYBRID
P7	0	0	1	1	1	HYBRID
P8	0	1	0	0	0	HYBRID
P9	0	1	0	0	1	HYBRID
P10	0	1	0	1	0	HYBRID
P11	0	1	0	1	1	HYBRID
P12	0	1	1	0	0	HYBRID
P13	0	1	1	0	1	HYBRID
P14	0	1	1	1	0	HYBRID
P15	0	1	1	1	1	HYBRID
P16	1	0	0	0	0	HYBRID
P17	1	0	0	0	1	HYBRID
P18	1	0	0	1	0	HYBRID
P19	1	0	0	1	1	HYBRID
P20	1	0	1	0	0	HYBRID
P21	1	0	1	0	1	HYBRID
P22	1	0	1	1	0	HYBRID
P23	1	0	1	1	1	HYBRID
P24	1	1	0	0	0	HYBRID
P25	1	1	0	0	1	HYBRID
P26	1	1	0	1	0	HYBRID
P27	1	1	0	1	1	HYBRID
P28	1	1	1	0	0	HYBRID
P29	1	1	1	0	1	HYBRID
P30	1	1	1	1	0	HYBRID
P31	1	1	1	1	1	DIGITAL

and therefore element 1010 will be characterized as a digital element. Further, A/D converters may be used for generating digital output signals in response to analog input signals and D/A converters may be used to generate analog output signals

5   in response to digital input signals to satisfy the conditions of the TABLE OF PROCESSING ALTERNATIVES. For example, relative to the P7 term; signals 1012, 1013 and 1015 from elements 1011 1010, and 1014 respectively are digital signals while signals output from elements 1017 and 1018 are analog signals. In order

10   to facilitate this embodiment, it may be necessary to provide a D/A converter to convert digital signal 1015 to analog signal form for processing with analog summer 1017 and analog output memory 1018.

An analog sampled filter embodiment will now be discussed

15   with reference to arrangement 1000 Reference memory 1010 may be the analog ROM of application S/N 889,301   for generating analog samples 1013 to multiplier 1014. Input signal sample 1012 may be an analog signal sample such as from an analog input memory 1011 which may be a CCD or other analog memory. Alternately analog

20   sample 1012 may be sampled with a sample-and-hold circuit or other circuit or may be sampled implicit in multiplier 1014; wherein such input signal sampling arrangements are discussed in application Serial No 550,231. Multiplier 1014 can be any known analog multiplier. Further, multiplier 1014 can have

25   sample-and-hold circuits for processing input signals 1012 and 1013 and/or for processing product signal 1015. Product signal 1015 can be added to stored signal 1016 with summer 1017 and stored back into output memory 1018 in accordance with the arrangement discussed

30   with reference to Fig 6D herein. In this analog embodiment, summer 1017 can be an analog summer such as a differential amplifier, a resistor summing network, or other known analog summing arrangements. Output memory 1018 can be implemented as an analog output memory such as the CCD analog memory of the present

35   invention or other analog memory arrangements.

A digital sampled filter arrangement will now be discussed
with reference to arrangement 1000. Reference memory 1010, input
memory 1011, and output memory 1018 can be any known digital
memory devices such as ROM 625 and RAM 614 as discussed

5   relative to Fig 6D herein.
Input signal 1012 and reference signal 1013 can be digital
signals processed with digital multiplier 1014 to generate
digital product signal 1015 for summing with digital summer 1017
and for storing in digital output memory 1018. Such a digital

10   arrangement is discussed relative to
Fig 6D herein.
       A hybrid sampled filter arrangement will now be discussed
with reference to arrangement 1000. A hybrid arrangement is
herein intended to mean an arrangement combining analog and

15   digital signal processing. Hybrid embodiments may be
implemented by various combinations of the analog and digital
sampled filter arrangements discussed above.
       In one hybrid embodiment discussed with reference to
Fig 10E reference signal 1013 may be an analog signal and input

20   signal 1012 may be a digital signal. Reference memory 1010 may
be the analog ROM of the present invention for generating analog
reference signal 1013. Input memory 1011 may be a digital memory
for generating digital input signal 1012 or alternately digital
signal 1012 may be derived directly from an A/D converter in a

25   process-on-the-fly implementation. Multiplier 1014 may be a
hybrid multiplier such as a multiplying DAC for generating
product signal 1015 as an analog signal that is related to the
product of analog reference signal 1013 and digital input signal
1012.

30   In another hybrid embodiment discussed with reference
to Fig 10F reference signal 1013 may be a digital signal and
input signal 1012 may be an analog signal. Reference memory 1010
may be a digital ROM for generating digital reference signal 1013
and input signal 1012 may be an analog input signal such as

received from front-end circuitry 1009 such as transducers and signal processors. Multiplier 1014A may be a hybrid multiplier such as a multiplying DAC for generating analog product signal 1015A in response to the product of digital reference

5   signal 1013 and analog reference signal 1012. Analog product signal 1015A may be summed with output signal 1016A with an analog summer such as summer 1017A having input summing resistors 1020, operational amplifier 1021 and feedback resistor 1022   The analog sum signal from summer 1017A may be stored in

10   output CCD memory 1018A for subsequent updating with other product signals and for outputting as signal 1016.

In other hybrid embodiments, A/D converters may generate digital signals in response to analog signals and D/A converters may generate analog signals in response to

15   digital signals to provide different combinations of hybrid signal processing.

Many other sampled filter embodiments can be provided from the teachings of the present invention and the teachings of the referenced applications; wherein arrangement 1000 is

20   provided merely to exemplify a preferred embodiment of the broadly related teachings of the present invention.

Various types of filters may be implemented with arrangement 1000 and with the various alternate embodiments from the teachings herein. For example, arrangement 1000 may

25   be used to implement a correlator sampled filter, a Fourier transform filter, a compositor filter, and multitudes of other filters; as will be exemplified with several descriptions of preferred embodiments hereinafter.

A sample on-the-fly filter implementation will now be

30   discussed for arrangement 1000. The on-the-fly filtering method has been disclosed relative to Fig 6 herein; wherein this on-the-fly method will now be discussed relative to Fig 10F   Input signal 1012 is processed

on a sample-to-sample basis, wherein each sample of input
signal 1012 is used to fully update a plurality of output samples
prior to updating output samples with a next input sample. In
this arrangement, input memory 1011 may be eliminated, wherein
input signal 1012 may be a real time signal processed without
memory buffering. In this arrangement, as each sample of input
signal 1012 is provided to multiplier 1014, a plurality of
reference samples 1013 are provided to multiplier 1014 for that
single input sample 1012 to update a plurality of output samples
in response to the single input sample 1012 and a plurality of
reference samples 1013. In one embodiment, reference memory 1010
may be the analog ROM of the present invention that is
sequentially accessed for blocks of reference samples and output
memory 1018 may be the alterable analog memory of application
S/N 889,301. In this embodiment, a block of reference samples 1013
from analog ROM 1010 are accessed in synchronization with the
accessing of a block of output signal samples 1016 from output
memory 1018 for a particular input sample 1012 to update each of
the sequence of output samples 1016 from output memory 1018 in
response to the corresponding sample in the block of analog
reference samples 1013 from reference memory 1010 Block
accessing of an analog memory has been described in application S/N 889,301 with
reference to Fig 6 and processing of input samples on-the-fly
together with control logic, etc has been disclosed in detail
relative to Fig 6 herein.

     A conventional (non-on-the-fly) arrangement will now be
discussed for arrangement 1000. In a conventional arrangement,
input samples are stored in input memory 1011 and reference
samples are stored in a reference memory 1010. A block of input
samples 1012 are accessed from input memory 1011 and a block of
corresponding reference samples 1013 are accessed from reference
memory 1010 in synchronization therebetween for providing the
proper reference sample as signal 1013 when a corresponding

input sample is provided as signal 1012. Therefore, a sequence of corresponding signal pairs 1012 and 1013 are provided to multiplier 1014 in sequence for generating the product therebetween and for summing the sequence of products with

5   summer 1017 for storing of the sum of these products as a single sample in output memory 1018. A change in the block of input samples accessed from input memory 1011 and/or a change in the block of reference samples stored in reference memory 1010 is then made to provide a new combination of signal sample pairs

10   to multiplier 1014 to generate the next sample for storage in output memory 1018 Accessing of the appropriate blocks of samples from input memory 1011 and from reference memory 1010 for generating the particular output samples stored in output memory 1018 is well known in the art and, for example, is described in

15   the reference by Rabiner and Gold. Selection of the appropriate block in memory may be provided with well-known addressing and selection arrangements and may be provided with the preferred embodiment discussed with reference to Fig 6 in application S/N 889,301 such as by preloading a start address into word counter

20   316 from computer 112R (Fig 6A herein).

A correlator sampled filter will now be discussed for arrangement 1000 A real-time correlator can be implemented by multiplying an appropriate reference sample 1013 stored in memory 1010 by appropriate input sample 1012 using multiplier 1014

25   and adding together the appropriate product signals 1015 to generate output samples stored in output memory 1018. Conventional (non-on-the-fly) methods are well known in the art and non-conventional (on-the-fly) methods are discussed in detail herein such as with reference

30   to Fig 6D. For a process on-the-fly embodiment, for each input sample 1012 all output samples from memory 1018 are accessed with the same start address and in the same sequence and a plurality of reference samples 1013 are accessed from

memory 1010 with a start address that changes as a function
of a propogation or shifting method such as by being
incremented for each iteration of the processor, as discussed
in detail herein such as with

5   reference to L-counter 618 and J-counter 617 in Fig 6D
herein. This changing in the accessing start address of
reference memory 1010 can be implemented with hard-wired counter
logic such as discussed with reference to said Fig 6D
herein. Alternately, the accessing

10   start address can be implemented under stored program processor
control such as discussed with reference to Fig 6 in application S/N 889,301 by
preloading word counter 316 with a start address determined
under program control in computer 112R as defined with the
flowcharts set forth in Figs 5A and 5B

15   herein. Therefor, the on-the-fly correlator of
Fig 6 herein can be implemented with the
analog ROM and/or the control arrangements of the present
invention in the embodiment discussed with reference to
Fig 10A herein. Alternately, other correlator arrangements may

20   be implemented with the arrangement shown in Fig 10A using well-
known methods for accessing reference samples 1013, input
samples 1014, and output samples 1016.

A Fourier transform processor arrangement will now be
discussed for arrangement 1000. For simplicity of discussion,

25   a discrete Fourier transform (DFT) implementation will be
discussed. A DFT is a well-known method of generating
frequency-domain information from time-domain information,
wherein each input signal sample is multiplied by a pair of
complex (real and imaginary) trigonometric samples and used

30   to update the appropriate complex (real and imaginary) output
samples. For an on-the-fly DFT implementation, as each input
sample 1012 is made available to multiplier 1014 a block of
reference samples 1013 are accessed from reference memory 1010

to update a block of output samples 1016 accessed from
output memory 1018. The block of reference samples 1013
represent a sequence of complex pairs of trigonometric
functions, having progressively increasing phases related to

5   progressively increasing frequencies for a particular time
delay, which are used to update output samples having
progressively increasing frequencies corresponding to the
frequency-related phases of the reference signals providing
the updates. This method can be implemented with the

10   correlator control arrangement set forth
in Fig 6D herein by storing the
appropriate trigonometric constants in ROM 625 and by properly
controlling the advancing of J-counter 617 for each input
sample processed. In this DFT embodiment, the start address

15   of J-counter 617 will be stepped to a start address related to
the next block of reference samples rather than the next
reference sample as implemented for the correlator mechanization.
For example, the first block of DFT reference samples will
correspond to the zero time phase shifts for each of the output

20   frequency parameters, the second block of reference samples
will correspond to the first sample time related phase shift
for each of the output frequency parameters, etc. One form of
this implementation would be to use L-counter 618 to identify
the most significant part of the address and to use J-counter 617

25   for the least significant part of the address, being reset to
zero and then incremented through the reference sample addresses
of the selected block. In this form, J-counter 617 provides
the least significant portion of the address, being the samples
within the block, and L-counter 618 provides the most significant

30   portion of the address, being the sample counter or block
counter for accessing ROM 625 (Fig 6D herein).

A compositor arrangement will now be discussed for arrangement 1000. A compositor is conventionally implemented by summing corresponding input samples from a plurality of different signals. In arrangement 1000 reference memory 1010 and multiplier 1014 may not be necessary, wherein input signal 1012 may be provided directly to summer 1017 as signal 1015 for summing with output signal samples 1016 and for storage in output memory 1018 This arrangement is similar to the compositor arrangement discussed with reference to Fig 10E herein.

A beamformer arrangement will now be discussed for arrangement 1000. In a preferred embodiment, the beamformer is implemented as a single-bit beamformer in conjunction with a Fourier transform processor but the beamformer may also be implemented in other forms such as in whole number form. The beamformer and/or Fourier transform arrangements discussed herein may be implemented for a single beam or for a plurality of beams.

A beamformer can be implemented by summing the appropriate time and space-related samples together for a particular beam angle. Because summation is implicit in a Fourier transform arrangement, beamforming and Fourier transformation (or beamforming and other filter arrangements) can be implemented together for a simplified implementation. Time and spacial domain input samples 1012 can be obtained from a front-end transducer array 1009 summed together with summer 1017 and stored in output memory 1018 The proper time and spacial domain samples to be summed together can be defined by well-known beamformer concepts.

If Fourier transformation is also required such as for time domain beamforming and for frequency domain analysis, then each time and spacial domain sample can be multiplied by an appropriate Fourier transform constant with multiplier 1014 prior

to summing of each update sample with summer 1017 and storage
of the updated sample in output memory 1018. The proper product
samples to be generated and summed together are defined by
well-known beamformer and Fourier transform concepts.

5   A two-dimensional Fourier transformation can be
implemented such as for frequency domain beamforming and
frequency domain analysis in the form of a time domain and
then a spacial domain transform. Each time domain and spacial
domain sample may be multiplied by a pair of appropriate Fourier
10   transform constants with multiplier 1014 or with a pair of
multipliers prior to summing of each update sample with
summer 1017 and storage of the updated sample in output
memory 1018. The proper product samples to be generated and
summed together are defined by well-known beamformer and two-
15   dimensional Fourier transform concepts.

In another embodiment, the analog ROM of application
S/N 889,301 can be used in combination with an analog alterable
CCD memory for sampled data filtering such as for correlation,
Fourier transformation, etc. For example, the analog ROM can
20   contain reference signal samples or pilot signal samples and
the analog alterable CCD memory can contain input signal
samples. These reference and input signal samples can be
correlated together as disclosed elsewhere herein
or as is well known in the art
25   such as for shift register correlation arrangements.

It is herein intended that the single-bit processing
arrangements of the instant disclosure and of application
Serial No 754,660 be usable with the system of
Fig 10.   For example, the single-bit arrangement discussed
30   with reference to Fig 6D herein is
intended to be usable with arrangement 1000' discussed herein
such as for a single-bit Fourier transform processor. Further,
the memory arrangements of the present invention can be used

for constant register 453 and/or remainder register 451 (Fig 4D) of application Serial No 754,660. For example, the analog CCD ROM of the present invention can be used for said constant register 453 and the analog CCD alterable memory of the present invention can be used for said remainder register 451.

Filtering operations provide an implicit enhancement
of signal-to-noise ratio (SNR) and processing gain such as with
the summation operation. Therefore, signals can be processed
with low resolution, low accuracy, and/or low SNR circuits up
to the summation operation; often without significant
degradation of the final solution. Therefore, in a preferred
embodiment, signals can be processed with relatively low
precision, resolution, and/or SNR circuits such as analog,
hybrid, low resolution digital, and/or low precision digital
circuits before the summation operation and can be processed
with relatively high precision, resolution, and/or SNR circuits
such as high resolution and precision digital circuits for the
summation operation for subsequent processing.

Because analog and/or hybrid signal processing can be
lower in cost than digital signal processing and because digital
signal processing preserves resolution, precision, and SNR
characteristics; therefore analog and/or hybrid circuits can
be used for front-end signal processing where resolution,
precision, and SNR are less significant and digital circuits
can be used for rear-end signal processing where resolution,
precision, and SNR are more significant. A preferred embodiment
of the present invention is represented by a hybrid embodiment
having analog front-end signal processing and digital rear-end
signal processing. Such an arrangement is characterized by
embodiments P24 and may also be characterized by embodiments
P16 to P30 and particularly embodiments P24 to P30 as set forth
in the TABLE OF PROCESSING ALTERNATIVES herein. For example,
in embodiment P24 reference memory 1010 may be the analog CCD
ROM of application S/N 889,301; input memory 1011 may be the analog
alterable CCD memory of application S/N 889,301 or alternately
may be eliminated by processing signal 712A from front-end 1009
directly with multiplier 1014, multiplier 1014 may be any well-
known analog multiplier, summer 1017 may be any digital summer

and may include an analog-to-digital converter for converting analog product signal 1015 from analog multiplier 1014 to a digital signal for summing with digital stored signal 1016, and output memory 1018 may be a digital output memory such as a

5 digital RAM as discussed with reference to Fig 6D herein.

Another feature of the filtering arrangement of the present invention provides for output signal processing after filtering in a form that is inexpensive, efficient, and

10 eliminates many error mechanisms. For simplicity of illustration, this inventive feature will be described in the embodiment of a single bit or incremental signal processing arrangement, but one skilled in the art will be able to implement other arrangements from the teachings herein.

15 In prior art systems such as fast Fourier transforms, output information is represented by complex (real and imaginary) information such as sine and cosine functions. Magnitude information is conventionally derived by calculating the square-root-of-the-sum-of-the-squares, or root-sum-of-the-

20 squares (RSS) or vector sum to obtain magnitude information from the two trigonometric (complex) components. For an incremental or single-bit processor, the output quadrature components have been found to be linear components, not trigonometric components; wherein the two output quadrature

25 components of a single-bit output signal can be summed directly as magnitudes and need not be vector summed as quadrature trigonometric components. This capability provides a simple magnitude implementation, reduces or eliminates phase-related errors, and provides other advantages. Simplicity is achieved,

30 wherein the two quadrature components can be directly summed and need not be vectorially summed, thereby providing simpler processing circuitry.

In prior art systems such as Fourier
transform type systems, samples are taken
over a time aperture or sampling period, transformed to
frequency-domain complex (real and imaginary) samples, then

5   added into the proper frequency "bins". Each transformed
sample represents magnitude of an inphase or quadrature
component of the particular frequency value. The amplitudes
of the inphase and quadrature complex samples represent
vectorial components and therefore must be added vectorially

10   such as with an RSS calculation to obtain a magnitude
parameter. Because different time domain samples are taken
at different times, any phase variations in the input samples
will cause phase variations in the output complex samples
over the time aperture of the samples. Therefore, for a

15   particular output frequency bin, transformed samples having
different phases will be added together linearly because of
the sum of the products processing; where linear addition of
phase varying complex components will introduce errors in prior
art vectorially related quadrature signals. There phase-

20   related errors can be reduced or eliminated by various methods
in accordance with the present invention. A first method
involves providing a vectorial computation on all quadrature
components before being summed either together for magnitude
information and/or before being summed with transformed

25   components related to another input sample. A second method
involves providing linear (not a trigonometric or vector)
quadrature signals for direct or linear (not trigonometric or
vector) addition for sum of the products and/or for magnitude
type summing.

30   For the first method, when a pair of complex samples are
transformed, then an RSS computation is performed thereon
before summing with the other transformed samples. For the
second method, a single-bit transform computation is provided
to generate linearly related single-bit transformed samples

that may be added directly without an RSS type computation. These two methods will now be discussed with reference to Fig. 10.

For the first method an RSS (square-root-of-the-sum-of-the-squares) computation will be inserted in each path that maps time samples t_0-t_3 into transformed samples f_0-f_3. For example, each of the two components of the t_0 complex sample would usually be multiplied by a related complex constant $f(t_0, f_0)$ and added into the related complex output bins f_0. For the instant feature of the present invention, the two complex products would be combined with an RSS computation into a single magnitude product and added to other magnitude products in a single f_0 bin (not a pair of complex f_0 bins). Alternately, the RSS computation before summation can be replaced with other intermediate computations, where for example a simple sum-of-the-squares computation (without a square root computation) could be used to generate sum-of-the-squares or magnitude-squared outputs instead of RSS outputs. Therefore, because different transformed samples are added together in magnitude form, phase variations between input samples t_0-t_3 do not degrade precision of the output filtered signals. This feature of the present invention may be characterized as a magnitude-of-the-products calculation before sum-of-the-products calculation, or magnitude-before-summation calculation, or sum-of-the-magnitude calculation, or squaring-before-summing in place of the prior art sum-of-the-products calculation, or magnitude-after-summation calculation, or sum-of-the-complex-product calculation, or summing-before (or without) squaring respectively.

RSS or vector sum computations are well known in the art. An exact solution involves squaring the two components, then adding the squares, then taking the square root of the sum. A simplified approximate solution involves taking the absolute magnitude such as by changing any negative numbers to positive

numbers, determining which is the larger of the two numbers, then adding the larger to one-fourth of the smaller of the numbers; wherein the sum thereof represents an approximation of the RSS.

5   For the second method, a single-bit arrangement is provided, where input samples are single-bit and products are single-bit in accordance with the disclosure herein and in the referenced patent applications. Because single-bit products have a linear relationship and may be summed directly

10   without an RSS computation, the effects of phase variations over the input aperture are inherently improved.

    In view of the above an incremental, or single-bit, etc Fourier transform processor such as an FFT or DFT processor or other filter arrangement can provide significant improvements

15   over conventional whole-number processors. A single-bit processor arrangement will now be discussed with reference to Fig 10E. Front-end 1009provides an analog time-domain signal 1012 to incremental multiplier 1014 to be incrementally multiplied with an incremental reference single-bit signal 1013 from

20   reference memory 1010 using incremental multiplier 1014. Incremental input signal 1012may be derived with a comparitor circuit such as a μA710 comparitor in front-end 1009. Reference memory 1010stores the most significant bit or sign bit of the sine and cosine functions. Multiplier 1014can be

25   an exclusive-OR circuit for generating single-bit output signal 1015 in response to single-bit input signal 1012and single-bit reference signal 1013. Summer 1017 adds incremental product 1015 such as by incrementing a counter, wherein the number to be conditionally incremented is stored in memory 1018

30   and recirculated to summer 1017 to be incremented or to be not incremented in response to product signal 1015. This arrangement is similar to the correlator arrangement shown in Fig 6D herein; where

reference memory 1010, front-end 1009, incremental multiplier 1014,

incremental summer 1017, and output memory 1018 of Fig $10E$
may correspond to P-ROM reference
memory 625, front-end element 623 and 624, incremental
multiplier 626, incremental summer 613, and output memory 614

5 respectively as shown in Fig 6D.
Implementation of the arrangement shown in Fig 6D
in the form of a Fourier transform
processor in accordance with the present invention has been
discussed above such as by making minor changes to the logic

10 associated with J-counter 617 and L-counter 618 and by entering
the proper constants into P-ROM 625.

In one embodiment, the real and imaginary outputs may be
preserved separately. In another embodiment, the real and
imaginary outputs may be combined to form a vector sum or

15 magnitude frequency related parameter for each output frequency
value. In the former arrangement, each one of the two complex
quadrature signals for each frequency value can be preserved
separately, wherein input signal samples can be incrementally
multiplied by incremental reference parameters and used to

20 update the output complex parameters. In a vector magnitude
embodiment, both the real incremental product and the
imaginary incremental product can be used to update the same
output frequency sample as a magnitude output frequency sample,
wherein a complex input sample can be incrementally multiplied

25 by each of two referenced samples and the two related
incremental products can be added to the same frequency-related
output signal sample.

In view of the above, the simple, efficient, low-cost
implementation of a Fourier transform magnitude calculation is

30 provided that reduces sensitivity to error mechanisms such as
phase variations, phase jitter, noise, and other such effects.

This single-bit output signal processing feature of
the present invention may be characterized as linear signal
summation in contrast to vector signal summation or quadrature
signal summation as implemented in prior art systems. In
5   simple form, if a prior art signal processor were reduced in
resolution to provide processing of single-bit signals and if
output quadrature signals were added linearly rather than
vectorially, then the improvements of the instant feature of
the present invention is being practiced. Although this
10   inventive feature represents a significant simplification over
prior art signal processors in addition to the reduction in
error mechanisms inherent in prior art signal processors,
prior art signal processors are still implemented with the
more expensive and more error prone arrangements, wherein the
15   simplification provided by this feature of the present
invention is certainly not obvious to prior art designers.

Processor Features and Applications

A signal processing or filtering arrangement; herein called the Microwave Filtering Receiver (MFR) system for simplicity of discussion, is disclosed. The MFR system can use the Ultra-fast Fourier Transform (UFT) processor, disclosed in application S/N 754,660; which is pertinent to the present disclosure and which is herein incorporated by reference. Although the present disclosure is presented in the form of a microwave system, this microwave system disclosure is intended to exemplify other filtering systems including underwater acoustic, telephone communication, memory, and other systems. Relative to the pertinence of application S/N 754,660; an illustrative embodiment disclosed therein is in the form of a single-bit processor, which is consistent with many teachings herein. Therefore, the teachings therein and the teachings herein may be used together in various combinations that can now be practiced by one skilled in the art from the teachings therein and the teachings herein.

Microwave Filter System

The Microwave Filter Receiver (MFR) system represents an important advance in microwave receivers for radar, communication, electronic warfare and other such systems. Now, a technology is available that can reduce antenna and microwave transmitter and receiver requirements, utilize signals so small that they are virtually non-existant, and replace large antennas and discrete RF circuitry with digital large scale integration (LSI) circuitry. The MFR system is believed to characterize the next generation of microwave systems. In one embodiment, the MFR may be implemented with the UFT processor described in application S/N 754,660. Other implementations thereof may also be used.

The UFT processor has been disclosed in the form of a Fourier transform processor for convenience of illustration. However, the teachings relative thereto may be used to implement other types of processors such as correlator, convolver, DFT, FIR, and other filter processors; various sum of the product processors; and processors performing other processing functions such as known in the DDA art.

Various features and applications of the UFT processor will now be described for one embodiment of the UFT processor consistent with the disclosures in application S/N 754,660 and the disclosures herein.

The MFR technology is based on a new generation ultra-fast very low cost array processor for signal processing applications. It provides several orders-of-magnitude (hundreds of times) improvement over conventional array processors. The UFT processor provides such a significant improvement, new generations of systems can be configured to take proper advantage of this capability. These new generation systems cover the range of radar, communications, electronic warfare, and sonar systems and extend to applications never before able to use a digital array processor.

Salient features of the UFT processor includes the ability to operate hundreds of times faster then conventional (high input resolution) array processors, to be produced for less then 1% of the cost of conventional array processors for comperable tasks, and to provide levels of signal enhancement and filtering never before possible. These characteristics are derived from a new and novel systems concept that takes advantage of proven but unexploited concepts. In addition, a new and novel processor architecture has been configured to take advantage of these concepts to achieve capabilities never before available.

The UFT processor is inherently faster than conventional
high speed processors. For example, the UFT processor can
process over one billion (10^9) samples per second compared
to conventional high speed processors which are limited to
about one million (10^6) samples per second. Further, the UFT
processor is inherently lower in cost then conventional high
speed processors. For example, the UFT processor can be
implemented in a slower speed configuration comparable to the
speed of a conventional high speed processor for less then 1%
of the cost of that conventional high speed processor.

Even if other processors could be configured to be as
fast as the UFT processor but using conventional methods, such
other processors would still not be feasible. For example,
conventional methods cost hundreds of times more than with the
UFT processor, possibly costing one million dollars for a
conventional processor compared to $5,000 for a VLSI implemented
UFT processor of the same throughput. Further, microwave "front
end" converters that are necessary for operation are beyond
the state-of-the-art for conventional processors, but are
implicit with the UFT processor technology. Also, conventional
processors cannot implement coherent processing after transformation
(CAT^{TM}), which is an important feature of the UFT processor
and related systems.

Classically, introduction of a new technology has
spawned new generations of systems. The UFT processor signi-
ficantly expands the technology in digital array processing,
providing capabilities that have never been utilized. Configuring
of new generation systems around the UFT processor yields
capabilities that far exceed conventional systems. For
example, advantages that can be obtained with new generation
microwave-type systems implemented with the UFT processor
include

    (a) lower power transmitters,

    (b) smaller size antennas,

    (c) greater security and tolerance,

    (d) greater range,

    (e) greater precision, and

(f) lower cost.

Further, new and unique capabilities of the UFT processor
have not been fully applied but are expected to yield further
advantages in new generation systems.

5   Therefore, the UFT processor technology provides a major
advance in the state-of-the art and will yield new generation
systems having high speed and low cost signals processing
capability.

The UFT processor has excellent features that are not available with other technologies and that are applicable to many different types of systems. Exemplary systems applications will now be discussed.

Microwave communication systems and radar systems transmit microwave signals in the hundred to thousand megahertz range. Microwave communications include RF communication, satellite communication, and a wide range of other communication. Radar includes search, attack, and doppler radar. Important considerations such as signal-to-noise-ratio (SNR) (discussed hereinafter) affects range, antenna size, power, security, and other considerations and can be enhanced with the UFT processor. Other UFT processor features such as very narrow bandwidth (discussed hereinafter) and frequency domain correlation can also enhance microwave communication and radar systems.

Active microwave systems radiate microwave energy that can be detected and evaluated by an undesired recipient. For example, radar signals can be analyzed for covert purposes, and in general microwave signals can be analyzed to defeat or misuse the system. The UFT processor has several features that significantly enhance the security of microwave systems. Extremely low level signals can be used for security, where the UFT processor has the capability to significantly enhance these signals (discussed hereinafter). Extremely narrow bandwidth can be used for security, where the UFT processor has the capability to detect and process such narrow bandwidth signals (discussed hereinafter). Therefore, the UFT processor can be used to enhance the security of microwave systems.

Microwave systems such as radar and communication systems are sensitive to signal amplitude and noise. Therefore, signal degradation such as due to high noise environments, long range, and jamming can adversely affect a microwave system. A high tolerance microwave system can be configured with the UFT processor which has the capability to significantly enhance signals, yielding reduced noise and extended range (discussed hereinafter). This signal enhancement capability, in combination

with signature discrimination such as by correlation, can circumvent jamming. Therefore, the UFT processor can be used to enhance tolerance of microwave systems.

Electronic Warfare (EW) systems monitor microwave signals such as radar signals to generate countermeasures. These signals are often low level signals having short duration pulses and uncertain characteristics. The ability of the UFT processor to operate at ultra-high speed, to enhance SNR_j and to integrate for long periods of time facilitates improved EW systems.

A doppler radar navigation system for aircraft operates by transmitting a radar signal to the ground and measuring the change in frequency of the return signal. Change in frequency is proportional to velocity, permitting determination of instantaneous aircraft velocity. Velocity information is then used to compute aircraft position. The features of the UFT processor discussed above for radar and microwave systems are applicable to a doppler radar navigation system. Further, the very narrow bandwidth capability of the UFT processor permits accurate frequency discrimination, which is essential to a doppler system. Secure doppler navigation is an important industry objective. The features discussed above for secure microwave systems are also applicable to a secure doppler navigation system. Therefore the UFT processor can be used to enhance doppler navigation systems and can facilitate new generation high accuracy secure doppler navigation systems.

An active sonar system transmits acoustic signals to detect and characterize underwater objects such as submarines and mines. These signals may approach a megahertz for shorter range systems. Sonar echos are received with a hydrophone array and processed with a digital array processor. Complex processors are used for beamforming and signature analysis. Therefore, conventional systems are very expensive and limited in capability. The UFT processor can provide such beamforming and signature analysis at high speed for high frequency signals monitored with a large array, thereby providing greater precision and

capability then with conventional processors. Further, the small
size and efficient use of power enhances applications such as
dip sonar and small vehicular systems which are severly limited
in space and power. Also, the advantages discussed above for

5   microwave and radar systems are   applicable for sonar systems.

A sonar surveillance system is typically a passive system
that "listens" for sounds such as from a submarine. These systems
typically process long range low frequency signals having
extremely low signal levels in very high noise levels. The

10   advantages discussed above for active sonar systems and EW
systems are applicable to sonar surveillance systems; particularly
SNR enhancement, array processing, and signature analysis.

Advantages described herein are based upon MFR system
and UFT processor innovations. These innovations will now be

15   briefly discussed.

The MFR system is now feasible based upon a group of
important characteristics derived with the UFT processor.
UFT processor characteristics include extremely high performance;
100 to 1,000 times that of conventional digital filter

20   processors; low cost; a microwave "front end" interface; and
a virtually unlimited aperture that overcomes the severly
limited aperture of conventional digital filter processor;
which will be discussed below.

High speed is provided at relatively low cost. The highest

25   speed conventional filter processors perform filter operations
at a rate of one operation each 0.5 microseconds. The UFT
processor performs a complete transform which includes thousands
of filter operations each 0.1 microseconds, for a performance
advantage of thousands of times over conventional filter

30   processors.

Low cost is provided, where a price/performance ratio of
100 to 1,000 times better than the most competitive filter
processors can be achieved. This advantage is derived from
a unique processor architecture, providing extremely high

35   performance with a minimum of circuitry.

Processing of samples at microwave frequencies necessarily requires an input interface that generates samples at microwave frequencies. Conventional analog to digital (A/D) converters cannot operate at microwave frequencies. Therefore, the UFT processor could not be interfaced to an antenna using conventional methods. A unique input interface has been configured that converts input microwave signals to a form required by the UFT processor consistent with the microwave sampling rate. This input interface solves a major problem associated with microwave signals processing.

Processing of samples at microwave frequencies generates output samples at microwave frequencies. This output sample frequency exceeds the capability of other components of conventional systems. Because the MFR system uses coherent integration after transformation to enhance SNR, an ultra-high speed integrator is used to integrate the output samples for SNR enhancement and for data compression. This arrangement receives low SNR samples at an ultra-high rate and generates high SNR samples at a reasonably low rate.

A virtually unlimited aperture is provided compared to the severly limited aperture of conventional filter processors. SNR enhancement is a function of the aperture, where SNR enhancement is generally considered to be proportional to the square root of the number of samples. Therefore, a conventional FFT processor with a 1,000 point FFT obtains an SNR enhancement of 33 times while the UFT processor with a virtually unlimited aperture has a virtually unlimited SNR enhancement. The virtually unlimited aperture of the UFT processor is derived from a unique coherent-integration after transformation (CAT^{TM}) capability not available with conventional filter processors.

The UFT processor has a unique coherent-integration after transformation (CAT^{TM}) capability, not available with conventional processors. Conventional processors require an amount of hardware or time that is exponentially related to the aperture size, while the UFT processor uses the same hardware on a time shared basis to expand the aperture. Therefore, the UFT processor eliminates the intolerable hardware or time constraints for

large apertures.

In an FFT processor, the number of filter operations (called "butterflies") is $(n/2)\ln(n)$, where n is the number of samples in the aperture. For a conventional FFT processor; a 1,024 point FFT requires 5,120 "butterflies" and an 8,129 point FFT requires 53,248 "butterflies". Therefore, large apertures require enormous amounts of hardware or time for conventional FFT processors.

The UFT processor provides a very large aperture with CAT^{TM}. For example, the UFT processor can implement a 1,024 point FFT; solve the FFT one thousand times in rapid succession; and integrate ten thousand solutions together, sample by corresponding sample. This capability provides a one million point aperture (1,024 point FFT by 1,000 integrations) for a one thousand times SNR enhancement. Such an enhancement is extremely expensive with conventional antennas and receivers and virtually impossible with conventional FFT processors. For example, a one million point FFT would require about ten million "butterfiles" with a conventional FFT processor, exceeding practical hardware and time considerations.

The UFT processor achieves practical CAT^{TM} not available with conventional FFT processors. Conventional FFT processors require a root-sum-square (RSS) operation on complex **FFT** components. This RSS effectively rectifies the noise, where CAT^{TM} processing in conventional systems will not **fully enhance** SNR. The UFT processor has a unique CAT^{TM} implementation, where SNR is/enhancement for the CAT^{TM} processing.
fully

The UFT processor includes many salient features that facilitates the systems advantages discussed above. These features include the following.

(a) High sample rate and throughput.

(b) Signal-to-noise-ratio enhancement.

(c) Wide aperture.

(d) Narrow bandwidth.

The combination of all of these features yields a truely important advance in the state-of-the-art yielding a profound impact on signal processing systems.

Sample rate and throughput will now be discussed. Sample rate and throughput are very important parameters in signal processing systems. Throughput or computational speed limits the true sample rate because the processor must be able to process the samples at the sample rate for effective operation. Sample rate, computational speed, and throughput will be used interchangeable herein.

Sample rate limits the highest frequencies that can be processed and affects SNR enhancement (discussed hereinafter) and other important parameters. Conventional high speed FFT processors have sample rates of about one-MHz, far too slow for processing microwave signals and severly limiting other capabilities. The UFT processor can easily process 400 MHz sample rates and several thousand MHz appears feasible. Therefore, the UFT processor can digitallly process microwave signals, which is not possible with other processors.

This ability of the UFT processor to operate hundreds and possibly thousands of times faster then conventional high speed processors provides important advantages including direct processing of microwave signals, detecting very high speed signals, and greater SNR enhancement.

An indication of the UFT processor speed is provided with the following example. A 512-point FFT computation requires over 9,000 multiplications in addition to other operations. Execution of this FFT computation at a 10-MHz rate, consistent with the

5   UFT processor capabilities, provides a rate of 90×10^9 (90 billion) multiplications per second. This is 100,000 times faster then a general purpose digital computer and 10,000 times faster than a conventional high speed array processor. Nevertheless, the UFT processor can be produced at lower cost

10   then either the general purpose computer or the array processor.

Signal to noise ratio (SNR) will now be discussed.

SNR is a major limitation on microwave systems. The ability to detect small signals and the accuracy of analyzing signals islimited by the SNR. Although signals can be amplified,

15   superimposed noise is also amplified. Therefore, SNR is a limiting characteristic for microwave system receivers. Large antennas and sophisticated receivers are conventionally used to enhance SNR; resulting in large, expensive mechanical and analog devices. Further, high power transmitters are convention-

20   ally used to increase signal strength and the attendant SNR.

Filters are a well known method for enhancing SNR. Analog filters and conventional digital filters are severely limited in enhancement ability. The MFR system uses a new filtering technology that has virtually unlimited SNR enhancement.

25   Therefore, the MFR system can process signals lost in the noise and can reduce requirements for large antennas, sophisticated receivers and high power transmitters.

Analog filters are conventionally used to enhance SNR. Analog filters are typically used to narrow the frequency

30   band and therefore to reduce noise that is outside the band. Unfortunately, analog filters are very limited relative to noise occuring inside the band. Therefore, the limited capability of analog filters has required use of high power transmitters, large antennas, and sophisticated receivers and

35   has limited the ultimate level of useable signal.

Conventional digital filters are sometimes used to enhance SNR. Because of the relatively high cost, low speed, and limited aperture of conventional digital filters; only the most trivial SNR enhancement is possible. For example, conventional digital filters are hundreds of times too slow to directly sample microwave frequencies and, for any practical price, have an aperture that is so narrow that the objectives of the MFR system would be considered to be impossible.

The MFR system significantly reduces antenna requirements. Antennas provide signal gain by "accumulating" signals over the area of the antenna. The larger the antenna, the greater the area and the greater the signal gain. With the MFR system, gain and SNR enhancement is obtained through digital filtering. Therefore, digital LSI circuitry can be traded off against antenna size to optimize the overall system. Because of the low cost, small size, high reliability, and flexiblity of digital LSI circuitry; the MFR system reduces antenna size and the problems associated with large mechanical devices.

The MFR system significantly reduces receiver requirements. Receivers provide low noise signal amplification and frequency selection with microwave, FR, and analog circuitry With the MFR system, gain and SNR enhancement and frequency selection is obtained through digital filtering. Therefore, digital LSI circuitry can be traded-off against microwave, RF, and analog circuitry to optimize the overall system.

Although much of conventional receiver circuitry is miniaturized; devices such as waveguide, stripline, and discrete circuit components prevents the level of integration that is obtained with digital LSI circuitry. Therefore, the MFR system will significantly enhance microwave receivers.

The MFR system significantly reduces transmitter requirements Transmitter power is determined by the required receiver SNR. For example, long distance communication and radar systems require high power transmitters in order to provide an acceptable SNR at the receiving antenna. With the MFR system, SNR is enhanced through digital filtering. Although much of conventional transmitter circuitry is miniarized; devices such as wave guide,

stripline, discrete circuit components and power devices
prevent the level of integration that is obtained with digital
LSI circuitry. Therefore, digital LSI circuitry can be
traded-off against transmiter power to optimize the overall
system.

SNR is a critical parameter in signal processing systems
such as radar, communications, and sonar systems. SNR limits
the ability to perform. For example, SNR determines range,
precision, errors, and other critical parameters. Therefore,
such systems are designed to maximize SNR.

SNR is enhanced as a function of the square root of the
number of samples that can be coherently integrated. Some
enhancement is obtained from non-coherent integration when
SNR is high (large signals in low noise levels). Unfortunately,
SNR enhancement is most important when SNR is low (small signals in
high noise levels). Therefore, non-coherent integration has
reduced effectiveness when needed most, in very low
SNR environments.

Conventional signals processors are severly limited in
sample rate and sample quantity for coherent integration.
For example, a conventioanl high speed signals processor can
operate at one MHz sample rate for a 1,024 sample transform
to achieve an SNR enhancement of 32-times ($\sqrt{1,024}$). Additional
integration is typically noncoherent and therefore has reduced
value in low SNR conditions where SNR enhancement is most
important.

The UFT processor has a virtually unlimited SNR enhancement
capability. Sample rates can be extremely high; possibly
exceeding 1,000 MHz. Apertures can be extremely long, possibly
exceeding one-second. SNR enhancement is related to sample
rate and aperture size. Therefore, the UFT processor can
provide extensive SNR enhancement to pull virtually non-existant
signals out of the noise in which they are buried. This
capability permits reduced transmitter power, antenna size,
system range, and error rates and permits enhanced precision
over conventional systems.

The aperture considerations will now be discussed. The aperture in a signal processing system affects the SNR enhancement, the bandwidth, and other important parameters. The aperture is related to the number of samples received and processed. Conventional FFT processors can use an aperture of about 1,000 points for a practical transform. Non-coherent integration of several transforms can provide an increase in aperture, but with reduced effectiveness. The UFT has a virtually unlimited aperture based upon an extremly high sample rate (discussed above) and coherent integration after transformation (CAT^{TM}) capability. The UFT processor can achieve apertures of one billion samples based upon microwave sample rates and CAT^{TM} capability, which is thousands of times better then with conventional high speed processor. Because important parameters such as SNR enhancement and bandwidth are related to the aperture, the UFT processor can provide state of the art capabilities for signal enhancement and frequency discrimination.

Bandwidth considerations will now be discussed. Array procesor bandwidth is a function of the aperture size. For example, a one-ms aperture yields a one-KHz bandwidth and a one-second aperture yields a one-cycle bandwidth. A very important feature of signal processing systems is the ability to discriminate between different frequencies. Because of the UFT processor ability to implement large apertures (discussed above) it has exceptional frequency discrimination capabilities.

The MFR system is described using the UFT processor. Although Fourier transformation is an important form of digital filtering, the MFR and the UFT processor are not limited to Fourier processing. The UFT processor represents a general purpose implementation of sum-of-the-products processing, where most filtering algorithms of interest are sum of the product algorithms. The UFT processor was configured in the form of a Fourier transform processor merely for the purpose of a benchmark comparison with conventional FFT processors. Therefore, the MFR system and the UFT processor represeat general purpose ultra-fast microwave processing capability.

The MFR system uses conventional circuits to provide revolutionary capabilty. Many innovations were required to facilitate the MFR system, which now yields a way to significantly reduce transmitter, antenna, and receiver requirements with

5   digital LSI circuitry. The potential of reducing a large antenna by ten feet using a 1-inch integrated circuit and the potential of reducing a powerful transmitter by kilowatts using a 10 watt integrated circuit are predicted. Also, the use of signals that are lost in the noise and previously considered

10   to be too small to receive can now be accomodated.

The maturing of the microwave technology will be characterized by ultra-high speed digital processors on LSI circuits replacing large antennas, powerful transmitters, and ultra-sensitive receivers. The MFR system is the forerunner of this new

15   generation of microwave systems.

In Closing

The features of the present invention have been discussed in detail above with reference to Figs 1-9. In closing, some of the important features of the present invention will be
5 briefly discussed.

The improved digital filter of the present invention incorporates many important features that provide high speed, high accuracy, low complexity, and low cost with unique implementations and algorithms. A digital correlator
10 and a digital compositor are used to exemplify a generalized digital filtering implementation. Processing of low resolution input information to generate high resolution output information enhances characteristics of a digital filter. Processing of input
15 information in real-time reduces hardware complexity and improves operational capability.

Digital filtering algorithms are provided for processing low resolution input information to generate high resolution output information. Processing of low resolution input infor-
20 mation simplifies circuitry and increases processing speed. Updating of high resolution output information is accomplished by low resolution updating of high resolution output information in response to low resolution processed information.

Single-bit input information provides the limiting
25 case of low resolution input information, where single-bit information is simple to acquire and simple to process. Single-bit information may be considered to be a sign-bit signal, wherein the sign-bit may be considered to be the most-significant-bit of a digital word and wherein the sign-bit
30 may be used as the single-bit resolution word. Such a sign-bit signal for a single-bit resolution word may be converted to digital form merely by detecting the positive or negative polarity of an input analog signal, wherein a polarity detector such as a comparitor or a Schmidt trigger may be considered to
35 be a single-bit analog-to-digital converter.

A single-bit computation is provided as the limiting case of low resolution input information for updating high resolution output information. Single-bit computations may be implemented with simple circuitry and may be performed at

5   high speed. For example, a single-bit multiplication operation may be performed by comparing sign-bits of the input signals to determine the sign-bit of the product; wherein multiplication of similar sign-bits, either both positive or both negative, yields a positive product sign-bit and multiplication of

10 different sign-bits, a positive and a negative sign-bit, yields a negative product sign-bit. Single-bit or incremental multiplication may be performed with an exclusive-OR circuit, a coincidence circuit, or other single-bit comparison circuits to yield a single-bit product signal. Similarly, incremental

15 addition can be implemented with simple circuits and provides high speed operations. Incremental addition may be performed with a simple counter arrangement and may be used to update high resolution sums in response to low resolution or incremental resolution operations. Incremental addition may be performed

20 by either incrementing or not-incrementing the sum or by either incrementing or decrementing the sum in response to a binary state of an incremental number.

Real-time digital filtering provides for processing input information as it becomes available with reduced dependence

25 upon buffering or storing of input information. A single channel digital filter may sample an input signal and may update a plurality of samples of an output signal in response to each input signal sample as the input signal samples are acquired, thereby eliminating the need to store or buffer input signal

30 samples. Updating of output information in response to an input signal sample may involve the partial updating of each of a plurality of output samples in response to a single input

sample. For an example of a correlation digital filter, each trace signal sample may contribute to the magnitude of a plurality of output signal samples, wherein a trace signal sample may be used to update a plurality of output signal

5   samples. Similarly, each output signal sample may have a magnitude related to the magnitude of a plurality of trace signal samples and therefore may be updated in response to each of a plurality of trace signal samples, all of which contribute to the magnitude of the particular output signal sample. Therefore,

10 a real-time correlation arrangement may provide for updating of a plurality of output signal samples in response to each trace signal sample as acquired.

A multi-channel digital filter arrangement may be implemented to update output signal samples with a plurality of

15 sequential spacial-domain samples. Input samples from each of a plurality of spacial-domain channels may be acquired and processed for each sequential sample period, wherein processing involves updating of output information in response to spacial-domain samples across an array on a channel-by-channel basis as the

20 sampling progresses in the temporal-domain on a sample-by-sample basis. In a simple embodiment wherein each channel is maintained separate and the plurality of channels do not interact, each channel may be sampled for a particular sample interval and each channel sample may be used to update output signal

25 samples related to that particular channel without interacting with other channels. In alternate embodiments wherein the output signal samples are updated by samples from each of a plurality of input channels, the spacial-domain input samples across the array may be processed either together or separately to update

30 the same output information having interaction therebetween.

Various digital filtering techniques may be combined
to provide a plurality of interacting digital filter arrange-
ments. This capability may be exemplified by the combination
of a correlator filter and a compositor filter. Compositing
may be performed in the time-domain or in the frequency-domain

5 and correlation may be performed in the time-domain or in the
frequency-domain. Various combinations of compositing and
correlation may be provided including time-domain compositing
and time-domain correlation, frequency-domain compositing and
frequency-domain correlation, time-domain compositing and

10 frequency-domain correlation, and frequency-domain compositing
and time-domain correlation. Further, the arrangement may
include either compositing-before-correlation or compositing-
after-correlation capabilities. Therefore, an arrangement may
be provided having time-domain compositing before time-domain

15 correlation, frequency-domain compositing before frequency-domain
correlation, time-domain compositing before frequency-domain
correlation, or frequency-domain compositing before time-domain
correlation. Alternately, the arrangement may provide time-domain
correlation before time-domain compositing, time-domain correla-

20 tion before frequency-domain compositing, frequency-domain correla-
before frequency-domain compositing, and frequency-domain corre-
lation before time-domain compositing. Therefore, alternate
computations of compositing-before-correlation and compositing-
after-correlation may be provided with either frequency-domain or

25 time-domain correlation and with either frequency-domain or time-
domain compositing.

A plurality of correlator channels may be provided for
separation of selected signal components from an input signal
or from a plurality of input signals. In one embodiment, a

30 single input signal may be composited over a plurality of ensembles
to provide a composited input signal, wherein the composited
input signal may be correlated with a plurality of different
correlator channels, and wherein each correlator channel

may have a different correlation pilot signal for separating a different signal component from the composited signal with each correlator channel. In another embodiment, a plurality of correlator channels may process a single input

5 signal wherein each of the correlator channels is responsive to a different pilot signal for separating different signal components from the input signal, wherein the output signals from each of the correlator channels may be composited together. In still another embodiment, a plurality of correlator channels

10 may process an input signal with a different pilot signal for each of the correlator channels to separate different signal components from the single input signal without compositing the output signals theretogether. In yet an alternate embodiment, a plurality of input signals may each be processed with a

15 corresponding correlator channel for outputting independent and separate correlator output signals. In yet another embodiment, a plurality of input signals may each be processed with a related correlator channel to generate a correlated output signal for each channel, wherein the plurality of

20 correlated output signals from the plurality of channels may be composited together to provide an output composited signal related to the plurality of correlated input signals. In still yet another embodiment, a plurality of input signals may each be processed with a separate compositor to provide a

25 plurality of composited input signals, wherein each composited input signal may be processed with a related correlator to generate a correlated and composited output signal for each of a plurality of compositor and correlator channels and wherein the plurality of output signals may be maintained separately

30 therebetween or may be composited theretogether in a composite-before-correlation and a composite-after-correlation combined arrangement.

A plurality of correlator channels may be provided for separation of signal components with either a different pilot signal for each correlator channel or the same pilot signal for the plurality of correlator channels. Similarly, each of the correlator channels may process the same input signal or each of the correlator channels may process different input signals in response to the pilot signal. Various combinations of these capabilities may provide special advantages. In one arrangement, a plurality of correlator channels may each process a related input signal different from the other input signals to the other channels in response to a pilot signal that is different from the pilot signals of the other correlator channels. In another embodiment, a plurality of correlators may each process the same input signal in response to different pilot signals wherein the input signal for each of the plurality of correlator channels is the same and wherein the pilot signal for each of the plurality of correlators is different therebetween. In yet another embodiment, a plurality of correlator channels may each process a related input signal that is different from the input signals for the other correlator channels in response to the same pilot signal, wherein each of the plurality of correlator channels may have an input signal that is different from the input signals to the other correlator channels and may have a pilot signal that is the same as the other pilot signals for the other correlator channels. In still another embodiment, a plurality of correlator channels may each process the same input signal in response to the same pilot signal, wherein the input signal may be the same for each of the plurality of correlator channels and wherein the pilot signal may be the same for each of the plurality of correlator channels.

A correlator arrangement may have particular
advantages by combining the correlation and compositing
operations, wherein the compositing operation may be implicit
in the correlation operation for compositing-after-correlation.

5   A correlator may be implemented with a sum-of-the-products
algorithm providing a sum-of-the-products computation for
each of a plurality of correlations and may also provide an
implicit compositing-after-correlation capability. In one
embodiment, a plurality of trace signals may be correlated with

10 the same pilot signal and may be composited-after-correlation
by summing the products theretogether between different
correlated trace signals. In another embodiment, a plurality
of trace signals generated together or generated having over-
lapping therebetween may each be correlated and wherein the

15 products of each correlation may be summed together for
compositing-after-correlation between a plurality of channels.
Similarly, the various alternate embodiments discussed above
for a plurality of correlator channels may be composited
theretogether by summation together of the products generated

20 by each of a plurality of channels.

An iterative correlation algorithm is provided for
iterating through various loops as the correlation computation
progresses. A real-time correlation algorithm may have a
high speed inner iterative loop for updating a plurality of

25 output samples in response to a single trace signal sample
and a plurality of pilot signal samples and may have a lower
speed outer iterative loop for sequencing through each of a
plurality of trace signal samples, wherein each of the plurality
of trace signal samples accessed with the outer loop may be

30 processed with the plurality of inner loop iterations mentioned
above. Further, a middle iterative loop may be provided for
sequencing through each of a plurality of trace signal channels,

wherein each sample from each of the plurality of channels
may be processed with the high speed inner loop and wherein
the plurality of channels accessed with the middle loop may
be provided in response to each sequential time interval
5   sample associated with an outer loop iteration. Such a
multiple iterative loop arrangement may be implemented in a
software embodiment with a stored program computer such as
with multi-level indexing operations and may be provided in a
special purpose hardwired logical arrangement under control of
10   a plurality of counters.

A compositing-after-correlation algorithm is provided
wherein the update of output signal samples are the same for
each of a plurality of different trace signal correlations,
thereby permitting correlations to be continued with the
15   computational updates being compatible for each of a plurality
of trace signals. Therefore, correlation may be provided for
a plurality of trace signals all updating the same output
signal samples, thereby providing compositing-after-correlation
capability. Compositing-after-correlation is provided by
20   compositing together updates from a plurality of traces,
wherein the updates are compatible independent of which of a
plurality of signals is being correlated. This capability may
be extended to encompass simultaneous correlation of each of
a plurality of trace signals and updating of a common output
25   signal in response to each correlation operation for compositing
a plurality of simultaneously correlated or sequentially
correlated trace signals together.

Generation of continuous pilot signals or generation
of overlapping pilot signals in a geophysical embodiment may
eliminate unnecessary time delays such as associated with the
prior art listening period between completion of a first
5 ensonifying signal and initiation of the next subsequent
ensonifying signal. Elimination of listening periods may be
provided by generating sequential or overlapping ensonifying
signals having different signatures therebetween and being
separable therebetween through correlation. Such an arrange-
10 ment may involve implementation of a plurality of correlator
channels, each channel having a different pilot signal for
correlating with each of the signatures associated with the
different ensonifying signals.

Reduction of digital noise, computational noise, and
15 correlation sidelobes may be accomplished by compositing
together a plurality of correlated signals, wherein each of
the plurality of correlated signals may be generated in response
to a different pilot signal signature. Each correlated signal
may be generated in response to a different pilot signal
20 signature and may have different sidelobes and other effects
related to undesirable signal portions, wherein the compositing-
after-correlation of such correlated signals may provide for
reduction of the undesirable signal portions.

An embodiment is provided for monitoring a non-
25 repeatable type of ensonifying signal such as a dynamite blast
and correlating the received trace signals with the monitored
ensonifying signal. A plurality of correlated signals may be
composited therebetween in response to correlation with a pilot
signal derived by measuring the ensonifying signals; thereby
30 permitting compositing of signals after correlation related
to non-repeatable ensonifying signal sources such as dynamite
blasts.

The compositing-after-correlation feature of the
present invention provides important efficiencies of mech-
anization. For example, the usual requirement for a large
input memory for buffering uncorrelated trace signals may be
5 eliminated. Further, compositing-after-correlation may be
provided as being implicit in the correlation mechanization of
a preferred embodiment, where compositing capability may be
obtained without the need for special compositing devices.
For example, the correlation algorithm involves a sum-of-the-
10 products computation while compositing involves a sum computation,
where the sum of the products computation of the correlation
mechanization includes the summation computation associated
with compositing and therefore minimizes special compositing
computational logic. Still further, a significant amount of
15 time may be saved by compositing as part of a correlation
operation wherein the usual prior art requirement to composite
at a different time than the time to correlate is eliminated
by providing both compositing and correlation substantially
simultaneously.
20   A preferred embodiment of a compositor and correlator
uses counter control logic and incremental computational logic
for providing correlated output signal samples. A C-counter
is used to generate a sequence of control signals for
sequentially controlling various correlator operations. A
25 J-counter is preloaded with an initial address and controlled
to countdown through a sequence of pilot signal sample addresses.
A P-store provides pilot signal samples in response to addresses
from the J-counter. A trace signal is sampled and converted
to a single-bit signal form with a squaring amplifier and
30 flip-flop to be compared with the stored pilot signal sample
to determine correspondence therebetween. An exclusive-OR
circuit may be used to provide such comparison to determine

whether the single-bit trace and pilot signal samples are
the same or are different for generating an update signal
related to correspondence therebetween. A disable control
arrangement is provided to disable the update signal for
5   undesirable or blank update conditions outside of the range
of acceptable pilot signal samples. An L-counter is provided
to count trace signal samples for determining when the trace
signal has been completed and therefore when a correlation
operation has been completed. A K-counter is provided to
10 sequence through a set of output signal samples synchronous
with the sequencing through the set of pilot signal samples
under control of the J-counter. The K-counter may be preloaded
with a first output signal address and may be controlled to
increment through the set of output signal samples. An output
15 sample store is provided for storing output signal samples that
are updated under control of an enabled update signal. The
K-counter provides an address for accessing samples for updating
and for again storing updated samples into the Z-store. A
Z-counter is provided for receiving the sample for updating
20 from the Z-store, for providing an incremental update in
response to an enabled update signal, and for again storing the
updated signal in the proper location in the Z-store. A clear
control and a composite control may be provided for controlling
compositing-after-correlation. The clear control may be used
25 to clear the Z-store after a compositing and correlation
operation has been completed. A composite control may be
provided for determining the number of correlated trace signals
that are to be composited together and for discontinuing
compositing and correlation operations in response to the
30 completion thereof. Output signals may be provided for display
such as outputting of a CRT sync signal related to each output
signal update operation in response to each new trace signal

sample and in response to a CRT Z-axes control for modulating
CRT intensity to update output signal samples. The output
signals may be stored in the persistency characteristic of the
CRT as an electron beam is swept over the CRT face. In an
5 alternate display embodiment, digital samples from the Z-store
and the Z-store address may each be provided to a digital-to-analog
converter for controlling amplitude and displacement of a CRT
electron beam in response to the address and the intensity
samples for generating a plot of the correlation output signal
10 in response thereto. Alternately, the output of the Z-store
may be provided to an output device such as a magnetic tape
recorder, a plotter, a computer, or other output device.

Implementation of a real-time correlator algorithm
in a hardware embodiment or in a software embodiment may be
15 provided with on-the-fly computations. Detection of a sync
pulse may be used to initialize control logic and computational
parameters. A trace signal sample may be acquired and may be
processed with each of a plurality of pilot signal samples
for updating output signal samples. After completion of
20 processing each acquired trace signal sample with a plurality
of pilot signal samples the pilot sample iteration control
may be initialized, the next trace signal sample may be
acquired, and the newly acquired trace signal sample may then
be processed with a plurality of pilot signal samples. A
25 pair of iterative loops may be provided wherein a high speed
inner iterative loop may process a trace signal sample with a
plurality of pilot signal samples and an outer iterative loop may be
provided for acquiring each of a sequence of trace signal
samples for processing each with the plurality of pilot signal
30 samples with the inner iterative loop.

A multi-channel embodiment of the above described
iterative processing arrangement may be provided with a middle
iterative loop for sequencing through a plurality of channels
for a particular sample interval, wherein the inner iterative
5   loop processes each of the samples from the middle iterative
loop with a plurality of pilot signal samples. After each of
the plurality of channel signal samples for a particular time
interval sample has been processed with the plurality of pilot
signal samples, another sample time interval may be initiated
10   with the outer loop for selecting a new time interval for
iteratively processing the plurality of channel samples associated
with that time interval in the middle loop and for iteratively
processing each of the plurality of channel samples for the
particular interval with the plurality of pilot signal samples
15   in the inner iterative loop.

In accordance with the correlation algorithm of the
present invention, sequential states in the iterative process
may be unnecessary for updating output samples. A decoder
circuit or a computational decision may be provided to detect
20   necessary update operations for enabling and to detect un-
necessary update operations for disabling. Similarly, the
decoder logic or test operation permits skipping of unnecessary
update operations such as by branching around sequential
operations in hardware or in software or by preloading counters
25   with the appropriate initial parameter in response to the
last necessary parameter of a prior operation for the
purpose of reducing computational time associated with
unnecessary operations.

In accordance with a composite-after-correlation capability of the present invention, provision may be made for clearing the output sample memory contents for discontinuing compositing of prior correlated samples and provision may be
5   made for perserving the output sample memory contents through subsequent correlations in order to implement compositing-after-correlation operations.

A multi-channel correlator and compositor arrangement may be provided by duplicating a single correlator channel for
10 a plurality of times. Control logic may be common for the plurality of channels which may be synchronized for processing simultaneous information. Trace signals may be different for each of the plurality of channels or the same trace signal may be input to each of the plurality of channels. Similarly,
15 pilot signals such as from a P-store may be the same for each of the plurality of channels or may be different for each of the plurality of channels. In one embodiment, a different trace signal may be input to each of the plurality of correlator channels but the same pilot signal may be used for each of the
20 plurality of channels for processing the different trace signals. Alternately, a single trace signal may be common to each of a plurality of correlator channels but the pilot signal may be different for each of the plurality of correlator channels for correlating a single trace signal with a plurality of
25 pilot signals. Further, a different trace signal may be input to each of the plurality of correlator channels and a different pilot signal may be used for each of the plurality of correlator channels to correlate a pilot signal with a trace signal wherein the pilot signal and trace signal for each channel is different
30 than the pilot signal and trace signal for each other of the plurality of channels. In an output embodiment, the output signal update and storage arrangement may be different and

separate for each of the plurality of channels, wherein each channel may independently correlate and composite information without compositing with other channels. Alternately, the output signal storage and updating logic may be common to a

5   plurality of correlating channels for compositing together the output signals from each of the plurality of correlator channels.

A compositor control may be provided having a programmable counter for loading a desired number of composite operations, then being decremented by each actual composite

10   operation until counted down to zero as being indicative of completion of the programmed quantity of composite operations. Preloading of the programmable quantity of composite operations may be performed in response to a clear signal for clearing the output sample memory or may be performed in response to

15   other control signals. Completion of composite operations may be controlled with a signal from the compositor control indicative of completion of the last programmable operation or may be controlled from other sources. For example, an operator may monitor the composited information such as with

20   CRT or plotter output device for determining the quality of the output information, wherein the operator may initiate a control signal for discontinuing compositing operations when the output signal has acceptable quality. In an alternate embodiment, an adaptive control arrangement provides for

25   detecting completion of a desired number of composite operations. For example, in a high noise environment amplitude of the composited signals will build up at a slower rate than for a low noise environment and therefore a particular output signal amplitude and signal-to-noise ratio characteristic may require

30   more composites for a high noise environment than for a low noise environment. Because buildup of the output signals may be indicative of the noise level and may be indicative of the

quality of the output signal samples, a detector may be
provided in conjunction with the output update logic to
determine if the signal samples have built up to a desired
amplitude level for the correlation peak signals which may
5   be indicative of a desired quality of output signal samples.
Therefore, detection of signal peaks in the output signal
samples may be used to adaptively terminate correlation and
compositing operations.

The digital filtering arrangement of the present
10 invention may be used for a communication arrangement including
communication of digital information and communication of analog
information. A chirp modem arrangement is provided in accordance
with the present invention, wherein data to be communicated
modulates chirp signals for transmission over a data link and a
15 demodulator in the modem provides correlation operations for
separating communicated signals with demodulation through
correlation. Modulated signals may be communicated as a plurality
of overlapping signals having correlation separable characteristics
exemplified by chirp signals.

20   In one digital communication embodiment, a serial digital
word may modulate chirp signals in response to transitions between
data-bits. A chirp signal may be generated in response to each
positive transition and each negative transition, wherein chirp
signals generated in response to positive transitions may be the
25 same as chirp signals generated in response to negative
transitions or, alternately, chirp signals generated in response
to positive transitions may have a different signature than
chirp signals generated in response to negative transitions for
separation therebetween through correlation. A serial digital
30 signal provides a sequence of bits, wherein digital bit
responsive chirp signals may be generated in a sequence related
to the sequence of digital bits. The digital bit responsive
chirp signals may be multiplexed together for transmission over

a communication link, wherein a multiplexed signal may include
a plurality of overlapping chirp signals having a time relation-
ship or phase relationship that is related to a time sequence
of transitions of the digital data signal.

5   The multiplexed communication signal may be processed
in a receiving modem with a signature demodulator for correlating
the multiplexed signal with a related signature pilot signal
to provide correlation output peaks related to transitions of
the digital data signal. Electronic circuitry may be used to
10   shape the correlation peaks and to convert the shaped correla-
tion peaks into a digital data signal representative of the
transmitted information. In one of the above mentioned
embodiments which generates the same chirp signatures in response
to both positive and negative transitions of the digital data
15   signal; a single correlator may be provided in the demodulator
to demodulate the sequence of single signature chirp signals
representative of positive and negative transitions of the
communicated digital data signal. This positive and negative
transition related correlation output signal may be used to
20   reconstruct the digital data signal by toggling a toggle flip-
flop in response to each correlation peak signal. In the above
mentioned embodiment wherein a first signature chirp signal is
generated in response to a positive transition of the digital
data signal and a second signature chirp signal is generated in
25   response to a negative transition of the digital data signal, the
demodulator in the receiving modem may include a pair of
correlator channels wherein a first correlator channel operates
in response to a positive transition related pilot signal and
the second correlator channel operates in response to a negative
30   transition related pilot signal to generate correlation output
signals having peaks related to the positive transitions and the
negative transitions respectively of the communicated data signal.

The pair of correlation output signals may be processed to form digital pulses and may be used to reconstruct the communicated data signal by setting a flip-flop in response to positive transition related correlation output peak signals and resetting a

5   flip-flop in response to negative transition related correlation output peak signals.

A plurality of overlapping chirp signals may be generated with a plurality of chirp signal generators controlled by a distributor arrangement for distributing control signals

10 in sequence to a plurality of chirp generators. Each sequential transition of the data signal may be distributed to a next sequential chirp generator for generating the related chirp signal overlapping a chirp signal that is also being generated by previously activated chirp generators. The distributor may

15 be constructed in the form of a counter that is clocked in response to transitions of the digital data signal, wherein the incrementally changing counter state may be processed with a decoder to incrementally advance a control signal inbetween a plurality of output signal lines connected to chirp generators

20 to sequentially select each chirp generator in sequence. Each chirp generator may have a latching capability to latch the selecting signal for the condition that the selecting signal is advanced to select other chirp generators, wherein the latch memory preserves the selection of the chirp generator until

25 generation of the chirp signal has been completed. The output of each of the plurality of chirp generators may be multiplexed together such as by exciting different inputs to an electronic summing circuit or by exciting different excitation generators such as VIBROSEIS generators. For the electronic summing

30 embodiment, an electronic signal may be provided having the multiplexed combination of all of the input chirp signals for transmission with a single excitation generator such as a line driver or radio transmitter for a data link. For the embodiment

of exciting different VIBROSEIS generators, all chirp signals
may be multiplexed implicit in the excitation and transmission
wherein, for example, a plurality of seismic signals impressed
on the subsurface environment may be mixed or multiplexed
5   together as they propagate through the subsurface environment.
          One embodiment of a chirp generator uses analog
circuitry to generate a controlled chirp signal. An input latch
may be used to store an input selecting signal for the condition
that the input selecting signal has a shorter duration than the
10   chirp signal duration and therefore must be stored to preserve
the selecting condition for the duration of the chirp signal.
An analog integrator may be used to generate a ramp signal for
exciting a voltage control oscillator, wherein the voltage
controlled oscillator generates a controlled frequency in
15   response to the input analog signal which is a linear chirp
signal in response to an input ramp signal. The input signal
may be a linear ramp of a positive polarity or a negative polarity
for generating an up-chirp signal or a down-chirp signal respec-
tively with the voltage controlled oscillator. Alternately,
20   various analog function generators may be used in place of the
analog integrator to generate analog signals having functions
other than the linear ramp. For example, analog function
generators may generate exponential, logrythmic, and other
analog functions to excite the voltage controlled oscillator,
25   wherein the voltage controlled oscillator generates a chirp
signal having a frequency sweep related to an analog signal function.
A detector such as a Schmidt trigger may be used to detect the
end of the chirp signal such as by detecting a threshold of the
analog function signal for generating a reset signal to reset
30   the input latch and to reset the analog circuitry such as by
discharging capacitors.

An analog amplitude responsive chirp generator may
be implemented by adding amplitude modulation circuitry to a
digital or constant amplitude chirp generator. For example,
an output chirp signal having amplitude information may be

5   generated in response to a product of a constant amplitude
signal and an analog voltage, wherein the product may be
generated with an analog multiplier circuit in response to a
constant amplitude chirp signal and an analog amplitude signal
as multiplier inputs. The constant amplitude chirp signal may

10   be generated with any chirp generator discussed herein or well
known in the art. The analog voltage may be provided directly
with an analog input signal line or may be provided from a sample-
and-hold circuit which samples the analog input signal in response
to the distributor or selecting signal that initiates the chirp

15   generator. Therefore, chirp signals may be generated having a
constant amplitude that is a function of a sampled and stored
analog signal amplitude or a varying amplitude that is a function
of variation in an analog input signal processed directly without
a sample-and-hold circuit.

20   For the amplitude modulated chirp signal embodiment,
the distributor that was described above may distribute
initiation commands to each of a plurality of chirp generators
for initiating chirp signals and for sampling analog input
signals to amplitude modulate the chirp signals. The sample

25   commands to the distributor may be from a sample clock defining
the sampling time interval. A chirp generator enabled with the
sample clock responsive distributor may simultaneously sample
an analog input signal and initiate a chirp signal, wherein the
chirp signal may be generated having an amplitude related to

30   the amplitude of the sampled analog signal and a time or phase
relationship defined by the time of the sampled clock and the
related start of the chirp signal. Multiplexing of a plurality

of amplitude related chirp signals provides a multiplexed
signal for communication. Receiving of the communicated
multiplexed signal may be provided with a demodulator in a
receiving modem, wherein a correlator in the demodulator may

5   be used to demodulate the amplitude modulated chirp signal to
provide a plurality of correlation output peak signals having
an amplitude related to the amplitude of an analog
input sample and having a time spacing therebetween related to
the times of the analog signal samples. A chirp demodulator

10 may be implemented with a correlator, wherein the correlation
demodulator may have a single correlator channel for demodulating
chirp signals having a single signature signal characteristic or
may have a plurality of correlation demodulator channels for
demodulating a plurality of chirp signature signals. The

15 correlation output signals having a plurality of signal peaks
may be processed with digital peak detectors or threshold detectors
for processing with digital circuits such as flip-flops or
latches to reconstruct the communicated digital data signal from
the detected correlation output peaks.

20   An alternate embodiment of a chirp generator may be
implemented with a rate multiplier circuit controllable in
response to an input pulse rate and in response to a digital
word. A synchronous one-shot circuit may be provided to generate
an output pulse in response to an input selecting signal such

25 as from a chirp command distributor, wherein the pulse may be
used to set a latch. The combination of a one-shot and a latch
precludes detremental effects due to input distributor signal
duration such as for a long distributor signal duration being
compensated by a one-shot circuit generating a pulse having a

30 short pulse width in response to the input distributor signal
and for a short disbributor signal duration being compensated
by a latch circuit which may latch the distributor signal

responsive one-shot signal for a duration of time required to
generate a particular duration chirp signal. The one-shot
output pulse may be used to initialize the rate multiplier
circuitry including setting a latch for storage of the one-shot
5   signal for the duration of a chirp signal and resetting or
initializing counter circuits and other circuits to initial
conditions. A detector circuit may be provided for detecting
the end of a chirp signal and for resetting the latch in response
to the end of a chirp signal. The latched distributor signal
10 may be used to enable an input clock pulse signal for clocking
the rate multiplier, wherein the rate multiplier output pulse
rate may be proportional to the frequency of the enabled input
clock signal.

A counter circuit may be provided for generating the
15 digital word input to the rate multiplier, wherein the rate
multiplier output may be proportional to the input digital word
from the counter. The counter may be controlled to count clock
pulses to vary the digital word input to the rate multiplier and
therefore to vary the pulse rate output from the rate multiplier
20 in response thereto. For example, the counter may be connected
to a constant pulse rate such as a constant clock signal for
incrementing the counter in a linear manner to generate an up-
chirp signal and for decrementing the counter to generate a
down-chirp signal. Alternately, the counter may be connected to
25 a variable pulse rate such as an output from a rate multiplier
as a pulse rate feedback signal for generating an exponential
up-chirp signal or down-chirp signal for an up-counter or down-
counter arrangement respectively. Alternately, the clock signal
to clock the rate multiplier and/or the counters may be a variable
30 clock pulse such as from another rate multiplier, wherein a
linear up-chirp clock signal to the rate multiplier and a
constant clock signal to the counter may generate an exponential

output chirp signal and wherein a linear up-chirp clock signal to both the rate multiplier and the counter may generate a higher order exponential output chirp signal. Therefore, selection of the clock signal to the rate multiplier will control

5 the form of the output chirp signal and selection of the clock signal to the counter controlling the rate multiplier will further control the function of the output chirp signal.

A rate multiplier chirp signal may be controlled with an up-counter arrangement, a down-counter arrangement, or an

10 up-down-counter arrangement. For a selectable up-down-counter arrangement, a selecting signal may be provided to select an up-count or a down-count for generating an up-chirp signal or a down-chirp signal respectively and, conversely, for generating a down-chirp signal and an up-chirp signal respectively. A

15 distributor responsive input signal may be used to clear or preload the counter for generating an initial condition word input to the rate multiplier, wherein the initial condition of the counter may define the initial rate input of the rate multiplier. The counter may be cleared or initialized to a low

20 number such as an all zero-state and controlled to count-up for an up-chirp signal and may be initialized or preloaded to a high number such as an all one-state and controlled to count-down for a down-chirp signal. Alternately, other initial conditions may be preloaded to define a start frequency for the rate

25 multiplier.

A detector circuit may be implemented for detecting completion of a chirp signal such as implemented with a decoder or a logical gate arrangement response to a state of the counter. For an up-chirp signal, the detector circuit may be implemented

30 with a logical gate that is responsive to a selected maximum frequency condition defined by the state of the counter such as the highest state of the counter being an all one-state.

Similarly for a down-chirp signal, the detector circuit may be implemented with a logical gate that is responsive to a selected minimum frequency condition defined by the state of the counter such as the lowest state of the counter being an all zero-state or a low magnitude state such as a zero-state with a least significant one-bit to distinguish from an all zero-state. Enabling of an up-chirp detector and a down-chirp detector may be provided in response to an up-chirp command signal and a down-chirp command signal respectively such as from an up-down count command signal to the counter. The detector signal may be used to reset the input latch for disabling the input clock signal and therefore terminating the chirp signal.

In an alternate chirp generator embodiment, a digital differential analyzer (DDA) may be used to generate a controlled pulse rate for synthesizing a chirp signal. A DDA generates an output pulse rate dz proportional to an input pulse rate dx and the state of the Y-register. The Y-register state may be updated with dy incremental pulses, wherein the output pulse rate dz will vary as a function of the changes in the Y-register state which is updated by the dy input signal. For a constant frequency dy signal and a constant frequency dx signal, the dz output signal has a linear frequency variation. For a linearly varying frequency dx signal and a linearly varying frequency dy signal, the output dz signal may have an exponentially changing frequency sweep. In an alternate embodiment, the output dz signal may be fed back as a dy input signal in conjunction with a constant frequency dx signal to generate an exponentially varying frequency output dz signal. Various combinations of frequency sweeps to the dx input and dy input provides different chirp frequency functions as the output signal dz such as linear chirps, exponential chirps, and other chirp functions.

In still an alternate chirp generator embodiment, an arrangement is provided for delaying a chirp signal and for selecting delayed chirp signals in a desired combination. In a preferred embodiment, a chirp generator may be used to generate

5 a particular chirp signal and a shift register may be used to delay the chirp signal. As chirp signal samples are shifted through the shift register, various output lines or taps having different delays or different numbers of stages therebetween will provide a chirp signal at each output tap having a delay related

10 to the number of stages from the shift register input and therefore different delays therebetween. Therefore, a shift register or other delay device may be used to generate multiple chirp signals having different time delays or phase shifts from the input signal. A selection circuit may be provided for

15 selecting a combination of the time delay chirp signals from the shift register such as for multiplexing therebetween to generate a multiplexed chirp signal for communication. In one embodiment, the time delay chirp signals may be selected in response to the states of a digital word stored in a control

20 register, wherein each bit of the digital word may be used to enable or disable the chirp signal having a particular time delay from a tap such as by enabling or disabling a logical gate in response to the logical state of the data-bit signal. A plurality of chirp signals having different time delays or phases there-

25 between may be multiplexed theretogether such as for communication on a data link or for excitation of a VIBROSEIS generator.

The delay line chirp generator embodiment may be
combined to provide a plurality of chirp generator and delay
line combinations, wherein each combination may generate a
plurality of phase shifted chirp signals and wherein each
5 combination may provide a different set of chirp signature
signals. In one embodiment, a first chirp signature signal may
be selected in response to one-states of a control register and
a second chirp signal signature may be selected in response to
zero-states of a control register for multiplexing a combination
10 of chirp signals with a first chirp signature related to the one-
states of the digital word and a second chirp signature related
to the zero-states of a digital word. In another embodiment, a
plurality of control registers may be provided wherein each
control register may provide for selection of chirp signals
15 having a related signature; wherein chirp signals having a
particular chirp signature may be related to a particular control
register; and wherein chirp signatures related to different
control registers may have different chirp signatures there-
between for identification and separation of chirp signals
20 related to each of the plurality of control registers.

A plurality of different chirp signals each having a
different chirp signature may be generated with the shift
register embodiment discussed above by providing a variable
frequency clock pulse signal to the shift register. Therefore,
25 as a chirp signal is shifted along the shift register, variations
in clock frequency provide compressing or spreading of the chirp
signal periods and compressing or spreading respectively of
the chirp envelope durations in response to increasing or
decreasing clock frequencies respectively. Because the clock
30 frequency varies as a function of time, the clock frequency may
be different for each time delay interval when a chirp signal
is being shifted past an output tap of the shift register and

therefore each output tap has a different clock frequency
component related thereto and therefore a different chirp
signature related thereto. The clock signal from the shift
register may be generated by a chirp generator discussed

5   herein, wherein the clock signal frequency may be swept as a
linear up-chirp signal, linear down-chirp signal, exponential
up-chirp signal, exponential down-chirp signal, or other chirp
signal functions. Similarly, the input chirp signal to the
shift register may also have frequency sweep functions. The

10   combination of the frequency sweep function of the input chirp
signal and the frequency sweep function of the clock chirp
signal may be used to generate complex combinations of chirp
signals having different signatures and different time phasing
therebetween as provided on the output taps of the shift register

15   and as selectable under control of a control word or a data
word in a control register.

An improvement in productivity of a geophysical exploration system may be provided by ensonifying the subsurface environment from a plurality of different shotpoints with simultaneous or overlapping ensonifying signals. Seismic

5   reflections associated with simultaneously ensonifying each of a plurality of shotpoints may be separated through digital correlation if the ensonifying signals associated with each shotpoint have different signatures therebetween. A correlator may be provided having a plurality of correlation channels,

10 wherein each correlator channel may process the same input trace signal with a different correlation operator signal and wherein each of the plurality of channels may be responsive to a pilot signal having a signature related to the signature of the ensonifying signals of a particular shotpoints. For example,

15 a first VIBROSEIS generator at a first shotpoint and a second VIBROSEIS generator at a second shotpoint may each ensonify the subsurface environment with chirp signals that have different signatures therebetween; wherein the first VIBROSEIS generator may generate an up-chirp signal and the second VIBROSEIS generator

20 may generate a down-chirp signal. A trace signal may be acquired that is related to multiplexed reflections from subsurface reflectors for processing with a multi-channel correlator arrangement having a first correlator channel for generating a first output signal in response to a first pilot signal such as

25 an up-chirp signal and the trace signal and a second correlator channel for generating a second output signal in response to a second pilot signal such as a down-chirp signal and the same trace signal as processed with the first correlator channel. Therefore, a first output signal from the first correlator channel

30 may be related to reflections of the first ensonifying signal generated by the first VIBROSEIS at the first shotpoint and a second output signal from the second correlator channel may be

related to reflections of the second ensonifying signal
generated by the second VIBROSEIS at the second shotpoint.
The first and second correlated output signals may be separately
recorded for static and dynamic corrections, gathering, and
5 stacking.

Simultaneously ensonifying the subsurface environment
from a plurality of shotpoints provides productivity advantages
over prior art methods. In the prior art, a plurality of
VIBROSEIS generators may all ensonify the subsurface environment
10 with the same signature chirp signal at the same shotpoint for
intensifying the seismic signal with the plurality of VIBROSEIS
generators and for correlating with a single correlator. In
accordance with the instant feature of the present invention,
a multi-channel correlator is provided to permit separation of
15 signals having different correlation signatures through
correlation; thereby permitting generation of different signature
seismic signals simultaneously at different shotpoints for
separation with the plurality of correlator channels into
separate correlated signals related to each individual shotpoint.
20 Productivity may be enhanced by reducing the number of movements
to and setups at new shotpoints. For example, a set of
VIBROSEIS generators may operate at different shotpoints and
may be moved between sets of shotpoints, thereby reducing the
number of movements and setups.

A signal processing arrangement in accordance with the
present invention may use an analog memory device such as a
charge coupled device (CCD) for processing analog signals.
Array input signals may be demodulated such as with electronic
5   switches excited in response to a reference generator with the
demodulated output signals being processed by a CCD memory.
Each of the demodulated input signals may be applied to an input
line of a CCD for accumulation of the synchronously switched
signals by integrating current in charge storage elements. After
10 sufficient cycles have been demodulated, demodulation control
signals may be deactivated and shifting control signals may be
initiated to shift the analog signals stored in the CCD to
provide a sequence of analog output signals related to a
plurality of parallel input signals. If an ensonifying signal
15 is a chirp signal, the reference generator may provide a chirp
demodulation signal to synchronously demodulate input chirp

signals. The CCD may provide a multi-function capability
including filtering of demodulated input signals and converting
input signals from a parallel form to a serial form for sequential
processing with time-shared chrcuits.

5   In a beam forming embodiment of the present invention,
trace signals from transducers may be applied to a CCD in
parallel at a plurality of input taps while the CCD is being
clocked to shift the analog signal samples between taps. If
the spacing between taps in relation to the clock frequency is
10   controlled to be related to a wavelength characteristic of the
signals from the transducer array, then the analog signals applied
to each of a plurality of taps in sequence may be enhanced if
the input signal period is similar to the inter-tap shifting
period and the signals may be degraded if the above periods are
15   not similar. Therefore, the CCD clock control signal and tap
spacing may select a particular input spacial frequency period
for enhancement, wherein the input spacial frequency period may
be related to a direction of incident illumination which is herein
termed beam forming. Variation of the CCD clock signal frequency
20   will vary the inter-tap shift period and therefore will vary
the period of input signal spacial frequency that will be
enhanced, thereby controlling the direction of incident illumina-
tion that will be enhanced and therefore the incident illumination
component that will be processed by the beam forming network.

25   A hybrid memory arrangement may be provided with an
analog memory such as a CCD memory, wherein digital information
may be provided to and received from the memory arrangement
and wherein the memory arrangement may store information in
an analog signal form. Conversion of input information from
30   digital form to analog form may be provided with a digital-to-
analog converter for storage of analog signals and conversion of
output signals from analog form to digital form may be provided

with an analog-to-digital converter for outputting of digital
information in response to stored analog information. In a
shift register embodiment, recirculation may be provided with
analog signals or with digital signals. In the digital recir-
5   culation embodiment, the analog samples from the CCD memory
may be converted to digital form with an analog-to-digital
converter, recirculated to the digital input, and converted
from digital to analog signal form with a digital-to-analog
converter for storage in the CCD memory in analog signal form.
10 Refreshing of analog signals and digital signals may be provided
to compensate for degradation of analog signals as they are
shifted through the CCD memory.

In a digital refresh embodiment for an analog memory
device, digital signals output from a hybrid memory may be
15 rounded high to compensate for degradation towards a low level
or may be rounded low to compensate for degradation towards a
high level, wherein degradation of a signal shifted through an
analog memory may be compensated by rounding the degraded output
signal to a reference level, and wherein the degradation of the
20 analog signal shifted through the memory may be less than the
digital resolution of the round-off operation.

A refresh arrangement for a hybrid memory may be provided
for detecting the amount of degradation of analog signals shifted
through the memory and for refreshing the analog signals in
25 response to the detected degradation. In a preferred embodiment,
a reference signal having a reference analog amplitude may be
multiplexed with analog data signals input to an analog memory
and shifted through the analog memory. Refresh circuitry may
sample the reference signal as indicative of the magnitude of
30 the degradation and may refresh the analog signals from the
analog memory in response to the amount of degradation of the
reference signal. A multiplexer arrangement may be provided

-439-

for multiplexing an analog reference signal with the input analog data signals, where the multiplexer may be an analog mixer for selecting either an analog recirculation signal or an analog input signal and interspersing an analog reference

5   signal therewith. Selection may be provided with digital logic controlling analog switches for selecting the appropriate source of an analog signal for input to the analog memory such as from a recirculation source, an input source, or a reference source.

Hybrid memory refresh circuitry may include a sample-

10 and-hold network for sampling and storing the reference signal from the analog memory. The output signal from the sample-and-hold circuit may be used to control a refresh circuit for controlling gain of an amplifier to selectively amplify the degraded analog signals to compensate for degrada-

15 tion caused by shifting through the analog memory. In one embodiment, the sampled reference signal may be used to control an AGC circuit for refreshing the analog signals. In another embodiment, the sampled reference signal may be used to control a multiplier circuit for multiplying the degraded signals by

20 a signal related to the degradation of the signals. An implicit servo arrangement may be provided for multiplying the degraded signals by the reciprocal of the reference signal amplitude, wherein the amount of gain or multiplication may be related to the proportional degradation of the signals. The refresh

25 circuitry may be implemented with analog signal processors, digital signal processors, and hybrid signal processors, where analog, digital, and hybrid mulitpliers are well known in the art.

An analog compositor may be implemented by inputting
an analog trace signal to an analog shift register memory such
as a CCD memory and shifting the analog memory to effectively
sample the input trace signal, wherein each clock interval of

5 the analog memory shift clock may be related to a sample
interval of the analog signal input to the analog memory.
Control logic may initiate shifting of the analog memory in
response to a synchronization signal related to the start of
a trace signal. As the analog memory is shifted and recircu-

10 lated, each input sample may be added in analog signal form to
a corresponding recirculated analog sample from the analog
memory, wherein the adding of corresponding samples may be
defined as a compositing operation. A reference signal as
described above for a hybrid memory refresh arrangement may be

15 used in conjunction with the analog compositor arrangement for
mitigating effects of degradation due to shifting of analog
signals. After a plurality of composites has been accomplished,
the analog signal samples may be shifted out of the analog memory
to an analog-to-digital converter such as for correlation with

20 a digital correlator or for processing with other analog or
digital signal processing circuits.

References

Technology associated with implementation of the system of the present invention is well known in the art such as with circuit design, logical design, and computer programming. Further, prior art systems provide background for the system of the present invention. Still further, issued patents define well known methods and arrangements. References are provided hereinafter to prior art documents, systems, and patents; wherein the documents listed hereinafter and documents listed therein are incorporated herein by reference.

Digital filtering systems are well known in the art provide a basis for the improvements of the present invention. Such prior art systems include:

1. The Acoustic Imaging System built by Bendix Corp of Sylmar, California for the Naval Undersea Research and Development Center in San Diego, California;

2. The Computer Augmented Field Data Recording System (CAFDRS) built by United Geophysical of Pasadena, California; and

3. The GEOCOR system built by Geophysical Systems Corp of Pasadena, California.

Documents on digital filtering include:

1. DIGITAL SIGNAL PROCESSING by Robiner and Radner for the IEEE Press (1972);

2. THE FAST FOURIER TRANSFORM AND IT'S IMPLEMENTATION by Butler and Harvey;

3. SEISMIC FILTERING by Rothenburg and Van Nostrand for the Society of Exploration Geophysicists (1971);

4. ENCYCLOPEDIC DICTIONARY OF EXPLORATION GEOPHYSICS by Sheriff for the Society of Exploration Geophysicists (1973);

5. THE ROBINSON-TREITEL READER by Seismograph Service Corp (1973);

6. CORRELATION TECHNIQUES - A REVIEW by Anstey for Geophysical Prospecting XII;

7. THE THEORY AND DESIGN OF CHIRP RADARS by Klauder in The Bell System Technical Journal vol XXXIX no 4 (July 1960);

8. A CURRENT DISTRIBUTION FOR BROADSIDE ARRAYS WHICH OPTIMIZES THE RELATIONSHIP BETWEEN BEAM WIDTH AND SIDE-LOBE LEVEL by Dolph in the Proceedings of the IRE on Waves and Electrons (June 1946);

9. DESIGNERS GUIDE TO DIGITAL FILTERS by Leon and Bass in EDN magazine (January 1974 - June 1974);

10. THE SPECTRUM OF CLIPPED NOISE by Van Vleck and Middleton in the Proceedings of the IEEE (January 1966); and

11. DIGITAL SIGNAL PROCESSING by Oppenheimer and Schafer for Prentice Hall (1974).

Issued patents provide a basis for the improvements of the present invention including Patent Nos 2,624,876; 2,678,997; 2,688,124; 2,760,164; 2,808,577; 2,874,795; 2,910,134; 3,011,582; 3,018,962; 3,024,994; and 3,065,453.

Documents on circuit design include:

1. METHODS FOR SOLVING ENGINEERING PROBLEMS USING ANALOG COMPUTERS by Levine for McGraw Hill (1964);

2. ANALOG COMPUTERS by Korn and Korn; and

3. JUNCTION TRANSISTOR ELECTRONICS by Hurley for John Wiley & Sons (1958).

Documents on logical design include:

1. DIGITAL COMPUTER DESIGN FUNDAMENTALS by Chu for McGraw Hill (1962);

2. DIGITAL COMPUTER DESIGN by Braun for Academic Press (1963); and

3. THE TTL DATA BOOK by Texas Instruments Inc (1973).

Documents on computer programming include:

1. PROGRAMMING AND CODING DIGITAL COMPUTERS by Sherman for John Wiley & Sons (1963);

2. DIGITAL COMPUTER PROGRAMMING by Stark for MacMillian Co (1967);

3. PROGRAMMING FOR DIGITAL COMPUTERS by Jeenel for McGraw Hill (1959);

4. IBM 360 PROGRAMMING AND COMPUTING by Golden and Leichus for Prentis-Hall (1967);

5. FUNDAMENTALS OF FLOWCHARTING by Schriber for John Wiley & Sons (1969);

6. PROGRAMMING: AN INTRODUCTION TO COMPUTER LANGUAGES by Maurer for Holden-Day (1968);

7. DESIGN OF REAL-TIME COMPUTER SYSTEMS by Martin; and

8. ELEMENTS OF COMPUTER PROGRAMMING by Swallow and Price for Holt Rinehart, and Winston (1965).

Documents on CCDs include:

1. CHARGE-COUPLED DEVICES AND APPLICATIONS by Carnes and Kosonocky for Solid State Engineering Magazine (April 1974);

2. CHARGE-COUPLED SEMICONDUCTOR DEVICES by Boyle and Smith for the Bell System Technical Journal (1970); and

3. EXPERIMENTAL VERIFICATION OF THE CHARGE COUPLED DEVICE CONCEPT by Amelio for the Bell System Technical Journal (April 1970).

-444-

Disclosure Documents

An analysis pertinent to the present invention is set forth
in the Disclosure Documents No. 091,629 filed in the Patent and
Trademark Office on or about June 16, 1980 by Gilbert P. Hyatt;
which is herein incorporated by reference. The analyses therein
entitled Signal Processing Analysis for the MBUL System; System
Analysis for the MBLE; and System Analysis for MBLE With Convolver
are analyses of a system that is representative of embodiments of
the present invention such as a multiple signature system having
multiple channel correlator and convolver processing. The analysis
therein entitled Information Theory Principles For Communication
System Improvement is an analysis pertinent to the present invention.
The MBLE system discussed in the Dsiclosure Documents was
selected as representative of embodiments of the present
invention including seismic exploration, filter memory, filter
modem, and other systems disclosed in the instant application
and the parent application S/N 550,231. Documents referenced in
the Disclosure Documents are herein incoporated by reference in-
cluding the following.

1. F. Jessie MacWilliams and Neil J.A. Sloane, "Pseudo-
Random Sequences and Arrays", Proceedings of the IEEE,
Vol 64, No 12, pp 1715-1729.

2. Claude E. Shannon, "Communication in the Presence of
Noise", Proceedings of the IRE, Vol 37, pp 10-21.

3. Claude E. Shannon, "A Mathematical Theory of Communication",
BSTJ, Vol 27, pp 379-423, July 1948.

4. Gwilym M. Jenkins and Donald G. Watts, Spectral Analysis
and Its Applications, San Francisco, Holden-Day, 1968.

5. David G. Luenberger, Optimization by Vector Space Methods,
New York, John Wiley, 1969.

6. Robert H. Shumway, "Applied Regression and Analysis of
Variance For Stationary Time Series", Journal American Stat. Assoc.,
Dec 1970, Vol 65, No 332, pp 1527-1546.

7. E.S. Pearson and H.O. Hartley, Biometrika Tables For Statisticians, Vol II, Cambridge, England, Cambridge University Press, 1972.

8. Athanasios Papoulis; Probibility, Random Variables, and Stochastic Processes; New York, McGraw Hill, 1965.

9. Douglas R. Anderson and Paul A. Wintz, "Analysis of a Spread Spectrum Multiple Access System With a Hard Limiter", IEEE Transactions Comm Tech, vol. COM-17, pp 285,290, April 1969.

10. W.J. Judge, "Multiplexing Using Quasiorthogonal Binary Functions", AIEE Trans Comm Elect, Vol 81, pp 81-83, May 1962.

11. Robert Gold, "Optimal Binary Sequences for Spread Spectrum Multiplexing" IEEE Trans Inf Theory, vol IT-13, pp 619-621, Oct 1967.

12. Robert K. Otnes and Loren Enochson, Digital Time Series Analysis, New York, John Wiley and Sons, 1972.

13. S. Weinreb, "A Digital Spectral Analysis Technique and Its Application to Radio Astronomy", MIT Research Laboratory of Electronics, Technical Report 412, 1963.

14. M. Hinich, "Estimation of Spectra After Hard Clipping of Gaussian Processes", Technometrics, vol 9.

15. Henning F. Harmuth, Transmission of Information by Orthogonal Functions, New York, Springer-Verlag, 1969.

16. Albert J. Berni and William D. Gregg, "On the Utility of Chirp Modulation For Digital Signaling", IEEE Trans. Comm, vol COM-21, pp 748-751, June 1973.

17. Y.W. Lee, Statistical Theory of Communication, New York, Wiley, 1960.

18. R.W. Lucky, J. Salz, and E.J. Weldon Jr; Principles of Data Communication, New York, McGraw Hill Book Company, 1968.

19. B. Widrow et al, "Adaptive Antenna Systems", Proc. IEEE, vol 55, No 12, Dec 1967, pp 2143-2159.

20. W.W. Peterson and E.J. Weldon Jr. Error-Correcting Codes, 2nd ed., Cambridge, the MIT Press, 1972.

21. R.L. Dobrushin, "Information Transmission in a Channel With Feedback", <u>Theory of Probability and Applications</u>, vol 34, pp 367-383, Dec 1958.

22. Claude F. Shannon, "Two-Way Communication Channels", Proc. 4th <u>Berkeley Symp Math Stat. and Prob.</u>, vol 1, pp 611-644, 1961.

23. J.Pieter M. Schalkwijk, " Coding Scheme For Addative Noise Channels with Feedback Part II: Band-Limited Signals", <u>IEEE Trans Info Therory</u>, vol IT-12, pp 183-189, April 1966.

24. J.N. Pierce and S. Stein, "Multiple Diversity with Non-independent Fading", <u>Proc IRE</u> **Jan 1960, pp 89-104.**

25. R.G. Gallager, <u>Information Theory and Reliable Communication</u> New York, John Wiley and Sons, 1968.

26. A.I. Khinchin, <u>Mathematical Foundations of Stastical Mechanics</u>, New York, Dover Pub Inc., 1949.

27. A.N. Kolmogorov, "On the Shannon Theory of Information Transmission in the Case of Continuous Signals", <u>IEEE Trans</u>. <u>Inform Theory</u>, vol IT-2, pp 102-108, Sept 1956.

28. M.S. Pinsher, "Quantity of Information of a Gaussion Random Stationary Random Process Contained in a Second Process Related Stationary thereto", <u>Doklady Akad Nauk SSSR</u>, vol 111, No 4, 1956, pp 753-756.

29. J.M. Wozencraft and I.M. Jacobs, <u>Principles of Communication Engineering</u>, New York, John Wiley, 1965.

30. T. Berger, <u>Data Distortion Theory, A Mathematical Basis For Data Compression</u>, Englewood Cliffs, New Jersey, Prentice Hall Inc, 1971.

The filtering and processing capability disclosed herein and in the referenced applications are supplemented by the disclosures filed in the Patent and Trademark Office under the Disclosure Document Program (MPEP 1706) in

> (a)   Disclosure Document No. 084,212 filed on Sept 12, 1979; particularly at pages 41-46 therein;
>
> (b)   Disclosure Document No. 085,829 filed on Nov 14, 1979; particularly at pages 68-77 therein;
>
> (c)   Disclosure Document No. 087,707 filed on Jan 28, 1980; particularly at pages 13-15 and 78-80 therein; and
>
> (d)   Disclosure document No. 091,629 filed on June 16, 1980;

which are herein incorporated by reference.

Remote Array System

An incremental processor provides significant advantages in addition to the processor-related advantages described in patent applications S/N 550,231 and S/N 754,660 and patent applications related thereto. Such additional advantages will now be discussed.

Related patent application S/N 490,816 discloses a whole number type arrangement in contrast to the incremental arrangement.

A whole number arrangement will now be discussed with reference to Figs 1 and 2A of application S/N 490,816. For example, array 110 may be a towed array such as used in synthetic aperture sonar systems. Alternately, array 110 may be used in a dip sonar system such as the AN/AQS-17 sonar system. Towed arrays are typically deployed and towed from host surface ships. Dip sonars are typically deployed and used in conjunction with host helicopters. Geophysical exploration arrays are typically deployed and used in conjunction with host trucks. Information is transmitted from array 110 to the host vehicle or host system located remote therefrom. Array 110 generates analog signals 112 to channel processor 114 (Fig 1) and transducer 210 generates analog signal 211 to channel processor 114 (Fig 2A). Channel processor 114 comprises analog circuits for amplifying, demodulating, and filtering array signals 112 to generate output processed signals 116 (Fig 1) and processed signals 215 and 235 (Fig 2A). These processed signals 116, 215, and 235 are processed with multiplexer 118 and ADC 122 (Fig 1) to generate whole number digital signals 124. Reconstructor 126 is shown as a whole number processor for processing whole

number digital signals 124 (Fig 1). This arrangement characterizes whole number type signal processor and data processor arrangements. The instant features of the present invention are directed to incremental signal processing and data processing arrangements for providing important advantages compared to the whole number arrangement discussed above.

In remote array applications, information is communicated from a remote array to a host vehicle or host system. Typically, this communication is provided over a serial communication link, where information is transmitted in serial signal form in order to minimize the number of wires. Some degree of signal processing is implemented in the remote array device because array signals are low level analog signals that may not be capable of driving a cable without introducing substantial errors. Further, communicated information is often digital information such as signals 124 (Fig 1 therein) because of the complexities of communicating multiplexed analog signals. Therefore, such a system typically has channel processors 114, multiplexer 118, and ADC 122 (Fig 1 therein) located with the array 110 remote from the host vehicle or host system. Problems with such a whole number system include (a) location of electronics with the remote array and (b) communication of a large amount of digital whole word information. These problems can be mitigated with the use of the incremental or low resolution "front end" arrangement of the present invention, as discussed below.

An incremental arrangement is shown in related application
S/N 754,660. Input device 110 and input signal processor 112
(Fig 1 therein) can be accoustical transducer 110C and amplifier
112C, prossibly including PSD 112D (Fig 2A therein). Signal
processor 112 when implemented as an incremental signal
processor is a relatively simple signal processor. This is
in contrast to the analog signal processor discussed above
which is significantly more complex than an incremental signal
processor. Further, incremental output signal 113 is implicitly
in digital signal form, thereby eliminating the need for an ADC.
Therefore, a simple incremental signal processor may be used
to convert analog transducer signals to digital incremental
signals with a significant reduction in electronic circuitry
compared to an analog signal processing arrangement. In
applications where such signal processing electronics is
located in conjunction with a remote array arrangement,
significant advantages are achieved by simplifying this
electronics. Further, communication of incremental signals
over a data link is significantly more efficient than communication
of whole number digital signals. For example, a 12 bit ADC
may be used to generate 12-bit digital numbers for communication
to the host vehicle. Therefore, 12 digital bits must be
transmitted for each signal sample. In contrast, an incremental
arrangement communicates only a single incremental bit for
each signal sample, yielding a factor of 12-times improvement in
data rate.

In view of the above, an incremental arrangement provides
significant advantages relative to signal processing, multiplexing,
conversion, and communication of information from a remote array.

An illustrative embodiment has been described for communicating incremental information from an array to a signal processor. Alternate arrangements will now be discussed.

In a first alternate embodiment, low resolution whole number information is generated at the remote array, communicated to the host vehicle, and processed to generate high resolution whole number information. For example, a three bit ADC may be used to generate three bit digital information for communication. The three bit digital information can be processed to generate 12 bit digital information, as discussed and claimed in parent application S/N 550,231. Although communication and processing of low resolution (i.e. three bit) information is not as efficient as communication of incremental (single bit) information, it is more efficient then processing of high resolution (i.e. 12 bit) information and preserves more of the input resolution then processing of incremental information.

In a second illustrative embodiment, an incremental (single bit) or low resolution (i.e. three bit) signal processor can be located with the remote equipment, having simpler implementation then a high resolution (i.e. 12 bit) signal processor. Therefore, processed information can be generated by relatively simple remote equipment and transmitted as high resolution information. In one configuration, integration after filtering (discussed herein and in the referenced applications) can be implemented in the remote equipment to provide high resolution information at low data rate for communication to the host vehicle.

Terminology pertaining to ensonifying is herein intended
to have the same significance and meaning as terminology pertaining
to illuminating as discussed above.

The terms "medium" and "environment" are herein intended
5   to mean the transmission medium or environment for transmission
of and for propagation of the illumination signals. For example,
the acoustic medium may be seawater, the radar medium may be the
atmosphere or space, and the geophysical medium may be the earth.

Illumination may be generated with a transmitter such
10 as a VIBROSEIS transmitter as discussed above or with a well known
radar transmitter or laser transmitter which provide a source of
illumination energy for illuminating an environment. The terms
"input transducers", "array", and other terms pertaining thereto
are herein intended to mean general transducers and transducer
15 arrays exemplified by a geophone array for a geophysical system
a hydrophone array for an acoustic imaging system, a photoelectric
array for a laser system, a photosensitive medium for light, a well
known radar receiver array for a radar system and other known input
transducer arrangements.

20   Components have been shown in the figures in simplified
schematic form to more easily exemplify the present invention,
wherein circuit design is a well known art and wherein use of
such components are well known in the art. Further, many
alternate circuit embodiments and component types may be used
25 to implement the discussed embodiments. For example, switches 650
and CLR 216 (Fig 6D) and FETs 917 and 918 (Fig 9A) can be implemented
with well known switches including electronic switches such as
FETs and bipolar transistors and even mechanical switches such as
relays. Further, improved capabilities may be obtained by higher
30 levels of integration. For example, FETs 917 and 918 may be
manufactured as part of CCD 920 (Fig 9A) to provide the combined
capabilities of demodulation, filtering, and multiplexing with
monolithic circuits.

The system of the present invention is intended to have a broad scope wherein a digital filtering system is intended to exemplify generalized arrangements for storing analog signals, processing analog signals and transferring analog signals; FFT and correlator processors are intended to exemplify generalized digital filtering or processing arrangements; and other such devices are intended to exemplify generalized arrangements.

The term signal is herein intended to include electrical signals, acoustic signals, illumination signals, and other known signals which may be sensed such as with a transducer and which may be processed such as with a filter.

Filter processing has been discussed herein relative to stored or generated information; which information has been identified as pilot information and reference information herein. For example, correlation has been discussed using pilot signal samples relative to Figure 3 and using reference signal samples relative to Figure 10.

Resolution is the fineness of the data. When resolution is relatively better it is characterized as being higher, finer or greater and when resolution is relatively worse it is characterized as being lower, coarser, or poorer.

For simplicity of illustration, the present invention has been discussed for a correlator digital filter. A correlator filter implementation is also illustrative of a convolution filter implementation, where the difference between a correlator and a convolver may be merely the form of the filter operator and wherein the terms correlation and convolution and the terms correlator and convolver may be used interchangeably for discussions related to the correlator implementation herein. Further a correlator may be used in well known Auto-Correlation and Cross-Correlation modes of operation. Still further, a correlator is exemplary of a generalized digital filter including recursive filters, non-recursive filters, Kalman filters, compositor filter, and other well known filters wherein the discussions related to a correlator are herein intended to be exemplary of a general type of filter and to be applicable to other types of filters.

-447-

Also for simplicity of illustration, the digital filter arrangement of the present invention has been discussed for processing chirp signals; wherein a chirp signal is intended to be illustrative of a generalized signal form including amplitude

5   related signals, phase related signals, frequency related signals, and even noise signals.

Terminology pertaining to signatures is herein intended to mean characteristics of a signal and may include unique characteristics of signals that permit identification thereof or

10 therebetween and may permit separation thereof such as through correlation.

Separation of signal components by filtering such as with correlation filters permits separation of signals due to filterable characteristics. For example, if signals have poor

15 correlation or low correlation therebetween, then they may be easily separated through correlation. Poor correlation, low correlation, and terms pertaining thereto are intended to mean signals that do not have good correlation therebetween such as by generating small correlation output signal peaks when correlated

20 theretogether.

A plurality is herein intended to mean more than one. For simplicity of discussion, a plurality may be exemplified with a limited number such as with two signals or with two devices, wherein such a limited number is intended to exemplify

25 more than one such as two, or ten, or seventy-five, or ten-thousand, or any other number that is more than one.

The various features of the present invention have been discussed separately or in particular combinations for simplicity of presentation. Advantages may be obtained by combining or

30 recombining various separately described features or combined features respectively of the present invention such as by combining the signature memory, correlate on-the-fly, output on-the-fly, and single-bit correlation features of the present

invention.   Therefore, it is herein intended that features of
the present invention that may be described separately or in
particular combinations may be grouped together and recombined
in different combinations.

5   Preferred embodiments of the present invention include
digital filtering arrangements exemplary of the broad teachings
of the present invention.   Alternate embodiments of the present
invention may include analog filtering arrangements and hybrid
(digital and analog) filtering arrangements consistant with the
10 broad scope of the present invention.

From the above description it will be apparent that there is thus provided a device of the character described possessing the particular features of advantage before enumerated as desireable, but which obviously is susceptible to modification

5 in it's form, method, mechanization, operation, detailed construction and arrangement of parts without departing from the principles involved or sacrificing any of its advantages.

While in order to comply with the statute, the invention has been described in language more or less specific

10 as to structural features, it is to be understood that the invention is not limited to the specific features shown, but that the means, method, and construction herein disclosed comprise the preferred form of several modes of putting the invention into effect, and the invention is, therefore, claimed

15 in any of its forms or modifications within the legitimate and valid scope of the appended claims.